लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी
L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मस्री

MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय

LIBRARY

अवाप्ति संख्या

Accession No.

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

Hay 2nd ed

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

For Junior Forms in Schools.

- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.
- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By E. W. EDMUNDS, M.A., B.Sc. Second Edition, 2s. 6d.
- A FIRST ENGLISH COURSE (formerly entitled Preliminary English Course). By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.
- JUNIOR GEOGRAPHY. By G. C. Fry, M.Sc. Fifth Edition.
- JUNIOR ARITHMETIC. By R. H. CHOPE, B.A. Fifth Edition. 4s. With Answers. 4s. 6d.
- JUNIOR ALGEBRA. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P., and Augustus Barraclough, M.A. 3s. 6d. With Answers, 4s.
- JUNIOR GEOMETRY. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P. 38. 6d.
- JUNIOR LATIN COURSE. By B. J. Haves, M.A. Second Edition. 4s.
- NEW JUNIOR LATIN READER. By A. J. TATE, M.A. 3s. 6d. NEW JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS, M.A. 4s.
- JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By Professor Ernest Weekley, M.A., and M. A. Lebonnois, B. es-L. Third Edition. 3s. 6d. JUNIOR FRENCH READER. By Professor Ernest Weekley, M.A. Second Edition. 2s.
- JUNIOR MECHANICS. By F. ROSENBERO, M.A., B.Sc. 4s. JUNIOR EXPERIMENTAL SCIENCE. By W. M. HOOTON, M.A., M.Sc., F.I.C. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR HEAT. By Professor John Satterly, D.Sc., M.A. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.
- JUNIOR SOUND AND LIGHT. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc., and Professor John Satterly, D.Sc. M.A. 3s, 6d.
- JUNIOR MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By R. H. JUDE, D.Sc., M.A., and Professor John Satterly, D.Sc., M.A. Securio Edition. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR CHEMISTRY. By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc. Third Edition, Revised by J. E. T. GILBERT, B.Sc., A.I.C. 3s. 6d. JUNIOR BOTANY. By FRANCIS CAVERS, D.Sc. 8s. 6d.

London: W. B. CLIVE University Tutorial Press Ld. High St., New Oxford St., W.C.

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

ΒY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. CAMB. AND LOND.

LATE SCHOLAR OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS
AUTHOR OF "THE TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR"

Second Edition (Fourteenth Impression)



LONDON: W. B. CLIVE

University Eutorial Press &?

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

1931

PREFACE.

A GLANCE at the table of contents will make the plan of this book clear: it follows the traditional order of the parts of speech, except that for the sake of the Exercises considerable portions of the conjugations of sum and of amo (active and passive) are introduced at an early stage; moreover provision has been made for the postponement of some of the lessons on the comparison of adjectives and on pronouns.

The rules relating to dependent statements, ablative absolute, and various uses of the subjunctive have been given at greater length and with fuller explanation than is customary in books intended for beginners, for it is now generally acknowledged that the chief, if not the only, benefit which the majority of such learners can derive from the study of Latin is a training in the accurate use of language, and for this purpose syntactical rules are of much greater value than irregularities of accidence and of genders, which for only too many of us are our only recollection of the Latin we learnt at school.

It is assumed that those who use this book will already know the meaning of common grammatical terms such as *subject, object, active, passive, indicative,* and that it would be a waste of space to insert definitions of them; but terms peculiar to Latin grammar are duly explained. In the vocabularies English derivatives are given where possible

vi PREFACE.

as a help to the memory, but it must be understood that the words so given are not in all cases derived *directly* from the Latin words opposite which they stand.

By the time the learner has reached Lesson 72, or even earlier, he should take up some Latin construing beyond that provided in the Exercises: for this purpose the *New Junior Latin Reader*, in this series, may be used.

The Exercises and Vocabularies were written by Miss F. L. D. Richardson (Mrs. A. J. Herbertson), B.A. Lond., who also rendered assistance with other parts of the book. For a careful revision of the proof sheets thanks are due to Mr. T. R. Mills, M.A., Wadham College, Oxford, late Lecturer in Greek at Aberdeen University, and to Mr. J. V. Thompson, M.A., also of Wadham College, Oxford.

In the second edition printers' and other errors have been corrected, but the differences between the two editions are not sufficient to make their use together in class inconvenient.

CONTENTS.

The Lessons may be taken in the following order: 1-24, 26, 30, 31 36-64, 32-35, 65-67, 27-29, 68-73, 75, 76, 25, 77-80, 74. The Appendix should be learnt with the Lessons in the second half of the Course.

LESSON		1	PAGE
	Introductory		1
1-3.	PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE	E	4
4, 5.	Substantives: First Declension		7
6.	Part of the Conjugation of SUM		ΙI
7-9.	SUBSTANTIVES: SECOND DECLENSION		12
10, 11.	ADJECTIVES: FIRST CLASS		16
12, 13.	PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOI	CE	20
14-19.	SUBSTANTIVES: THIRD DECLENSION		23
15.	" Place Where " (Town-names, etc.)		24
20-22.	ADJECTIVES: SECOND CLASS		33
22.	Ablative of the standard of comparison		37
23.	SUBSTANTIVES: FOURTH DECLENSION		38
24.	SUBSTANTIVES: FIFTH DECLENSION		40
25.	Some Irregular Adjectives		41
26-29.	Comparison of Adjectives		43
30.	Personal Pronouns		49
31.	Possessive Adjectives		5 t
32-35	PRONOUNS: DEMONSTRATIVE, RELATIVE, INT.	ERRO-	
•	GATIVE, AND INDEFINITE		52
36.	The Conjugation of SUM	59.	62
36.	Wishes, Exhortations, and Commands		59
37-64.	THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND CA	1 <i>PIO</i> ,	
•	ACTIVE VOICE	٠.	60
37∙	Questions		86
38, 39.	Dependent Questions		87
40.	The Infinitive, and Dependent Statements		91
41.	The Gerund		95

LESSON								PAGI
42.	Active Parti	ciples						96
43-46.	Conditional	Senten	ces					97
47.	Conditional Se, suus. E	xpress	ions of	" Hop	ing ''			102
48-51.	" Place Whi	ther,''	" Place	e Wher	ice,'' ai	nd " Pl	ace	
	Where '							104
50.	Final Clause	S					٠.	106
52.	Consecutive	Clause	s					108
54-64.	THE FOUR REGU	LAR CO	NJUGAT	TIONS A	ND CA	<i>PIO</i> , P	AS-	
	sive Voic							110
54.	Double Ques	stions						110
55.	Dependent I	Double	Questi	ions				111
56.	The Ablativ	e Absol	lute			,		112
57.	The Gerund	ive						114
58, 59.	Temporal Cl	auses						116
60, 61.	Causal Claus	es						119
62, 63.	Concessive C	lauses						121
64.	Concessive C Expressions	of "Fe	aring	,,				123
65-67.	DEPONENT AND	SEMI-D	EPONE	NT VE	RBS			124
68, 69.	POSSUM AND C	THER (Сомрот	UNDS O	F SUM			120
69-71.	Temporal Cl	auses-	-contin	ued				131
70-72.	VOLO, ÑOLO, M				F10, 1	00		132
73, 74.	IMPERSONAL AND							140
75.	ADVERBS							144
76.	COMPARISON OF A	DVER	3S					
, 77.	Numerals							-
78-80.	Prepositions							-
80.	Conjunctions							
IIrrana o	n Translating							160
HIN15 U	N IRANSLATING	• •	• •	• •	• •	• •	٠.	
Exercis	ES	• •	• •		• •			161
LATIN-E	NGLISH VOCABULA	RY						206
Exciten	-LATIN VOCABULA	DV						225
		K I	••	••	• •	• •		225
Appendi		_						
	e Irregular Substa			• •	• •	• •	٠.	
	ernative Forms of		• •	• •	• •	• •		245
	pound Verbs		• •	• •	• •	• •		240
	cipal Parts of Ver		• •	• •	• •	• •		246
Irre	gularities of Verbs	• •	• •	• •	• •	• •	• •	2 60
Lunev								261

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

- 1. Classical Latin, i.e. Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (A.D. 14). This book deals only with classical Latin.
- 2. The Latin alphabet is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no J and no W.
- 3. Vowels are said to be of long or short quantity, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated u* and a are of long quantity, i and e of short quantity.

The sign (-) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (-) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short.

Obs. These marks are not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin. In this book long vowels not followed by two consonants are marked as long; see § 5, Note 3.

4. Latin words of two syllables are accentuated on the first syllable (e.g. pa'ter, father; mā'ter, mother), i.e. the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words father, mother.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accentuated on the last syllable but one if that syllable is long, e.g. sorō'res, sisters; but otherwise on the last syllable but two, e.g. do'minus, lord; fami'lia, household.

A syllable is long if (x) it contains a long vowel or diphthong, or (x) if its vowel is followed by (x) or (x) or by two consonants.

J. L. C.

Note.—If of two consonants the first is b, c, d, f, g, p, or t, and the second l or r, the syllable preceding may be long or short, provided that its vowel is short. For the purpose of accentuation such syllables are usually regarded as short, e.g. im'petrō.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin.

5. How the Romans pronounced Latin in the Classical Period has been ascertained with fair certainty, and learners are expected to follow the main rules laid down by modern scholars, which are roughly as follows.

```
Consonants:—

c, always as in can, not as in city.
g, always as in go, not as in general.
i (in some books printed j), as y in ye.
r, always rolled, as rr in furrier.
s, always unvoiced, as in hiss (not voiced as in his).
v (in some books printed u), as w in we.
x, always as cs, not gs.

Combinations:—
bs, as ps; e.g. trabs, beam, is pronounced trraps.
gu (before a vowel), as gu in language.
qu, as qu in queen.
su, as sw in sweet.
```

The other consonants have their normal English value; t is never to be pronounced sh as in diction.

```
§ 8. Vowels:—

  \bar{\mathbf{a}}, as second a in papa.
                                        a, as first a in papa.
  ē, as e in prey (Fr. é in blé).
                                       e, as e in set.
     not e1.
  \vec{i}, as i in the second syllable \vec{i}, as first i in quinine.
     of quinine, machine.
  \bar{o}, as second o in follow, not o^{\mathcal{U}}.
                                        o, as first o in follow.
  ū, as oo in boot.
                                        u, as oo in foot.
  y, like Latin I uttered with
                                        v. like Latin i uttered with
                                           rounded lips, or like u in
     rounded lips, or like u in
     French pure.
                                           French pu.
```

Obs. The sounds indicated above by e^i and o^u are those heard, especially in Southern English, in such words as way, so. The Latin vowel is a single sound, not diphthongal.

```
DIPHTHONGS:—

ae, nearly as ai in Isaiah (broadly pronounced).

au, as ou in house.

ei, as ei in eight.

oe, as oi in boil.

DIPHTHONGS:—

eu, as eu in feud.

ui, as French oui.
```

Note 1.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

Note 2.—The symbol i serves both as a consonant and as a vowel. When i is followed by a consonant it must be a vowel; so also when it is long in quantity. Whether a short i followed by a vowel is a vowel or a consonant will not greatly concern the beginner, as the difference in pronunciation is but slight. Final i is always a vowel.

Note 3.—The quantity of a vowel followed by x or z or by two consonants cannot always be ascertained; such vowels are commonly pronounced as if they were short and are left unmarked in this book. The same applies to vowels before final m, e.g. in portam.

Obs.—Distinguish carefully between the length of a vowel and the length of the syllable which the vowel helps to form; e.g. trabs has a short vowel, but as the vowel is followed by two consonants the syllable is long. The pronunciation of a vowel depends, of course, on the length of that vowel, not on the length of the syllable.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.

- I. Repeat several times the vowels a, e, I, o, u, y, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2, and continuing the enunciation for about a second.
- 2. Repeat several times the vowels a, e, i, o, u, y, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2 and making no effort to prolong the enunciation.

Pronounce carefully, referring frequently to the tables on p. 2 and to Notes 1-3 above :-

3. ībat, ībit, ībō, ībant, ab, sub, ob.

4. āc, cum, coëunt, cicūta, biceps, ecce, cieō, Cynicus.

dum, ad, id, īdem, idem, dabō, dō. 6. fēlix, fēlīcem, fulciō, folium, efficiō.

gignō, genū, gula, gustō, age, gestāmen, gymnicus.

8. iam, iaciō, iēcistī, iocī, iambī, iūdex.

palam, pāgī, pedem, appönö, supplex, Pygmaliön.

10. quā, quī, quō, equus, colloquium, inquam.

- rē, arō, currit, ācer, parum, pāret, parra, iēcēre.
- 12. sī, sīs, iūs, essēs, ursās, rēs, fers, tyrannus, Byrsa.
- tē, ratiō, attamen, adiēcit, ambitiō, satis, Tyrus.
- iuvenis, vātis, vēr, vir, vīrēs, vōcēs, avē.
- 15. xystus, lex, Xerxēs, neglexī, vervex. 16. zona, Zēno, Zama, mazonomus, gaza.
- 17. aes, aera, āera, aequus, portae, aēneus, vae, faex.
- plaustrum, faucēs, adelphoe, suāvius, Oeneus, Oedipūs. 19. abs, urbs, chalybs, echo, Sappho, philosophus, Hyacintha,
- Tēthys, Corinthus, Euphrātēs, Thūcydidēs.
 - distinguö, assuēfacere, cuī, persuāsī, pinguis.

6. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(ACTIVE VOICE).

Nearly all Latin verbs belong to one of the four "conjugations," i.e. they are conjugated like one or other of the four model verbs shown on pp. 64-79.

The part of the first conjugation printed on this page is to be learnt with Lessons 1-3, according to the directions there

given.

MODEL: amō, I love, I like.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam,	I was loving	am-ābāmus,	we were loving
	thou wast loving		ye were loving
am-ābat,	he was loving	am-ābant,	they were loving

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō,	I shall love	am-ābimus,	we shall love
am-ābis,	thou wilt love	am-ābitis,	ye will love
am-ābit,	he will love	am-ābunt,	they will love

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āv-ī,	I loved or have loved	am-āv-imus,	we loved or have
am-āv-istī,	thou lovedst or hast loved	am-āv-istis,	loved ye loved or have loved
am-āv-it,	he loved or has loved	am-āv-ērunt or am-āv-ēre,	they loved or have

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	love (thou)	am-āte,	love (ye)	į
-------	-------------	---------	-----------	---

LESSON 1.

Learn the present indicative active of amō (p. 4).

7. It will be seen that, just as an English verb has different terminations for the different persons in the singular (love, lovest, loves or loveth), so a Latin verb varies (amō, amās, amat); but in Latin there are different terminations also for each person in the plural.

In Latin, however, these terminations are not merely characteristic of the several persons, but their use renders unnecessary that of the personal pronouns; e.g. amās stands not merely for lovest, but for thou lovest. Hence a Latin verb can by itself form a complete sentence.

- 8. After learning the present indicative active of amō, learn the verbs in Vocabulary I (below) and conjugate the present indicative active of each. In order to do this:—cut off from each verb given in the Vocabulary its final -ō; the base then remains. To the base add the several terminations -ās, -at, etc. Thus, the base of cantō is cant-; the second person singular is therefore cant-ās, the third person singular cant-at, and so on.
- 9. In doing the Exercises (pp. 161-205) it is best to use you in translating the Latin second person singular and plural into English; e.g. amās or amātis, you love or you like. In the English sentences you is to be rendered by the Latin second person singular, unless there is any reason to suppose that more persons than one are addressed; then, and then only, the Latin second person plural is to be used.

Vocabulary 1.

ambul-ō (amble), I walk.
cant-ō (chant), I sing.
clām-ō (clamour), I shout.
curs-ō (course), I run to and fro.

err-ō (err), I go astray, I am mistaken. salt-ō (somer-sault), I dance. voc-ō (vocal), I call.

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 2.

Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of amo (p. 4).

- 10. In English two tenses only, viz., the present simple and the past simple, consist of a single word, in which the verb exhibits various changes; e.g. love—loved, come—came. In Latin many tenses are so formed, and among these are the imperfect and future, both of which tenses are in English made up by the help of auxiliary verbs.
- 11. Learn Vocabulary 2 (below), and conjugate in the imperfect and future each of the verbs there given. To do this, cut off the final -ō and add the terminations -abam, -ābās, etc., for the imperfect, and -ābō, -ābis, etc., for the future.

VOCABULARY 2.

ar-ō (arable), I plough.

festin-ō, I hasten.

imper-ō (imperative), I command.

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 3.

Learn the perfect indicative active and the present imperative active of amo (p. 4).

Note.—In the perfect indicative the third person plural termination -ēre is chiefly used in poetry.

12. In the table of the imperative the pronouns *thou* and *ye* are added to distinguish singular from plural; no pronouns need, however, be used in translating a Latin imperative, so that in this mood a single English word may form a complete sentence.

Learn Vocabulary 3 (p. 7), and conjugate in the perfect indicative and present imperative each of the verbs there given, cutting off the final -ō and adding the terminations -āv-ī, -āv-istī, etc.

VOCABULARY 3.

dubit-ō (dubitative), I doubt, I pugn-ō (pugnacious), I fight.
hesitate.
super-ō (insuperable), I overcome.
vulner-ō (vulnerable), I wound.

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation

LESSON 4.

13. FIRST (OR A*) DECLENSION.

MODEL: porta, (f.), gate. Base, port-. Plural. Singular. Nominative. port-a, a gate. port-ae. gates. Vocative. port-a, gate! port-ae, gates! Accusative. port-am, a gate. port-ās. gates. Genitive. of a gate. port-ārum, of gates. port-ae, Dative. port-ae, to a gate. port-is, to gates. Ablative. port-ā. in, with, or from port-is, in, with, or a gate. from gates.

Obs.—A and the are not, as a rule, expressed in Latin. Thus porta means gate, or a gate, or the gate.

CAUTION.—' To' in the translation of the dative portae does not imply motion (see § 22). A preposition denoting in, with, or from, is often required with the ablative.

Learn the nominative, vocative, accusative, and genitive cases of **porta**, singular and plural.

* The declensions are also known according to the characteristic vowel of the genitive plural, as follows:—

		Gen. Sing. Ending.	Gen. Pl. Ending.	Characteristic.
First Dec	clensio	n ae	ārum	A
Second	,,	i	ōrum	0
Third	,,	is	ium or um	I or Consonant
Fourth	,,	ūs	uum	U
Fifth	,,	ēī or eī	ērum	E

14. Latin substantives are of three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

Substantitives of the first declension are feminine, unless they denote male persons.

(In this book, m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, *i.e.* either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.)

- 15. The two numbers, singular and plural, are distinguished in Latin, as in English, by terminations; e.g. port-a, gate, port-ae, gates.
- 16. Cases are more numerous in Latin than in English, where the objective (which corresponds to the Latin accusative) does not differ in form from the nominative, except in some pronouns, e.g. who (nominative), who-m (objective), who-se (possessive).
- 17. Rule.—The nominative, as in English, expresses the subject of the sentence, and the verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

puella cantat the girl sings puellae cantant the girls sing

Obs.-This rule is known as the "first concord."

18. Rule.—The vocative denotes the person addressed.

cantā, puella sing, girl cantāte, puellae sing, girls

19. Rule.—The accusative, like the objective case in English, denotes the direct object of a transitive verb.

rēgīna puellam amat the queen loves the girl rēgīna puellās amat the queen likes girls

Note.—In Latin the verb usually stands at the end of the clause.

20. Rule.—The genitive case answers to the English possessive case and also expresses nearly all the other meanings of the preposition of.

rēgīnae fīlia

rēgīna insulae turba nautārum the queen's daughter or the daughter of the queen the queen of the island a crowd of sailors

Note.—In Latin, a genitive sometimes precedes, but more often follows, the substantive on which it depends.

21. Learn Vocabulary 4 (below), and form the nominative, accusative, and genitive (singular and plural) of six of the substantitives there given. In order to do this:—cut off from each substantive in the Vocabulary its final-a; the base then remains. To the base add the several terminations -am, -ae, -ās, -arum, as shewn in the table. Thus, the base of fīlia is fīli-; the accusative singular is therefore fīli-am, the genitive singular fīli-ae, etc.

Obs.—In this declension the vocative has the same form as the nominative.

Vocabulary 4.

audāci-a, -ae, f. (audacity), pugn-a, ae, f. (pugnacious), boldness. battle. fēmin-a,-ae, f. (feminine), woman. rēgīn-a, -ae, f., queen. fili-a, -ae, f. (filial), daughter. ros-a, -ae, f., rose. naut-a, -ae, m. (nautical), sailor. sapienti-a, -ae, f. (sapient), wispoēt-a, -ae, m., poet. dom. procell-a, -ae, f., storm. silv-a, -ae, f. (silvan), wood. puell-a, -ae, f., girl. turb-a, -ae, f. (turbulent), crowd.

Obs.—After each substantive in these vocabularies the termination of the genitive singular is given, in order to show to which of the five declensions the substantive belongs.

LESSON 5.

Learn the whole of the declension of porta (p. 7).

22. RULE.—The dative is used with verbs of showing, telling, and giving to express the indirect object, i.e. the person or thing to whom something is shown, told, or given.

nautīs hastās donāte

reginam nautae indicavi I pointed the queen out to the sailor give the sailors spears (or give spears to the sailors)

Note.—In Latin the indirect object usually precedes the direct object, as it always does in English if no preposition is used.

23. The ablative answers the questions Where? When? Wherewith? and Whence? Rules for the first, second, and fourth of these usages will be given later on.

Obs.—The ablative does duty for some lost cases: hence the variety of its usages.

24. Rule.—The ablative answering the question Wherewith? is called the ablative of the instrument, and denotes the thing by means of which (i.e. wherewith) a thing is done.

nautae hastis pugnābant rēgīnaturbam sapientiā superāvit

the sailors were fighting with spears the queen overcame the crowd by wisdom

Note.—The ablative is usually placed just before the verb.

Learn Vocabulary 5, and decline agricola, insula, and vita throughout like porta.

VOCABULARY 5.

agricol-a, -ae, m. (agriculture), farmer. culp-ō (culpable), I blame. dēlect-ō (delectable), I delight. don-o (donor), I give (as a present). fer-a, -ae, f., wild beast. habit-ō (inhabit), I inhabit.

hast-a, -ae, f., spear. indico (indicate), I point out. insul-a, -ae, f. (insular), island. patri-a, -ae, f. (patriot), native land, country. pecuni-a, -ae, f. (pecuniary), money, sum of money. vīt-a, -ae, f. (vital), life.

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 6.

25. PART OF THE CONJUGATION OF SUM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Preser	NT TENSE.	
sum,	I am	sumus,	we are
es,	thou art	estis,	ye are
est,	he is	sumus, estis, sunt,	they are
	1 MPERFI	ECT TENSE.	
eram,	I was	erāmus,	we were
erās,	thou wast	erātis,	ye were
erat,	he was	erāmus, erātis, erant,	they were
	Futur	E TENSE.	
erō,	I shall be	erimus,	we shall be
eris,	thou wilt be	eritis,	ye will be
erit,	he will be	erunt,	we shall be ye will be they will be
	Perfe	CT TENSE.	
fu-ī,	I was or I have been	fu-imus,	we were or

fu-i, I was or I have been
fu-isti, thou wast or thou hast
been
fu-it, he was or he has been
fu-it, he was or he has been
fu-it they were or we have
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
fu-itinus, they were or they have
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
fu-itinus, they were or they have
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
been
fu-itinus, been
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
been
fu-itinus, been
been
been
fu-itinus, we were or we have
been
been
been
fu-itinus, been
been
been
fu-itinus, been
been
been
fu-itinus, been
been
been

Learn the above four tenses of sum; also Vocabulary 6 (p. 12).

26. RULE.—With the verb sum the completion of the predicate stands in the same case as the subject.

poëtae filia r ë g i n a erit the poet's daughter will be queen

Here **erit** forms an incomplete predicate, and **rēgīna** completes the predicate: hence **rēgīna** is in the same case as **fīlia**, the subject. Compare in English "I am he."

NOTE.—If the subject is contained in the verb, the completion of the predicate is in the case in which the subject would be if separately expressed, namely the nominative; e.g. Nautae sumus, We are sailors.

27. Rule.—The ablative answering the question Where? is preceded by the preposition in, in.

in silvīs sumus

we are in the woods

For an important exception to this rule, see § 55, p. 24.

Vocabulary 6.

aquil-a, -ae, f. (aquiline), eagle. caus-a, -ae, f., cause. columb-a, -ae, f., dove. Galli-a, -ae, f., Gaul (now France). in, in, on. Ītali-a, -ae, f., Italy. ōr-a, -ae, f., shore. stultiti-a, -ae, f. (stultify), folly. vi-a, -ae, f., way, street. victōri-a, -ae, f., victory.

LESSON 7.

Learn the declension of dominus (p. 13).

28. Rule.—An adverb immediately precedes the word it modifies.

rēginam non amāmus

we do not like the queen

29. Learn Vocabulary 7 (below), and decline amīcus, equus, fluvius, servus, cutting off from each the final -us, and adding the terminations -e, -um, -ī, etc.

Obs.—This is the only declension of Latin substantives in which the vocative differs in form from the nominative.

Vocabulary 7.

amīc-us, -ī, m. (amicable), friend.
av-us, -ī, m., grandfather.
domin-us, -ī, m. (dominate),
master, lord.
equ-us, -ī, m. (equine), horse.
fīli-us, -ī, m. (filial), son.
fīluvi-us, -ī, m., river.
gladi-us, -ī, m. (gladiator), sword.
hort-us, -ī, m. (horticulture),
garden.

inimic-us, -I, m. (inimical), enemy medic-us, -I, m. (medical), surgeon, physician, doctor.
morb-us, -I, m. (morbid), disease.
nec-ō, 1st conjugation (internecine), I kill, I slay.
nōn, adverb, not.
serv-us, -I, m. (servile), slave.

taur-us, -I, m. (servile), slave.

30. SECOND (OR 0) DECLENSION.

Substantives of this declension are classed as follows:-

- (1) Masculines (and a few feminines) with nominative singular ending in -us;
 - (2) Masculines with nominative singular ending in -er;
 - (3) Neuters with nominative singular ending in -um.
 - (1) Example: dominus (m.), lord. Base, domin-.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	domin-us	domin-ī
Voc.	domin-e	domin-ī
Acc.	domin-um	domin-õs
Gen.	domin-ī	domin-ōrum
Dat.	domin-ō	domin-īs
Abl.	domin-ō	domin-īs

(2) Example: magister (m.), master. Base, magistr-.
Singular. Plural.

Singular.

N.V. magister

Acc. magistr-um

Gen. magistr-ī

Dat. magistr-ō

Abl. magistr-ō

magistr-ī magistr-ōs magistr-ōrum magistr-īs magistr-īs

Obs.—The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases e is dropped before r.

A few substantives, however, retain e before r throughout. Example: puer (m.), boy. Base, puer-.

5	Singular.	Plural.	So too, vir (m.), man		
N.V.	puer	puer-ĭ		Singular.	Plural.
Acc.	puer-um	puer-ōs	N.V.	vir	virî
Gen.	puer-ī	puer-ōrum	Acc.	virum	virōs
Dat.	puer-ō	puer-īs	Gen.	virī	virðrum
Abl.	puer-ō	puer-īs	D.Abl.	virō	virīs

(3) Example: regnum (n.), kingdom. Base, regn.

	Singular	•	Fiurai.
N. V.	A. regn-um		regn-a
Gen.	regn-ī		regn-örum
Dat.	regn-ō		regn-is
Abl.	regn-ō		regn-Is

LESSON 8.

Learn the declension of magister and puer (p. 13).

- 31. Substantives of the second declension in -er are nearly all declined like magister, i.e. the e is dropped before the r in all cases except the nominative and vocative singular. Like puer are declined socer, father-in-law, gener, son-in-law, and liberi (plural only), children; also vir, man.
- 32. Learn Vocabulary 8 (below), and decline ager, aper, faber, liber like magister, and gener, socer, vir, like puer. The terminations must be added to the base, not to the nominative singular: the base is found by cutting off the termination (i) of the genitive singular, which is given in the vocabulary after the nominative of each word.
- 33. Rule.—In Latin a verb common to two clauses of the same sentence is usually expressed in the second clause only, and the conjunction (meaning and or but) is frequently omitted in such sentences.

puellae rosās, puerī equos amant girls like roses, and boys like horses

Obs.—Puellae rosās amant et puerī equōs amant would be very awkward Latin.

Vocabulary 8.

ager, agr-1, m. (agriculture), field.
aper, apr-1, m., wild boar.
et, conj., and.
faber, fabr-1, m. (fabric), carpenter
Gall-us, -1, m., a Gaul.
gener, gener-1, m., son-in-law.
liber, libr-1, m. (library), book.
liber-1, -ōrum, m. pl., children.

magister, magistr-ī, m. (magistrate), master.
minister, ministr-ī, m., servant.
puer, puer-ī, m. (puerile), boy.
-que, conj., and.
semper, adverb, always.
socer, socer-ī, m., father-in-law.
vir, vir-ī, m. (virile), man.

Obs.—-que is added to the second of the two words which it connects; e.g. ministri servique, servants and slaves. For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) -que forms part of the word to which it is appended; e.g. servique. -que connects more closely than et.

LESSON 9.

Learn the declension of regnum (p. 13), and revise the conjugations and declensions in Lesson 1-8, viz. the conjugation of amo (p. 4) and sum (p. 11) and the declension of porta (p. 7), dominus, magister, and puer (p. 13).

- 34. Learn Vocabulary 9 (below), and decline like regnum any five substantives ending in -um. This may be done by cutting off the -um and replacing it by -i, -ō, etc.. e.e. proeli-um, proeli-ī, proeli-ō.
- 35. The vocative and accusative of all neuter substantives are the same in form as the nominative, both in the singular and in the plural. In the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural neuter substantives of any declension end in -a.

Vocabulary 9.

aedific-ō, 1st conjugation (edi- oppid-um, -ī, n., town. fice), I build. aqu-a, -ae, f. (aquatic), water. argent-um, -ī, n., silver. aur-um, -i, n. (aureole), gold. bell-um, -i, n. (bellicose), war. cael-um, -ī, n. (celestial), heaven. dēdic-ō. 1st conjugation, I dedicate. de-us, -ī, m. (deity), god. $d\bar{o}n$ -um, -i, n. (donor), gift. gaudi-um, -ī, n. (gaudy), joy. initi-um, -I, n. (initial), beginning narr-ō, 1st conjugation, I narrate, I relate.

praemi-um, -i, n., reward. proeli-um, -I, n., battle. Roman-us, -ī, m., a Roman. saepe, adverb, often. scut-um, -ī, n., shield. spoli-ō, ist conjugation (spoil), I pillage. templ-um, -I, n., temple. terr-a, -ae, f. (terrestrial), earth. tract-o, 1st conjugation (tractable), I handle. venēn-um, -ī, n., poison, drug. vin-um, -i, n. (vine), wine.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

36. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in -us or -er, in the feminine in -a, and in the neuter in -um.

In the masculine and neuter these adjectives are declined like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension.

na, bonum, good. Base, bon-. ra, nigrum, black. Base, nigr-.

			•	•		
	Si	ngular.	1		Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
Voc.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-a
Acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
Gen.	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-ī	bon-õrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
Dat.	bon-ö	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-is	bon-is	bon-īs
Abl.	bo n-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-īs	bon-is	bon-īs

Obs.—In committing the above table to memory, the learner should repeat the form for each of the three genders in the nominative singular, then the three forms for the vocative singular, and so on for each case in the singular, and afterwards similarly for each case in the plural.

Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V. 1	niger	nigr-a	nigr-um	nigr-ĭ	nigr-ae	nigr-a
Acc. 1	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-a
Gen. 1	nig r-ī	nigr-ae	nig r-I	nigr-örum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat. 1	igr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-Is	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl. 1	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

Note.—Some few adjectives of this class with nominative singular masculine in -er retain e before r in the base.

Example: tener, tenera, tenerum, tender. Base, tener-.

Singular.					Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.V.te	ner	tener-a	tener-um	tener-ī	tener-ae	tener-a
Acc. te	ner-um	tener-am	tener-um	tener-ös	tener-ās	tener-a
Gen. te	ner-I	tener-ae	tener-I	tener- örum	tener- ārum	tener- örum
Dat. te	ner-ö	tener-ae	tener-ð	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is
Abl. te	ner-ō	tener-ā	tener-ö	tener-īs	tener-is	tener-i s

17

LESSON 10.

Learn the declension of bonus (p. 16), repeating forms for each gender separately, i.e. learn the columns downwards; afterwards repeat the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms for each case together, thus-bonus, bona, bonum, bone, bona, bonum.

37. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers. Thus we may write timidus nauta, a timid sailor, or nauta est timidus, the sailor is timid; but if we wish to express in Latin a timid girl or the girl is timid, timidus, the masculine form of the adjective is inadmissible, and we must write timida puella, puella est timida, because the feminine substantive puella requires a feminine form of the adjective. The same holds good with regard to number and case: we say timidi nautae, timid sailors, timide nauta (vocative). timid sailor! in each instance changing the ending of the adjective in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it is applied.

Note.—Substantives denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine. Substantives of the first declension (except those which denote males) are feminine; in the second declension those ending in -um in the nominative singular are neuter, the rest (except some ending in -us) are masculine.

38. Rule.—An adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun must be in the same gender, number, and case as the substantive to which it refers.

nauta malus poētam doctum gladiō longō necāvit insula est magna poētae verba stulta erant

the wicked sailor slew the clever poet with a long sword. the island is large the poet's words were foolish

Obs. 1.—This rule is known as the "second concord."

Obs. 2.—This rule applies whether the adjective is an attribute, as in the first example, or the completion of the predicate, as in the second example.

Note.—A qualifying adjective used as an attribute usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but an adjective of quantity or number (e.g. multus) usually precedes.

39. The declension of ager lātus (m.), a wide field, is given in full as an illustration of the "second concord":—

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	ager	lātus	agrī	lātī	
Voc.	ager	lāte	agrī	lātī	
Acc.	agrum	lātum	agrös	lātōs	
Gen.	agrī	lātī	agrörum	lātōr um	
Dat.	agrõ	lātō	agrīs	lātīs	
Abl.	agrō	lātō	agrīs	lātis	

40. Rule.—The **dative** is used with many Latin adjectives which correspond to English adjectives commonly followed by *to* or *for*.

puerī verba a v ō grāta erant

the boy's words were pleasing to his grandfather

gladii longi bellö sunt idönei

long swords are suitable for war

Learn Vocabulary 10 (below), and decline throughout nauta timidus (together), insula magna (together), grātum verbum (together).

VOCABULARY 10.

amoen-us, -a, -um (amenity), pleasant.
bon-us, -a, -um (boon), good.
confirm-ō, ist conjugation (confirm), strengthen, cheer.
doct-us, -a, -um (doctor), learned, skilled.
fact-um, -i, n. (fact), deed.
grāt-us, -a, -um (grateful), pleasing, welcome.
long-us, -a, -um, long.
magn-us, -a, -um (magnify), great, large.
mal-us, -a, -um, bad, wicked.

mult-us, -a, -um (multiply),
much, many.
noxi-us, -a, -um (noxious), hurtful.

perfid-us, -a, -um, perfidious,
treacherous.

perfcul-um, -ī, n., danger.
splendid-us, -a, -um, splendid.

stult-us, -a, -um (stultify),
foolish.
timid-us, -a, -um, timid.
verb-um, -ī, n. (verb), word.
viti-um, -ī, n. (vitiate), vice.

LESSON 11.

Learn the declension of niger and tener (p. 16), repeating each according to the directions given on p. 17 for bonus.

- 41. The following adjectives are declined like tener:
- (I) Adjectives ending in -fer, denoting bearing (cp. fero, I bear), or -ger, denoting carrying (cp. gerō, I carry); e.g. frügifer, frügifera, frugiferum, fruit-bearing; armiger, armigera, armigerum, carrying arms.
 - (2) asper, aspera, asperum, rough. liber, libera, liberum, free. lacer, lacera, lacerum, torn. miser, misera, miserum, wretched. Rhyme: -Like tener compound words in -fer Retain the e; so those in -ger; Add asper, rough, and lacer, torn. With liber, free, and miser, lorn.
- 42. The declension of impiger, active, qualifying nauta, a sailor (a masculine substantive), is here given in illustration of the second concord.

Singular.			P	Plural.		
N.V.	nauta	impiger	nautae	impigrī		
Acc.	nautam	impigrum	nautās	impigrõs		
Gen.	nautae	impigrī	nautārum	impigrörum		
Dat.	nautae	impigrō	nautis	impigrīs		
Abl.	nautā	impigrō	nautis	imp igrīs		

Learn Vocabulary II (below), and decline throughout (a) puer aeger, (b) puella misera, (c) lilium pulchrum.

VOCABULARY II.

aeger, aegr-a, aegr-um, sick, iniger, nigr-a, nigr-um (nigger). ill.agn-us, -i, m., lamb.alb-us, -a, -um (alb), white. asper, asper-a, asper-um (asperity), rough, harsh. de-a, -ae, f. (deity), goddess. frigid-us, -a, -um (frigid), cold. immolo, 1st conjugation (immolate), I sacrifice. lili-um, -i, n., lily. miser, miser-a, miser-um (miserable), wretched, unhappy.

black. ocul-us, -i, m. (oculist), eye. parv-us, -a, -um, small, little. pulcher, pulchr-a, pulchr-um, beautiful. ruber, rubr-a, rubr-um (rubric), sacer, sacr-a, sacr-um, sacred. tener, tener-a, tener-um, tender. delicate.

vast-ö, 1st conjugation, I lay waste. vent-us, -ī, m., wind.

43. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (PASSIVE VOICE).

MODEL: amō, I love, I like.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-or,	I am loved or am being loved	am-āmur,	we are loved or are being loved
am-āris,	thou art loved or art being loved	am-āminī,	ye are loved or are being loved
am-ātur,	he is loved or is being loved	am-antur,	they are loved or are being loved

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābar,	I was being loved	am-ābāmur,	we we	re being loved
	thou wast being	am-ābāminī,	ye wei	re being loved
am-ābāre, 📝	loved			ŭ
am-ābātur,	he was being loved	am-ābantur,	they	were
	•		lon	

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābor, am-āberis or	I shall be loved		we shall be loved
am-aberis or am-abere,	thou wilt be loved	am-animini,	ye will be loved
am-ābitur,	he will be loved	am-ābuntur,	they will be loved

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āt-us*sum	I was loved or have	am-āt-ī*sumus, we were loved or
	been loved	have been loved
am-āt-us* es,	thou wast loved or	am-āt-I*estis, ye were loved or
	hast been loved	have been loved
am-āt-us* est,	he was loved or has	am-āt-ī*sunt they were loved or
	been loved	have been loved

^{*} The forms given in the table are masculine, and are to be used only if the subject is masculine; see \S 50.

With a feminine singular subject use amāta instead of amātus.

,,	neuter ,,	,,	,, amātum	,,	,,
,,	feminine plural	,,	,, amātae	,,	amātī.
	neuter		amāta		

LESSON 12.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of amō from the table on p. 20.

- 44. In learning these two tenses notice that:—
- (1) The passive terminations correspond to a certain extent with the active; e.g. am-at (active), am-āt-ur (passive); am-ābam (active), am-ābar (passive).
- (2) In the passive the terminations of the imperfect indicative are (except in the first person singular) the same as those of the present preceded by -āb-.
- **45.** Rule.—The **agent**, *i.e.* the **person by whom** an action is performed, is expressed by the ablative preceded by the preposition $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ or \mathbf{ab} .

aprī ab agricolīs necantur wild boars are slain by the farmers

aprī hastīs ā nautīs necā- wild boars were being slain with spears by the sailors

Obs. 1.—The form **ā** is generally used before a consonant other than **h**, **ab** before **h** or a vowel.

Obs. 2.—The ablative of the agent (with \bar{a} or ab) answering the question By whom? must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of the instrument (without a preposition) answering the question Wherewith? (§ 24).

46. Rule.—The masculine and neuter of adjectives are often used in a general sense without a substantive, if the meaning is clear. This usage is common in the plural; it is not found in the nominative singular masculine.

bonī laudantur multa dēsīderāmus good men are praised we feel the want of many things.

Learn Vocabulary 12 (p. 22), and conjugate throughout the present indicative passive of honoro, and the imperfect indicative passive of desidero.

Vocabulary 12.

castig-5, I chastise. cib-us, -i, m., food. dēfatīg-ō, I fatigue. dësider-ö, I desire, I long for. dīviti-ae, -ārum, f.pl., riches. honor -o, I honour. Marc-us, -i, m., Marcus (a Roman name). recre-ō (recreation), I refresh. somn-us, -ī, m. (somnolent), sleep

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 13.

Learn the future and perfect indicative passive of amo (p. 20).

- 47. In learning the future indicative passive compare the terminations with those of the future indicative active (p. 4).
- 48. In the perfect indicative passive amātus is the perfect participle passive and means having been loved. It is declined like bonus (p. 16), and varies according to the number and gender of the subject, e.g. in addressing a man say amātus es, in addressing a woman amāta es; so too the towns have been billaged = oppida spoliata sunt.

Learn Vocabulary 13 (below), and conjugate throughout the future indicative passive of castigo, and the perfect indicative passive of honoro.

Vocabulary 13.

amīciti-a, -ae, f., friendship. benevolenti-a, -ae, f. (benevolence), good-will. incit-o, -are (incite), drive forwards, excite. lacrim-a, -ae, f., tear.

numquam, never. perit-us, -a, -um, skilful. rustic-us, -a, -um (rustic), country (adj.).urbān-us, -a -um, (suburban),

city, town (adj.).

The insertion of the infinitive termination after a verb in the vocabulary indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs; e.g. -are signifies " first conjugation."

LESSON 14.

THIRD (OR I AND CONSONANT) DECLENSION.

- 49. Substantives of this declension fall into two classes :—
 - (r) those which have genitive plural ending in -ium (I-substantives),
 - (2) those which have genitive plural ending in -um preceded by a consonant (consonant-substantives).
- 50. The endings in this declension also vary according as the substantive is (a) masculine or feminine, or (b) neuter.
- 51. On looking out a substantive of the third declension in a vocabulary or dictionary, the student will find (1) the nominative singular, (2) the genitive singular (whence, by taking off the suffix -is, the base may be ascertained); (3) the gender. In order to decline the word fully it is necessary also to know whether it is an I-substantive or a consonant-substantive, or (in other words) whether the genitive plural ends in -ium or in -um.
- 52. This last point may be decided thus in the case of masculine and feminine words:—

parisyllabic substantives (i.e. those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is equal), and substantives with base ending in two consonants, are I-substantives (genitive plural -ium);

imparisyllabic substantives (i.e. those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is unequal) with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives (genitive plural -um).

53. Of neuters of the third declension those with bases ending in -āl-, -īl-, or -ār- are I-substantives; the rest are consonant-substantives.

Learn the declensions on p. 26. Learn Vocabulary 14 (p. 24).

VOCABULARY 14.

```
abund-ö, -äre, abound.
                                       nāv-is, -is, f. (naval), ship.
castr-a, -ōrum, n.pl., camp.
                                       Neptūn-us, -i, m., Neptune (god
cīv-is, -is, c. (civic), citizen.
                                          of the sea).
clād-ēs, -is, f., disaster.
                                       nūb-ēs, -is, f., cloud.
class-is, -is, f., fleet.
                                       nunti-ō, -āre (nuncio), announce.
coll-is, -is, m., hill.
                                       orn-ō, -āre, adorn.
compar-o, -are, get together, pre-
                                       pror-a, -ae, f., prow.
                                       serv-ö, -āre, observe.
conserv-ō, -āre (conservatory),
                                       spect-o, -are (spectacle), behold,
  preserve.
                                          look at, see.
coron-a, -ae, f. (crown), garland.
                                       turr-is, -is, f. (turret), tower.
firm-o, -are (firm), strengthen.
                                       \mathbf{vall}-is, is, f., valley.
host-is, -is, c. (hostile), enemy, foe
                                       vest-is, -is, f. (vest), garment
```

LESSON 15.

Learn the declension of dens and imber (p. 27). Decline throughout nox and urbs; also in the singular only linter. Learn Vocabulary 15 (p. 25).

- **54.** In the third declension the base (*i.e.* the invariable part of the word, to which endings are added) is seldom ascertainable from the form of the nominative singular, and nothing but practice will surmount the difficulty. It is therefore necessary always to learn the genitive singular as well as the nominative singular of substantives of this declension.
- 55. Rule.—When *place where* is expressed by the name of a town an old case called the **locative** is employed, or (if no distinctive form of the locative exists) the ablative is used instead.

```
The following have distinctive locative forms:

Town-names of the 1st declension singular (termination ae);

2nd ,, ( ,, i);

A few town-names of the 3rd ., ( ,, i).

Examples:
```

3rd decl. singular: Praeneste, Praeneste; Praenestl, at Praeneste.

""", "", "", Carthägö, Carthage; Carthägini, at Carthage.

""", "", "", plural: Tralles, Tralles; Tralles.

Note.—The above rule applies also to the name of any island small enough to be regarded as one place. With words other than names of towns and small islands a preposition is required; e.g. in the garden = in horto; in Gaul = in Gallia.

Vocabulary 15.

Athēn-ae, -ārum, f.pl., Athens. Corinth-us, -ī, f., Corinth. dens, dent-is, m. (dentist), tooth. ēduc-ō, -āre, educate. fons, font-is, m. (fount), fountain. Gabi-ī, -ōrum, m.pl., Gabii (a town). Gād-ēs, -ium, f.pl., Gades (Cadiz). glans, gland-is, f. (gland), acorn.

incol-a, -ae, m., inhabitant.
mons, mont-is, m. (mount),
mountain.
pons, pont-is, m. (pontoon), bridge
Rômul-us, -ī, m., Romulus.
Tarent-um, -ī, n., Tarentum.
urbs, urb-is, f. (urban), city.
vor-ō, -āre (voracious), devour.
vulp-ēs, -is, f., fox.

LESSON 16.

Learn the declension of cubile and animal (p. 27). Decline throughout sedile and calcar; also in the singular only mare and in the plural only rete.

Learn Vocabulary 16 (below).

56. There are some exceptions to the rule given in § 52 to the effect that imparisyllabic words with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives; the most important are—

mās (base mar-), m., male, genitive plural marium.
nix (,, niv-), f., snow, ,, nivium.
vis (,, vīr-), f., force, ,, vīrium.

Vis has in the singular acc. vim, abl. vi, and no gen. or dat.

Vocabulary 16.

acūt-us, -a, -um (acute), sharp.
animal, animāl-is, n., animal.
calcar, calcār-is, n., spur.
cubīl-e, -is, n. (cubicle), bed, lair.
fess-us, -a, -um, tired, weary.
mar-e, -is, n. (marine), sea.

n-ō, -āre (natation), swim.
rēt-e -is, n. (reticule), net.
sedīl-e, -is, n., seat.
vectīgal, vectīgāl-is, n., tax, tribute.
violenti-a, -ae, f., violence.

THIRD DECLENSION: I-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

57. First Example: nubes (f.), cloud. Base, nub-.

Singular. Plural. N.V. nūb-ēs nūb-ēs Decline also:— Acc. nüb-em nüb-ēs or -īs Gen. nūb-is nüh-ium Dat. nūb-ī nūh-ibus Abl. nüb-e nüb-ibus

caedes, f., slaughter. clādēs, f., disaster. vulpēs, f., fox.

Second Example: hostis (c.), enemy. Base, host-.

Singular. Plural. N.V. host-is host-ēs Acc. host-em host-ēs or -īs Gen. host-is host-ium Dat. host-i host-ibus Abl. host-e host-ibus

Decline also : auris, f., ear. collis, m., hill. crīnis, m., hair. ovis, f., sheep. piscis, m., fish. vallis, f., valley.

Obs.—The accusative plural of masculine and feminine I-substantives is generally printed with the ending -es, but the older and more correct ending -is is frequently used in editions of the poets.

58. Of the I-substantives ending in -is in the nominative singular, a few end in -im in the accusative singular and in -i in the ablative singular. In some words these terminations are the only forms, in others usage varies.

Example: clāvis (f.), key. Base, clāv-.

Singular. Plural. Decline also:— N. V. clāv-is clāv-ēs messis, f., harvest. Acc. clav-em or -im clav-es or -is **nāvis,** f., ship. Gen. clāv-is clāv-ium puppis, f., stern. Dat. clāv-i clāv-ibus turris, f., tower. Abl. clāv-e or -ī clāv-ibus

Note.—Sitis, f., thirst, and tussis, f., cough, always have acc. sing. ending in -im and abl. sing. ending in -i; avis, f., bird, cīvis, c., citizen, and ignis, m., fire, have abl. sing. ending in either -e or -ī.

> RHYME.—avis, cīvis, ignis, give either form to ablative. sitis, tussis both maintain im and I in cases twain. messis, turris, puppis, nāvis all "turn either way" like clavis.

THIRD DECLENSION: I-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (continued).

59. Here belong all imparisyllabic substantives with base ending in two consonants; t or d at the end of the base is dropped before the -s of the nominative singular.

Example: dens (m.), tooth. Base, den Singular. Plural. Decline a N.V. den-s dent-ēs (base art-), f., art. Acc. dent-em dent-ës- or -īs arx ,, arc-), f., citadel. Gen. dent-is dent-ium mens (,, ment-), f., mind. Dat. dent-ī dent-ibus nox ,, **noct-**), f., night. Abl. dent-e dent-ibus sors ,, sort-), f., lot. urbs .. urb-), f., city.

60. A few **I**-substantives end in **-er** in the nominative singular.

Example: imber(m.), shower. Base, imbr-.

Singular. Plural.

N.V. imber
Acc. imbr-em imbr-ēs or -īs
Gen. imbr-is imbr-ium Decline also:—
linter, f., boat.

Dat. imbr-i imbr-ibus
Abl. imbr-e or -i imbr-ibus

NEUTER.

61. Of neuter I-substantives some retain -e in the nominative singular; others with base ending in all or ar drop e and shorten the preceding vowel.

First Example: cubile (n.), bed. Base, cubil-.

Singular. Plural. N.V.A. cubīl-e cubīl-ia Gen. cubīl-is cubīl-ium D. Abl. cubīl-i cubīl-ibus

Decline also: mare (genitive plural, marum), sea. rēte (ablative singular, rēte), net. sedīle. seat.

Second Example: animal (n.), animal. Base, animal-.

Singular. Plural.

N.V.A. animal animāl-ia

Gen. animāl-is animāl-ium

D. Abl. animāl-ī animāl-ibus

Decline also:—

calcar (base calcar-), spur. vectigal (base vectigal-), tax.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

62. In the first three examples the nominative singular is formed with the termination s; in the last four no termination is in the nominative singular added to the base.

First Example: princeps (c.), chief. Base, princip-. Base ending in **p**, **b**, or **m**.

```
Singular. Plural.

N.V. princep-s princip-és

Acc. princip-em princip-és

Gen. princip-is princip-ibus

Dat. princip-i princip-ibus

Abl. princip-e princip-ibus
```

Obs.—Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (e to i).

Second Example: miles (m.), soldier. Base, milit. Base ending in t or d.

```
Decline also:—
    Singular.
                  Plural.
                                  aetās
                                           (base aetāt-), f., age.
N.V. mile-s
                  mīlit-ēs
                                  custōs
                                               ., custod-), c., guar-
Acc. milit-em
                  mīlit-ēs
                                                  dian.
Gen. mīlit-is
                  mīlit-um
                                  hērēs
                                               ,, hērēd-), c., heir.
Dat. milit-i
                  mīlit-ibus
                                  lapis
                                               ,, lapid-), m., stone.
Abl. mīlit-e
                  mīlit-ibus
                                  obses
                                               ,, obsid-), c., hostage.
                                  sacerdos (
                                               ., sacerdot-), c., priest.
                                  virtūs
                                               ., virtūt-), f., virtue.
```

Obs.—Before the final s of the nominative singular the t or d with which the base ends is dropped.

Third Example: lex (f.), law. Base, leg-. Base ending in c or g.

```
Decline also :—
    Singular
                   Plural.
                                       calix (base calic-), m., cup.
N.V. lex
                  lēg-ēs
Acc. leg-em
                  lēg-ēs
                                       Crux
                                                    cruc-), f., cross.
Gen. lēg-is
                  lēg-um
                                       iūdex (
                                                    iūdic-), c., judge.
                  lēg-ibus
Dat. lēg-ī
                                       lux
                                                    lūc-), f., light.
Abl. leg-e
                  lēg-ibus
                                                    pāc-), f., peace.
                                       pax
                                       rādix (
                                                    rādīc-), f., root.
                                       VOX
                                                    voc-), f., voice.
```

Obs.—For cs or gs Latin always has x.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (continued).

Fourth Example: leō (m.), lion. Base, leōn-. Base ending in n.

In most masculine and feminine substantives with bases ending in **n**, the **n** is dropped in the nominative singular and the preceding vowel (if not an **o**) is changed to **o**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline	
N.V. leō Acc. leōn-em Gen. leōn-is Dat. leōn-i Abl. leōn-e	leõn-ēs leõn-um leõn-ibus leõn-ibus		se cardin-), m., hinge flāmin-), m., priest. ōrātiōn-), f., speech. ordin-), m., row. sanguin-), m., blood.
Aot. leon-e	reon-inus	virgō (virgin-), f., virgin

Fifth Example: flos (m.), flower. Base, flor. (In bases which originally ended in s the s becomes r between two vowels.) Base ending in r (original s).

Singular. N.V. flös Acc. flör-em Gen. flör-is Dat. flör-i Abl. flör-e	Plural. flör-ës flör-ës flör-um flör-ibus flör-ibus	Decline also:— arbor (base arbor-), f., tree. calor (,, calor-), m., heat. cinis (,, ciner-), m., ashes. honor (,, honor-), m., honour. pudor (,, pudor-), m., shame. ros (,, ror-), m., dew. tellus (, tellur-), f earth
		tellūs (,, tellūr-), f., earth.

Sixth Example: anser (m.), gander. Base, anser. Base ending in 1 or r.

Singular. N.V. anser Acc. anser-em Gen. anser-is Dat. anser-i	Plural. anser-ēs anser-um anser-ibus	Decline also: für (base für-), c., thief. imperator (base imperator-), m., commander. mulier (base mulier-), f., woman. sõl (base sõl-), m., sun.
Abl. anser-e	anser-ibus	vultur (base vultur-), m., vulture.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (continued).

Seventh Example: pater (m.), father. Base, patr- (see § 65).

Pater, father, mater, mother, frater, brother, have e before r in the nominative and vocative singular only.

Singular. $N.V.$ pater	Plural. patr-ēs	Decline also :—
Acc. patr-em Gen. patr-is Dat. patr-I Abl. patr-e	patr-ēs patr-um patr-ibus patr-ibus	fräter (base frätr-), m., brother. mäter (,, mätr-), f., mother.

NEUTER.

63. First Example: nomen (n.), name. Base, nomin-. Base ending in n, 1, or r.

Singular. Plu		Plural.	Decline also :
N.V.A	nõmen	nōmin-a	flumen (base flumin-), river.
Gen.	nōmin-is	nōmin-um	fulgur (fulgur-), lightning limen (,, limin-), threshold.
Dat.	nōmin-ī	nōmin-ibus	lūmen (,, lūmin-), light.
Abl.	nōmin-e	nōmin-ibus	sēmen (., sēmin-), seed.

Second Example (with vowel change) opus (n.), work. Base, oper. Base ending in n, l, or r.

Here the base originally ended in s, which between two vowels regularly becomes r.

Decline also :--

Sin N.V.A Gen. Dat. Abl.	ngular opus oper-is oper-i oper-e	Plural. oper-a oper-um oper-ibus oper-ibus	corpus crūs decus genus iūs latus ōs	(base corpor-), body. (,, crūr-), leg. (,, decor-), ornament. (,, gener-), race, kind. (,, iūr-), right, law. (,, later-), side. (,, ōr-), mouth.
			os pectus	(,. or-), mouth. (,. pector-), breast.

The following are similarly declined, though their bases do not end in n, l, or r :

```
caput (base capit-), n., head. | cor (base cord-), n., heart.
lac (base lact-), n., milk.
```

LESSON 17.

Learn the declension of princeps and mīles (p. 28). Decline throughout hiems, trabs, custos, hērēs virtūs. Learn Vocabulary 17 (below).

64. Rule.—The time *when* an action is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Arabës campos hieme et aestate peragrant the Arabs wander about the plains in winter and summer

VOCABULARY 17.

aestās, aestāt-is, f., summer.
cīvitās, cīvitāt-is, f. (city), state.
colloc-ō, -āre (collocation), place,
put.
Crass-us, -ī, m., Crassus (a Roman general).
eques, equit-is, m. (equestrian),
horse-soldier, (pl.) cavalry.
hibern-a,-ōrum,n.pl. (hibernate),
winter quarters.
hiems, hiem-is, f., winter.
mīles, mīlit-is, m. (military),
soldier.
obtemper-ō, -āre (with dative),
obey.
palūs, palūd-is, f., marsh.

pedes, pedit-is, m. (pedestrian). foot-soldier, (pl.) infantry. peragr-ō, -āre, wander about. **praed-a, -ae,** f. (predatory), booty. princeps, princip-is, c. (principal), chief. quass-ō, -āre, shatter. rān-a, -ae, f., frog. revoc-ō, -āre (revoke), recall. sicc-us, -a, -um, dry. tempestās, tempestāt-is, f. (tempest), storm, weather. trabs, trab-is, f., beam, timber. virtūs, virtūt-is, f., valour, virtue.

LESSON 18.

Learn the declension of lex, leō, flōs, anser, pater (pp. 28-30).

65. It is to be noted that pater, mater, frater, owing to the loss of the e before r in the base, break the rule that parisyllabic masculines and feminines are I-substantives; the rule is also broken by a few other words, the most common of which are—

canis (base can-), c., dog, genitive plural canum, iuvenis (,, iuven-), m., young man, ,, iuvenum, senex (,, sen-), m., old man, ,, senum, vătôs (,, văt-), c., seer, ,, vătum,

all declined as consonant-substantives.

Rhyme (cp. § 51).—

The genitive in canis, frater, Vātēs, senex, pater, mater, Ends in -um; so iuvenis. But -ium ends mās, nix, and vīs.

Learn Vocabulary 18 (below).

Vocabulary 18.

arbor, arbor-is, f., tree.
consul, consul-is, m., consul (a
Roman magistrate).
dux, duc-is, m. (duke), leader,
general.
flös, flör-is, m. (floral), flower.
grex, greg-is, m. (congregate),
flock.
homö, homin-is, c., m un, person.
ignävi-a, -ae, f., cowardice.
index, indic-is, m. (judicial),
judge (properly juryman).
leö, leön-is, m. (leonine), lion.
lex, leg-is, f. (legal), law.

māter, mātr-is, f. (maternal), mother.
nīd-us, -ī, m., nest.
ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, f., speech.
ōrātor, ōrātōr-is, m., orator.
passer, passer-is, m., sparrow.
pastor, pastōr-is, m. (pastoral), shepherd.
pater, patr-is,m.(paternal), father.
pulchritūdō, pulchritūdin-is, f., beauty.
rām-us, -ī, m. (ramify), branch.
rex, rēg-is, m. (regal), king.
sermō, sermōn-is, m. (sermon), discourse, conversation.

LESSON 19.

Learn the declension of nomen and opus (p. 30). Decline throughout fulgur, corpus, crus; also in the plural only caput, os.

66. Os (base oss-), n., bone, is declined as a consonant substantive, but has genitive plural ossium.

Learn Vocabulary 19 (p. 33).

Vocabulary 19.

cadăver, cadăver-is, n. (cadaverous), dead body, corpse. caput, capit-is, n. (capital), head. carmen, carmin-is, n., song, poem. celebr-ō, -āre, celebrate. curv-us, -a, -um, winding, curved. dedecus, dedecor-is, n., disgrace. infamy. excruci-ō, -āre (excruciate), torment, distress. foedus, foeder-is, n. (federal), treaty. frigus, frigor-is, n. (frigid), cold. fulgur, fulgur-is, n., flash of lightning iter, itiner-is, n. (itinerary), march, journey.

litus, litor-is, n. (litoral), shore.
onus, oner-is, n. (onerous), burden.
perturb-ō, -āre (perturb), dismay, frighten.
port-ō, -āre (portable), carry.
praeterit-us, -a, -um (preterite), past.
rūs, rūr-is, n. (rural), country (opposed to town).
scelus, sceler-is, n., crime.
tempus, tempor-is, n. (tempor-ary), time.
viol-ō, -āre, violate.
vulnus, vulner-is, n. (vulnerable), wound.

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

- 67. These adjectives fall into two main divisions:—
 - (1) Adjectives with genitive plural in -ium, declined like I-substantives of the third declension;
 - (2) Adjectives with genitive plural in -um, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension.

Obs.—Wherever in the following tables one form only is given for any case, it is used for all genders alike.

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE I-SUBSTANTIVES.

- 68. This division consists of :-
 - (a) Adjectives which have three forms in the nominative singular, one for each gender;
 - (b) Adjectives which have two forms in the nominative singular, one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter;
 - (c) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

Singular. Plural. M F. N. M. and F. N N, V, ācer ācr-is ācr-e ãcr-ēs ācr-ia Acc. ācr-em ācr-em ācr-e ācr-ēs or īs ācr-ia Gen ācr-is ācr-ium Dat. ācr-ī ācr-ibus Abl.ācr-ī ācr-ibus

Note.—Celer, celeris, celere, swift, alone retains the e before r throughout; it has genitive plural celerum.

Singular. Plural. M. and F. N. M. and F. N. N.V. trist-is trist-e trist-ēs trist-ia Acc. trist-em trist-e trist-ēs or -īs trist-ia Gen. trist-ium trist-is Dat. trist-ī trist-ibus Abl.trist-ī trist-ibus

Singular. Plural. M. and F. N. M. and F. N. N.V.fēlix fēlīc-ēs fēlīc-ia Acc. fēlīc-em fēlix fēlic-ēs or īs fēlīc-ia Gen . fēlīc-is fēlīc-ium fēlīc-ibus Dat. fēlīc-ī fēlīc-ibus Abl.fēlīc-ī or -e

Plural. Singular. M. and F. N. M. and F. N. N.V.prüdent-ës prūdent-ia prūdens Acc. prūdent-em prūdens prūdent-ēs or -īs prūdent-ia prüdent-ium Gen. prūdent-is prūdent-ibus Dat prüdent-ī prūdent-ibus Abl.prūdent-ī or -e

Adjectives Declined like Consonant-Substantives.

- 70. This division consists of :-
 - (a) Adjectives of the comparative degree;
 - (b) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable.
- 71. Examples (a) longior, longius, longer (§ 84). Base, longior(b) pauper, poor. , pauper-

		(b) paupe	1, poor.		,, paup
Singular.			Pl	ural.	
	M. and F. N.			M. and F.	N.
N, V.	longior	longius	-	longiōrēs	longiōr-a
Acc.	longiōr-em	longius	1	longiōrēs	longiōr-a
Gen.	longi	ōr-is	1	longi	ōr-um
Dat.	longi	ōr-ī		longi	ōr-ibus
Abl.				longiōr-ibus	
	Singu	lar.	1	Pl	ural.
	M. and F.		N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	I	pauper	1	pauper-ēs	none
Acc.	pauper-em	pau	iper	pauper-ēs	none
Gen.	n. pauper-is		pauper-um		
Dat.	Dat. pauper-ī			pauper-ibus	
Abl.	Abl. pauper-e		i	pa	uper-ibus

LESSON 20.

Learn §§ 67, 68, and the declension of **ācer** and **tristis** (p. 34).

72. Example of a Substantive of the First Declension declined with an Adjective of the Second Class.

Sagitta (f.), arrow, like porta (§ 13); celer, celeris, celere, swift, like acer, but retaining e before r throughout.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. sagitta celeris	sagittae celerēs
Acc. sagittam celerem	sagittās celerēs (or celerīs)
Gen. sagittae celeris	sagittārum celerium
Dat. sagittae celerī	sagittīs celeribus
Abl. sagittā celerī	sagittīs celeribus

Decline throughout according to the above model:—

auriga fortis, brave charioteer.
omne certamen, every contest.

Learn Vocabulary 20 (below).

VOCABULARY 20.

ācer, ācr-is, ācr-e (acrid), keen, fierce, ardent.
alacer- alacr-is, alacr-e (alacrity), cheerful, energetic, active.
aurīg-a, -ae, m., charioteer.
brev-is, -e, brief, short.
Carthāgō, Carthāgin-is, f., Carthage (a city of Africa).
celer, celer-is, celer-e (celerity), swift.
certāmen,certamin-is, n., contest.
Cicerō, Cicerōn-is, m., Cicero (a Roman orator).
dolor, dolōr-is, m. (dolorous), pain, grief.
dulc-is, dulc-e (dulcet), sweet.

exanim-ō, -āre, kill. fidel-is -e (fidelity), faithful. fort-is, -e (fortify), brave. grav-is, -e (grave), heavy, severe. heri, adv., yesterday. hodiē, adv., to-day. Horati-us, -ī, m., Horace (a Roman poet). omn-is, -e (omnibus), all, every; (pl.) everyone, everybody. plor-o, -are (deplore), bewail. sagitt-a, -ae, f., arrow. trist-is, -e, sad. ūtil-is, -e (utility), useful. Vēi-i, -ōrum, m.pl., Veii (an Italian town).

LESSON 21.

Learn the declension of felix and prudens (p. 34).

73. Rule.—Verbs of calling, thinking, considering, etc., when used in the active voice, govern an accusative of the direct object, and may take another accusative as predicate to the first to complete their sense.

Ciceronem eloquentem pu- we consider Cicero eloquent

74. Rule.—The adjectives dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy, are constructed with the ablative case.

puer prae mils indignus est

the boy is unworthy of rewards

Learn Vocabulary 21 (below and decline together throughout auriga audax.

VOCABULARY 21.

appell-ō, -āre (appeal), call. audax, gen. audāc-is (audacious), bold. Caesar, Caesar-is, m., Caesar (a celebrated Roman general). caten-a, -ae, f. (concatenation), consili-um, -ī, n. (counsel), plan, counsel. copi-ae, -arum, f.pl. (copious), forces, troops. -a, -um (dignity), dign-us. worthy. fēlix, gen. fēlīc-is (felicity), happy, fortunate. fug-ō, -āre (fugitive), but to flight.

indign-us, -a, -um, unworthy. infelix, gen. infelic-is (infelicity), unhappy, unfortunate. infidel-is, -e (infidel), unfaithful. ingens, gen. ingent-is, immense. laus, laud-is, f. (laud), praise. oner-o, are (onerous), load. praestans, praestant-is, excellent. prūdens, gen. prūdent-is, wise, prudent. put-ō, -āre, think, consider. rapax, gen. rapāc-is, rapacious, greedy. sapiens, gen. sapient-is (sapient), wise, learned. turp-is. -e (turpitude), base.

LESSON 22.

Learn the declension of longior and pauper (p. 35).

75. Rule.—In comparisons quam means than, and constructed with the same case after it as before it.

virī fortiōrēs quam fēminae sunt cūr Caesarem fēliciōrem quam Pompēium putās? māiōra dōna n a u t ī s quam mīlitibus dōnāte

why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompeius?

men are stronger than women

give greater gifts to sailors than to soldiers

76. Rule.—Instead of quam followed by a substantive in the nominative or accusative, a substantive in the ablative may express that with which the comparison is made.

virī fēminīs fortiōrēs sunt cūr Caesarem Pompēiō fēlīciōrem putās ? men are stronger than women why do you think Caesar more fortunate than Pompeius? 77. Rule.—Many adjectives implying verbal action are constructed with a genitive; such are memor, mindful; immemor, unmindful; plēnus, full; avidus, greedy.

Gallia est plēna cīvium Rōmānōrum

Learn Vocabulary 22. Decline together throughout carmen dulcius; also melior causa in the singular and urbs inops in the plural.

VOCABULARY 22.

arm-a, -ōrum, n.pl., arms. clāmor, clāmor-is, m. (clamour) shout.cur, adv., why? dīves, gen. dīvit-is, rich. dulcior, gen. dulcior-is (dulcet), sweeter. fēlīcior, gen. fēlīcior-is (felicity), happier, more fortunate. immemor, gen. immemor-is, unmindful. inops, gen. inop-is, helpless. interdum, adv., sometimes. lūn-a, -ae, f. (lunar), moon. māior, gen. māior-is (major), greater.

Mars, Mart-is, m. (martial), Mars (the Roman god of war).

meli-or, gen. meliōr-is (ameliorate), better.

memor, gen. memor-is (memory), mindful.

min-or, gen. minōr-is (minor), less, smaller.

nihil, indeclinable, n. (annihilate), nothing.

pauper, gen. pauper-is (pauper), poor.

sõl, sõl-is, m. (solar), sun.

superstes, gen. superstit-is, surviving.

vigil, vigil-is, vigilant, watchful.

LESSON 23.

FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.

- **78.** This declension contains substantives of two classes :—
 - (1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nominative singular ending in -us;
 - (2) Neuter words, with nominative singular ending in -ū.

(1) Example: gradus (m.), step. Base, grad.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V. grad-us	grad-ūs
Acc. grad-um	grad-ūs
Gen. grad-ūs	grad-uum
Dat. grad-uī	grad-ibus
Abl. grad-ū	grad-ibus

(2) Example: genū (n.), knee. Base, gen-.

Singular.	Plural.
N.V.A. gen-ū	gen-ua
Gen. gen-ūs	gen-uum
Dat. gen-ū	gen-ibus
Abl. gen-ū	gen-ibus

Obs.—Some substantives, of which the commonest are arcus (bow), artus (limb), lacus (lake), have dative and ablative plural ending in -ubus (arcubus, artubus, lacubus); some others have either -ibus or -ubus in these cases.

Learn the declension of gradus and genū (above).

Learn Vocabulary 23, and decline together throughout portus magnus and cornū longum.

VOCABULARY 23.

ac-us, -ūs, f., needle.
arc-us, -ūs, m. (arch), bow.
corn-ū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army).
cum, prep. (with ablative), accompanied by, with.
curr-us, -ūs, m., chariot.
dexter, dextr-a, dextr-um (dexterous), on the right hand, right.
exercit-us, -ūs, m., army.
explōrātor, explōrātōr-is, m.
(explore), spy.
fin-ēs, -ium, m.pl., territories.
foli-um, -ī, n. (foliage), leaf.

fruct-us, -ūs, m., fruit.
gen-ū, -ūs, m. (genuflect), knee.
grad-us, -ūs, m. (grade), step.
intr-ō, -āre, enter.
man-us, -ūs, f. (manual), hand.
numer-ō,-āre (numeration), count.
par-ō, -āre, prepare.
port-us, -ūs, m. (port), harbour.
querc-us, -ūs, f., oak.
umbr-a, -ae, f. (umbrella), shade.
ūtilior, gen. utiliōr-is (utility),
more useful.
valid-us, -a, -um, strong.
vīs-us, -ūs, m. (visual), sight.

LESSON 24.

FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

79. Example: dies (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), day. Base, di-.

Cim mula m	T01 1
Singular.	Plural.
N.V. di-ēs	di-ēs
Acc. di-em	di-ēs
Gen. di-ēī	di-ērum
Dat. di-ēī	di-ēbus
Abl. di-ē	di-ēbus

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except dies.

Obs. 1.—Most nouns of this declension have no plural. Only dies and res (f.), thing, have genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Obs. 2.—If the last letter of the base is a consonant, the genitive and dative singular end in $e\bar{i}$ (not $\bar{e}\bar{i}$); e.g. fid- $\bar{e}s$ (f.), faith, has genitive and dative singular fid- $e\bar{i}$.

80. RULE.—The time over which an action extends is put in the accusative case.

multos dies pugnābāmus we were fighting for many days

Learn the declension of dies (above).

Learn Vocabulary 24, and decline together throughout parva res.

Vocabulary 24.

aci-ēs, -ēī, f., line of battle.
ann-us, -ī, m. (annual), year.
crās, adv., to-morrow.
di-ēs, -ēī, m. or (in sing.) f., day
faci-ēs, -ēī, f., face.
fid-ēs, -eī, f. (fidelity), faith,
loyalty, allegiance.

plāniti-ēs, -ēī, f., plain.
remedi-um, -ī, n., remedy.
r-ēs, -eī, f. (real), thing, affair.
segniti-ēs, -ēī, f., sloth, apathy.
speci-ēs, -ēī, f. (specious), pretence,
semblance.
sp-ēs, -eī, f., hope.

LESSON 25.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 76.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

81. The following nine adjectives of the first class have genitive singular of all genders ending in -ius (sometimes -ius), and dative singular of all genders ending in i.

```
sõlus, sõla, sõlum, alone.
tõtus, tõta, tõtum, whole.
ünus, üna, ünum, one.
ullus, ulla, ullum, any (after a negative).
nullus, nulla, nullum, no, none.
uter, utra, utrum, which (of the two)?
neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither.
alter, altera, alterum, the one (of two), the other (of two), the
second (of two).
alius, alia, aliud, one (of several), another (of several).
```

Example: nullus, nulla, nullum, no, none. Base, null-.

Singular.			Plural.			
	\mathbf{M} .	F.	N.	\mathbf{M} .	F.	N.
Nom.	null-us	null-a	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-a
Acc.	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ös	null-ās	null-a
Gen.	null-īus	null-īus	null-īus	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
Dat.	null-ī	null-ī	null-ī	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
Abl.	null-ō	null-ā	null-ö	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Obs.—Alius has nominative and accusative singular neuter aliud, and genitive singular alīus; the latter is rarely found. (The dative singular is aliī.)

NOTE. I. The quantity of -i in the genitive singular ending is, as a rule, long, except in alterius, genitive singular of alter, and the compounds of uter, mentioned below.

Note.—2. Uter has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable, while the former part is declined just as when not compounded:—

```
utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, whichever (of the two). uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, which (of the two) you please. uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of the two). utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs, which (of the two) you will.
```

82. The numeral adjectives duo, two, and tres, three, are thus declined.

Μ.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc. duös or duo	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
Gen. duōrum or duum	duārum	duōrum	trium	
or duum	or duum	or duum		
Dat. duõbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	
Abl. duõbus	duābus	duöbus	tribus	

Like duo decline ambō, both.

83. IDIOMS.

alter labörābat, alter cantābat one of the two was working, the other was singing alius laborābat, alius cantābat one was working, another was singing alteri superābant, alteri one party was conquering, the other superābantur party were being conquered alius aliud indicābat one was pointing out one thing. another (was pointing out) another alius aliā viā ambulābat one was walking by one road, another (was walking) another

Learn Vocabulary 25, and decline unus homo (together) and duo cives (together).

Vocabulary 25.

captiv-us, -i, m., captive.
conspect-us, -ūs, m., sight, spectacle.
cre-ō, -āre, create.
culp-a, -ae, f. (culpable), blame.
exspect-ō, -āre, await.
frūment-um, -i, n., corn.
hōr-a, -ae, f., hour.
mors, mort-is, f. (mortal), death.

nāvis longa, f., battle-ship, manof-war.

nēmō, acc. nēminem, dat. nēmini (gen. and abl. supplied by nullus), no one.

redit-us, -ūs, m., return.

suppedit-ō, -āre, supply.

vestīgi-um, -ī, n. (vestige), footprint, trace, track.

LESSON 26.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

84. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes: e.g. longus, long; longior, longer; longissimus, longest.

There is, however, this difference between the two languages in the use of the degrees of comparison, that whereas in English a standard of comparison is always expressed or distinctly understood (e.g. "longer than this," longest of all"), in Latin the comparative may denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree; thus longior sometimes means somewhat long or too long, and longissimus often means very long.

85. General Rule for the Formation of the Comparative and Superlative.

To the base of the positive add-

-ior to form the nom. sing. masc. of the comparative;

-issimus,, ..., superlative.

All comparative adjectives are declined like **longior** (§ 71), and all superlative adjectives are declined like **bonus** (§ 36).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
(Nom.Sin	ng.Masc.)			
longus	long	long-	long-ior	long-issimus
tristis	sad	trist-	trist-ior	trist-issimus
fēlix	fortunate	fēlīc-	fēlīc-ior	fēlīc-issimus
prūdens	discreet	prüdent-	prūdent-ior	prūdent-issimus

86. IDIOM.

An English attributive adjective which serves not to identify but to describe a person is represented in Latin by a phrase in apposition.

Cicero, vir illustrissimus, Pater the illustrious Cicero was called Patriae vocātus est

Father of his Country

carmina Horātiī, poētae doctissimī, ab omnibus laudantur

the Odes of the learned poet Horace are praised by all

Obs. 1.—A substantive agrees in case with that to which it is in apposition. This is known as the third concord.

Obs. 2.—In Latin the superlative is often used (as above), where in English the positive is preferred.

Learn Vocabulary 26, and write down the other two degrees of comparison (nominative singular masculine) of doctus, dulcior, gravissimus, gratior, ingentior, sapientissimus, splendidus, stultior, tristissimus, utilis.

Vocabulary 26.

advers-us -a, -um, adverse. rēs adversae, f.pl., adversity (lit. adverse affairs). altus, -a, -um (altitude), high. crūdēl-is, -e, cruel. ēloquens, gen. ēloquent-is, eloquent.

fag-us, -i, f., beech. ferr-um, -i, n., iron. pernicios-us, -a, -um, pernicious dangerous.

prosper-us, -a, -um, prosperous. res prosperae, f.pl., prosperity (lit. prosperous affairs). sagax, gen. sagāc-is, sagacious,

shrewd.

LESSON 27.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

Classes of Exceptions to the above Rule.

87. I. The superlative of adjectives with nominative singular masculine ending in -er is formed by adding -rimus to the nominative singular masculine. (The comparative is formed by adding -ior to the base according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

	sitive. Sing. Masc.)	Base.	Comparative	. Superlative.
pulcher tener pauper ācer celer	beautiful tender poor sharp swift	pulchr- tener- pauper- ācr- celer-	pulchr-ior tener-ior pauper-ior ācr-ior celer-ior	pulcher-rimus tener-rimus pauper-rimus ācer-rimus celer-rimus
Note	also—			
vetus	old	veter-		veter-rimus

88. II. Adjectives ending in -dicus, -ficus, and -volus form their comparative and superlative as if their positive ended in -dicens (base, dicent-; cp. dicō, I say), -ficens (base, ficent-; cp. faciō, I make), -volens (base, volent-; cp. volō, I will).

EXAMPLES.

Base from which

Positive. Comp. and Superl. Comparative. Superlative.

maledicus slanderous	maledicent-	maledicent-ior	maledicent-issimus
		magnificent-ior	magnificent-issimus
benevolus benevolent	benevolent-	benevolent-ior	benevolent-issimus

Note also-

egenus	egent-	egent-ior	egent-issimus
needy prōvidus foreseeing	prövident-	prövident-ior	prōvident-issimus

89. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than u in the combination gu or qu) have no special forms for the comparative or superlative; the comparative is expressed by magis, more, and the superlative by maximē, mos!, preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive. pius arduus	dutiful lofty	Base. pi- ardu-	Comparative. magis pius magis arduus	Superlative. maximē pius maximē arduus
But				
pinguis antīquus	fat ancient	pingu- antiqu-	pingu-ior antīqu-ior	pingu-issimus antīqu-issimus
Learn V	ocabular	V 27.		

Vocabulary 27.

antiqueus, -a, -um (antique), inimīciti-a, -ae, f. (inimical), enmity, hostility. ancient. ardu-us, -a, -um (arduous), loftv. inter, prep. (with acc.), between. magnific-us, -a, -um, magnificent, benevol-us, -a, -um, benevolent. cerv-us, -i, m., stag. distinguished. de, prep. (with abl.), concerning. maledic-us, -a, -um, slanderous. egēn-us, -a, -um, needy. pingu-is, -e, fat. fābul-a, -ae, f. (fable), story. pi-us, -a, -um, dutiful. frāter, frātr-is, m. (fraternal), providens, provident-is (provibrother. dent), foreseeing. Helvēti-a, -ae, f., Switzerland. vetus, gen. veter-is (veteran), old.

LESSON 28.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

Adjectives Irregularly Compared.

90. I. The following six adjectives form their superlative by adding -limus to the base.

Positive. facilis difficilis similis	easy difficull like	Base. facil- difficil- simil-	Comparative. facil-ior difficil-ior simil-ior	Superlative. facil-limus difficil-limus simil-limus
dissimilis gracilis	unlike slender	dissimil- gracil-	dissimil-ior gracil-ior	dissimil-limus gracil-limus
humilis	low	humil-	humil-ior	humil-limus

Obs.—All other adjectives in -ilis form the superlative in the ordinary way; e.g. fragilis, brittle, fragilissimus.

91. II. Three indeclinable adjectives are thus compared.

Positive. Comparative. Superlative. frūgī of worth frūgālior frūgālissimus nēquam worthless satis sufficient satius (n.), preferable

92. III. The following adjectives have a comparative and superlative not formed from the positive.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus	good	melior	optimus
malus	bad	pēior	pessimus
magnus	great	māior	maximus
parvus	small	minor	minimus
dīves	rich	dītior	dītissimus
multus	much	plūrēs (pl.)	plūrimus

Note.—Plūres is thus declined.

N. V.A. plūrēs N. plūrium D.A. plūribus

Plūs, gen. plūris, more, is a neuter substantive; the dative and ablative are not in use. Plūs is also used as an adverb.

93. Rule.—Similis, *like*, and dissimilis, *unlike*, are used with a genitive or dative of that which the person or thing they refer to is like or unlike.

nihil est mortī tam simile nothing is so like death as sleep quam somnus

Note.—Instead of morti above mortis might stand.

Learn Vocabulary 28.

Vocabulary 28.

adūlātiō, adūlātiōn-is, f., flattery amor, amōr-is, m., lovē. Catilin-a, -ae, m., Catilina (a Roman noble who conspired against the state). difficil-is, -e, difficult. dissimil-is, -e (dissimilar), unlike. gracil-is, -e, slender. nēquam, indeclinable, worthless.
opt-ō, -āre (option), wish for.
plēn-us, -a, -um, full.
recit-ō, -āre, recite, read aloud.
senectūs, senectūt-is, f., old age.
simil-is, -e, (similar), like.
timor, timōr-is, m. (timorous),
fear.

LESSON 29.

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED (continued).

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

94. IV. The following adjectives have no positive degree.

(Cp. iuvenis, young man)iūnior younger ocior swifter senior older(nātū minimus) ocissimus (nātū maximus)

Obs.—Nātū is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting birth. Hence nātū minimus, nātū maximus, mean respectively least and greatest by birth.

95. V. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs, are irregularly compared:—

Adverb.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
citra, on this side		citerior, nearer, hither	citimus
dē, down		dēterior, worse	dēterrimus
extră, outside	(exterus)	exterior, outer	(extrēmus) extimus
infrā, below	inferus, lower	inferior	infimus or imus
intrā, within		interior, inner	intimus
post, after	(posterus)	posterior, later	(postrēmus, last) postumus, last-
prae, before		prior, former	primus [born
prope, near		propior, nearer	proximus
suprā, above	superus, upper	superior, higher, previous	suprēmus, highest, last summus, highest
ultrā, beyond	and the second	ulterior, farther, remoter	ultimus, farthest, last, remotest

Note.—Exterus and posterus are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nominative singular masculine being in use.

96. Rule.—Some adjectives, instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often specify certain parts of the persons or things denoted by those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are:—

primus, first medius, middle extrēmus, last infimus or lowest mus, highest fmus.

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus: prīmum vēr, the beginning of spring; media urbs, the middle of the city; extrēma ōrātiō, the end of the speech; summus mons, the top of the mountain; infima āra, the lowest part of the altar; reliqua praeda, the rest of the booty.

Learn Vocabulary 29.

Vocabulary 29.

```
ad, prep. (with acc.), to, until.
aetās, aetāt-is, f., generation,
age.
bon-um, -ī, n., good.
Britanni-a, -ae, f., Britain.
Catō, Catōn-is, m., Cato (a celebrated Roman).
cottīdiē, adv., daily.

Hispāni-a, -ae, f., Spain.
mūr-us, -ī, m. (mural), wall.
oppugn-ō, -āre, besiege.
pars, part-is, f., part.
prōvinci-a, -ae, f., province.
sacerdōs, sacerdōt-is, c., priest,
priestess.
vēr, vēr-is, n. (vernal), spring.
```

LESSON 30.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

97. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, ego and tū, are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. ego, I	nos, we
Acc. mē	nõs
Gen. meī	{nostrī nostrum (partitive*)
Dat. mihī or mihi	nõbīs
.4 <i>bl</i> . mē	nōbīs
Singular.	Plural.
N.V. tū, thou or you	võs, ye or you
Acc. tē	∀ōs
Gen. tuī	{ vestrī vestrum (partitive*)
Dat. tibi or tibī	vōbīs
Abl. tē	võbīs

^{*} I.e. dependent on a word implying part, e.g. multi nostrum, many of us.

98. There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it*; but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (Lesson 32).

PERSONAL PRONOUNS—REFLEXIVES.

99. The personal pronouns of the first and second person serve as reflexives; *e.g.* mē culpō, *I blame myself*.

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, viz. sē, himself, herself, itself, themselves, which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. sē or sēsē

Gen. suī

Dat. sibi or sibī

Abl. sē or sēsē

100. Rule.—The nominative of the personal pronoun is used when it is emphatic or when a contrast is expressed.

ego salto, tū natās

I am dancing, you are swimming

101. Rule.—A composite subject (i.e. a subject consisting of two or more substantives or pronouns) has its verb in the plural; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the "prior" person, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ego et Marcus errāmus tū et Tullia errātis Marcus and I are wrong you and Tullia are wrong

Learn Vocabulary 30.

Vocabulary 30.

amīc-us, -a, -um, friendly. argent-um, -ī, n., silver, money. cār-us, -a, -um, dear. condemn-ō, -āre, condemn. expugn-ō, -āre, storm, take by

improb-us, -a, -um, dishonourable. natō,-āre (natation), swim. nōt-us, -a, -um, known, well known.

LESSON 31.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

102. These are formed from the personal and reflexive pronouns, singular and plural:—

From Singular Pronouns. meus, mea, meum, my. tuus, tua, tuum, thy. suus, sua, suum, his, her, its.

From Plural Pronouns. noster, nostra, nostrum, our. vester, vestra, vestrum, your. suus, sua, suum, their.

Note.—When the above adjectives are used otherwise than as attributes, they are rendered by mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs, instead of by my, thy, her, our, your, their.

- 103. Meus, tuus, and suus are declined like bonus, except that meus has vocative singular masculine mī; noster and vester are declined like niger (§ 36).
- 104. Suus, being formed from the reflexive sē, is generally used (except, of course, in the nominative) of something belonging to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if his in a principal sentence refers to something belonging to the subject of the sentence, we must render it by su-us, -a, -um; otherwise we must use ēius (genitive of is, ea, id, § IIO); e.g. Patrem suum necāvit, He killed his (own) father; Patrem ēius necāvit, He killed his (someone else's) father.
- 105. Rule.—Verbs and adjectives denoting nearness or approach are often constructed with a dative.

oppidā appropinquāmus Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs

Learn Vocabulary 31.

we are approaching a town the Belgae are nearest to the Germani

Vocabulary 31.

aes, aer-is, n., bronze, money.
alièn-us, -a, -um (alien), belonging to another.
aes aliènum, n., debt.
appropinqu-ō, āre, approach.
fām-a, -ae, f., fame, rumour,
report.
glauc-us, -a, -um, gray.

inimīc-us, -a, -um, hostile līber-ō, -āre, free.
marīt-us, ī, m. (marital), husband.
nox, noct-is f. (nocturnal), night.
Poen-us, -a, -um (Punic).
Carthaginian.
studi-um, -ī, n., pursuit, study.
Vergīni-us, -ī, m., Verginius.

LESSON 32.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

- 106. The demonstrative pronouns are those given below and in Lesson 33.
- (1) hīc (or hic), haec, hōc, this; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.
- (2) iste, ista, istud, that (of yours); used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.
- (3) ille, illa, illud, that (yonder) used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

107. The above pronouns are thus declined.

		Singular.			Plural.	
	Μ.	F.	N.	Μ.	\mathbf{F} .	N.
Nom.	hic or	hic haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.		hūius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.		huic]	hīs	
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	3	nīs	
		Singular.			Plural.	
	Μ.	Ĕ.	N.	Μ.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Gen.	j	stīus		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	j	stī	i	is	stīs	
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	is	stīs	
	9	Singular.	:		Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	М.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illös	illās	illa
Gen.		llīus		illörum	illārum	illörum
Dat.		1111			līs	
Abl.	illō	illā	illö		lis	

- 108. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either "this (substantival) is true," or "this (adjectival) statement is true."
- 109. Rule.—The ablative of a substantive accompanied by an adjective often forms an adjectival phrase known as the ablative of description.

Catilīna fuit ingeniō malō prāvōque

Learn Vocabulary 32.

Catilina was (a man) of an evil and corrupt disposition

VOCABULARY 32.

eximi-us, -a, -um, extraordinary, remarkable.
Graec-us, -a, -um, Greek.
ingeni-um, -I, n., genius, ability, disposition.
iuven-is, -is, m. (juvenile), young man.
magnopere, adv., greatly.

mens-a, -ae, f., table.
mox, adv., soon.
pōcul-um, -i, n., cup,
prāv-us, -a, -um (depraved), corrupt.
tant-us, -a, -um (tantamount), so
great.
uxor, uxōr-is, f. (uxorious), wife.

LESSON 33.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (continued).

110. The remaining demonstrative pronouns are—

- (4) is, ea, id, that; used of what has just been mentioned, and (when used substantivally) often to be translated he, she, it.
 - NOTE.—Idem, eadem, idem, the same, is formed from is, ea, id, and the particle -dem. Its declension is given in full after that of is on p. 54.
 - (5) ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, or himself, herself, itself.
 - Note.—Ipse has a superlative form ipsissim-us, -a, -um, very self, declined like bonus (§ 36).

11	1.					
		Singular.		1	Plural.	
	\mathbf{M} .	F.	N.	М.	F.	N.
Nom		ea.	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea.
Gen.		ius	IU.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	e			eorum	eis or iis	corum
Abl.		-	. =			
AUI.	eo	eā	еō	1	eīs or iīs	
		Singular.			Plural.	
	Μ.	F.	N.	Μ.	F.	N.
Nom		eadem	idem	idem or	eaedem	eadem
				eīdem		
Acc.	eunder	n eandem	idem	eosdem	easdem	e ade m
Gen.	ě	iusdem		e ōrund em	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīdem		isd	em or eisde	m
Abl.	eōdem	$e\bar{a}dem$	eõdem	isd	em or eisde	m
		Singular.			Plural.	
	Μ.	F.	N.	Μ.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
		ipsam		ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Gen.		ipsīus	-F	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsörum
Dat.		ipsī		ipsoi um	ipsis	-poor um
		bo			1010	

112. Rule.—The ablative may be used to express manner, and must then (except in the case of a very few words) be accompanied (1) by the preposition cum, or (2) by an adjective.

Caesar { cum celeritāte magnā celeritāte } urbī appropinquat

Caesar is approaching the city \ with speed. \ with great speed

Learn Vocabulary 33.

ipsā

ipsō

Abl. ipsō

VOCABULARY 33.

celeritās, celeritāt-is, f. (celerity).
specd.
dīligenti-a, -ae, f., diligence.
equester, equestr-is, equestr-e,
equestrian.
fīnitim-us, -a, -um, near, bordering on.

flümen, flümin-is, n., river.
māiōr-ēs, -um, m.pl., ancestors.
mod-us, -ī, m. (mode), manner.
regiō, regiōn-is, f., region.
soror, sorōr-is, f., sister.
summ-us, -a, -um (summit),
highest, greatest.

ipsīs

LESSON 34.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

113. The relative pronouns are three in number, viz. :—

Quī, quae, quod, who, which, that (generally substantival); Quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever (substantival or adjectival);

Quisquis, quidquid, whoever, whatever (substantival or adjectival).

114.

Singular.			- 1	Plural.			
	Μ.	F.	N.	1	Μ.	\mathbf{F} .	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	1	quī	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	_	cūius			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.		cui				quibus	
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	İ		quibus	

115. In the declension of quicumque the ending -cumque is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative qui, e.g.:—

M. F. N.
Sing. nom. quicumque quaecumque quodcumque quodcumque ctc. etc.

- 117. The word denoting that to which a relative pronoun relates or refers is called the antecedent. The relative is regularly of the same gender and number and person as its antecedent, but its case is determined by its own clause.
 - söl, qu'i terrārum flammīs sun, that visitest with thy beams opera omnia lustrās sun, that visitest with thy beams all the actions of the world

Obs.—In the above example sol is a masculine substantive in the vocative singular and of the second person; the relative qui is the subject of its clause and is therefore nominative, but its gender (masculine), number (singular), and person (second) are determined by its antecedent sol.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

118. The interrogative pronoun is quis, quae, quid, who? which? what? It is used both substantivally and adjectivally, except in the forms qui (nominative singular masculine) and quod (nominative and accusative singular neuter), which are adjectival only.

Examples: quis venit? who is coming? (substantival).
qui mîles venit? what soldier is coming? (adjectival).
quid vidēs? what do you see? (substantival).
quod animal vidēs? what animal do you see? (adjectival).

Singular.				Plural.			
\mathbf{M} .	F.	N.		Μ.	F.	N.	
$Nom.$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{quis} \\ \mathbf{qui} \end{array} \right\}$ $Acc.$ \mathbf{quem}	quae	(quou)	qu	ī	quae	quae	
•	quan iius	quid \ quod	qu qu	ōs ōrum	quās quārum	quae quōrum	
Dat. cu Abl. quō	ii quā	quõ			quibus quibus	•	

Obs.—Except in the forms quis, quid, the interrogative pronoun is identical with the relative.

NOTE I.—Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, who, pray? what, pray? is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle -nam to the simple interrogative.

Note 2.—Which (of the two)? is expressed by uter (§ 81).

Learn Vocabulary 34.

VOCABULARY 34.

fals-us, -a, -um, false.
immortāl-is, -e, immortal.
molest-us, -a, -um, troublesome,
burdensome, annoying.

redintegr-ō, -āre, renew. umquam, adv., ever.

LESSON 35.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

119. The indefinite pronouns are quis, qua, quid, any, and its compounds. Like the interrogative, the indefinite quis has the adjectival forms qui (nominative singular masculine) and quod (nominative and accusative singular neuter).

' Singu	Plural.			
M. F	. N.	M.	F.	N.
$Nom.$ $\left\{ egin{matrix} ext{quis} \\ ext{qui} \end{array} ight\}$ $\qquad ext{qu}$	ua {quid} {quod} (quid)	quī quōs	quae quās	qua qua
Acc. quem qu	uam {quid}	quos	quas	qua
Gen. cūiu		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. cui			quibus	
Abl. quō qı	ıā quō		quibus	

Obs. 1.—Except in the nominative singular feminine and the nominative and accusative plural neuter, the indefinite quis is identical with the interrogative.

Obs. 2.—Quis is most commonly used after si, if; nisi, unless; $n\tilde{e}$, lest (§§ 198, 235); num (§ 153).

120. Three indefinite pronouns refer to all the individuals belonging to a class, taken one by one:—

quisque each; quīlibet, any you please, any; quīvīs, any you will, any.

121. Indefinite pronouns referring in the singular to a single individual and in the plural to several are:—

quidam, a certain one; aliquis, some one.

Obs.—The force of aliquis is best remembered by means of a word which is often used instead of aliquis, viz. nonnullus (lit. not none).

122. A negative or a comparative commonly procedes **quisquam**, *any*.

Obs.—Quisquam, unlike the other indefinite pronouns, is substantival only; its adjectival equivalent is ullus (\S 81).

¹ libet = it pleases, § 268. ² vis = you will, § 254.

123. Quidam is declined thus :---

	М.	Singular. F.	N.	М.	Plural. F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	{quiddam }	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Acc.	quemdar	n quamdam	(quiddam)	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Gen. Dat. Abl.	quōdam	cūiusdam cuidam quādam	quōdam	•	n quārumdan quibusdam quibusdam	n quōrumdam

- 124. Quilibet and quivis are declined like quidam, the endings -libet and -vis remaining unchanged throughout.
- **125.** Quisquam is thus declined in the singular (the plural is not in use):—

M. F. Nom. quisquam quaequam quidquam or quicquam quemquam quidquam or quicquam Qen. cüiusquam quidquam duidquam Abl. quoquam quaquam quoquam

- 126. Quisque is declined like quisquam, and has also in the nominative and accusative singular neuter the adjectival form quodque.
- 127. The declension of aliquis (adjectival aliqui) is the same as that of the indefinite quis, except that the nominative singular feminine aliqua is adjectival only.
- 128. The following examples illustrate the use of these indefinite pronouns:—

sī quis fortiter pugnat, laudātur if any one fights bravely, he is praised

quisque facta sua narrābat e a c h m an was lelling of his own deeds

praedam aliquam ex illā pugnā comparāvērunt

puella quaedam mihī haec narrāvit

nec quisquam eā arte nos superābit

if any one fights bravely, he is praised

they got s ome booty from that battle

nor will an y one cacel us in that art

Learn Vocabulary 35 (p. 59).

VOCABULARY 35.

bon-a, -ōrum, n.pl., goods, property.

condiciō, condiciōn-is, f., condiciōn-is, pl. terms.

hūc, adv., hither.

nec, conj., nor, and ... not. pax, pāc-is, f., peace.

rog-ō, -āre (interrogative), ask.
sī, conj., if.

super-ō, -āre, overcome, excel.

LESSON 36.

Learn the conjugation of sum, pp. 62, 63.

This verb, though irregular, is given before the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

The only meanings of the subjunctive of sum which are to be learnt now are those given in this Lesson (§ 130); the meanings on p. 63 will be explained later on.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

129. The usages of the subjunctive are very various and cannot all be mastered at once. The present Lesson deals only with wishes, exhortations, and commands.

WISHES.

130. In the expression of wishes the subjunctive is usually introduced by utinam, O would that! Three tenses are used, the present tense expressing a wish with regard to the future, the imperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the present, the pluperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the past.

sim, sīs,	would that I might be would that thou might- est be	sitis, would that we might be sitis, would that ye might be sint, would that they might
sit,	would that he might be	be
essem, essēs, esset,	would that I were would that thou wert would that he were	essēmus, would that we were essētis, would that ye were essent, would that they were
fuissem, fuissēs,	would that I had been would that thou hadst been	fuissēmus, would that we had been fuissētis, would that ye had been
fuisset.	would that he had been	fuissent, would that they had been

EXHORTATIONS AND COMMANDS.

let him be

sīmus. let us be sint. let them be

- 131. In wishes, exhortations, and commands, not is expressed by nē.
- 132. Exhortations and commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative, except that in the case of prohibitions (i.e. negative exhortations and commands) ne and the present imperative cannot be used in prose, but **nöli** (singular) or **nölite** (plural) with the present infinitive is substituted; e.g. nolī ignāvus esse or nolīte ignāvī esse. do not be cowardly, lit. be unwilling (§ 254) to be cowardly.
- 133. The present imperative is the tense generally used in affirmative commands; the future imperative is characteristic of the formal language of laws and treaties.

Learn Vocabulary 36.

Vocabulary 36.

cupid-us, -a, -um (cupidity), greedy (of), desirous (of). glorios-us, -a, -um, boastful. ignāv-us, -a, -um, indolent, cowardly. loquax, gen. loquāc-is, loquacious, talkative.

proditor, proditor-is, m., traitor, betraver. quondam, adv., formerly. tāl-is, -e, such, of such a kind. temerāri-us, -a, -um, rash. vāt-ēs, -is, c. (gen. pl. vātum),

prophet. Luteti-a, -ae, f., a town, now ver-us, -a, -um (verity), true.

mendax, gen. mendac-is, mendacious, untruthful.

Paris.

Lesson 37 will be found on p. 86.

REMARKS ON THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

134. A Latin verb is conjugated by endings added to one or other of its three bases, viz. the present base, the perfect base, and the supine base.

From the **present base** are formed the present infinitive active and passive, the present participle active, and the present, imperfect, and future in finite moods, active and passive; also the gerund and gerundive.

From the perfect base are formed the perfect, pluperfect,

and future perfect active.

From the **supine** base are fomed the supines, future participle active, and perfect participle passive, including, of course, the tenses of the verb conjugated with the help of these forms.

135. The present base is ascertained by cutting off the ending of the present infinitive active. This in the 1st conjugation is -āre, thus: am-ō, infinitive am-āre, present base am-.

The perfect base is found by cutting off -I from the 1st person singular perfect indicative active, thus: amō, perfect amāvī, perfect base amāv-.

The supine base is found by cutting off -um from the accusative supine, thus: amo, supine amatum, supine base amat-.

The endings which are to be added to these bases are shown in the Table of Conjugations (pp. 64-81).

- 136. In the 1st conjugation the perfect base is nearly always formed by the addition of -āv- to the present base, and the supine base by adding -āt- to the present base. This rule may be assumed to hold good in all verbs of the 1st conjugation in the vocabularies, unless the perfect and supine are there given.
- 137. The above mentioned four forms—present indicative active (1st person singular), present infinitive active, perfect indicative active (1st person singular), and accusative supine—are known as the principal parts of a verb. In the 2nd and 4th conjugations (as in the 1st), most verbs form these principal parts like the model verbs given in §§ 139, 140, 142. In the 3rd conjugation the principal parts have to be learned for each verb separately.

§ 138. THE VERB SUM.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 137): sum, esse, fu-ī, (no supine).

Participles * { Present: none Future: futurs, futura, futurum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Present	TENSE.				
sum, es, est,	I am thou art he is	sumus, estis, sunt,	we are ye are they are			
	IMPERFEC	TENSE.				
	I was thou wast he was	erāmus, erātis, erant,	we were ye were they were			
	FUTURE	TENSE.				
eris,	I shall be thou wilt be he will be	eritis,	we shall be ye will be they will bc			
	Perfect	TENSE.				
	I was or I have been thou wast or thou hast been he was or he has been	fu-istis, fu-ērunt	we were or we have been ye were or ye have been they were or they have been			
Pluperfect Tense.						
	I had been thou hadst been he had been	fu-erātis	18, we had been , ye had been , they had been			
FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.						
fu-erō, fu-eris, fu-erit,	I shall have been thou wilt have been he will have been	fu-eritis,	s, we shall have been ye will have been they will have been			

^{*} In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES. IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES PRESENT TENSE. I should be sim. thou wouldst be sīs. (if) I were to be (in order that) I may be sit. he would be sīmus, we should be (so that) I am sītis. ye would be (although) I am sint. they would be IMPERFECT TENSE. I should be essem or forem. essēs or forēs, thou wouldst be (if) I were esset or foret. he would be (in order that) I might be essēmus or we should be (so that) I was forēmus (when, although, etc.) essētis or ve would be Iwasforētis essent or forent, they would be PERFECT TENSE. fu-erim (if) I were to have been fu-eris (so that) I was or have fu-erit rare in principal fu-erimus sentences (although) I have been fu-eritis fu-erint PLUPERFECT TENSE. I should have been fu-issem, thou wouldst have been fu-issēs. he would have been (if) I had been fu-isset. we should have been (when, although, etc.) I fu-issēmus. ve would have been had been fu-issētis. fu-issent. they would have been IMPERATIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. este. be (ye) be (thou) 08. FUTURE TENSE. thou shalt or must be ye shall or must be estōte. estō, they shall or must be he shall or must be suntō, estō. GERUND. INFINITIVE. None. esse, to be PRESENT: fu-isse, to have been Perfect: SUPINE.

None.

For compounds of sum see § 248.

fore or futur-us esse,

to be about to be

FUTURE:

§ 139. First (or A) Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Model: amo, I love, I like.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: am-āre, amāv-ī, amāt-um.

Bases: am- (present); amav- (perfect); amat- (supine).

Participles Present: am-ans (gen. amant-is), lowing Participles Future: amāt-ūrus, amāt-ūrus, amāt-ūrum, about to

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō,	I love	am-āmus,	we love
am-ās,	thou lovest	am-ātis,	ye love
am-at,	he loves	am-ant,	they love

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam,	I was loving	am-ābāmus,	we were loving
am-ābās,	thou wast loving	am ābātis,	ye were loving
am-ābat,	he was loving	am-ābant,	they were loving

FUTURE TENSE.

am ābō,	$I \ shall \ love$	am-ābimus,	we shall love
am ābis,	thou wilt love	am-ābitis,	ye will $love$
am ābit,	he will love	am-ābunt,	they will love

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī,	I loved or have loved	amāv-imus, we loved or have loved
amāv-istī,	thou lovedst or hast	amāv-istis ue loved or have
amāv-it,	he loved or has loved	loved amāv-ērunt \they loved or have or amāv-ēre loved

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eram,	I had loved	amāv-erāmus,	we had loved
amāv-erās,	thou hadst loved	amāv-erātis,	
amāv-erat,	he had loved	amāv erant,	they had loved

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

	I shall have loved		$we \ shall \ have \ loved$
amāv eris,	thou wilt have loved	amāv-eritis,	ye will have loved
amāv-erit.	he will have loved	amāv erint,	they will have loved

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-em, am-es, am-et, am-ēmus, am-ētis, am-ent, I should love thou wouldst love he would love we should love ye would love they would love

(if) I were to love (in order that) I may love (so that) I love (although) I love

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ārem, am-ārēs, am-āret, am-ārēmus, am-ārētis.

am-arent.

I should be loving thou wouldst be loving he would be loving we should be loving ye would be loving they would be loving

(if) I were loving (in order that) I might love (so that) I loved (when, although, etc.) I was loving

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erim amāv-eris amāv-erit amāv-erimus amāv-eritis amāv-erint

rare in principal sentences (if) I were to have loved (so that) I loved or have loved (although) I have loved

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-issem, amāv-issēs, amāv-isset, amāv-issēmus, amāv-issētis, amāv-issent, I should have loved thou wouldst have loved he would have loved we should have loved ye would have loved they would have loved

(if) I had loved (when, although, etc.) I had loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā, love (thou)

| am-āte, love (ye)

am-ātō, thou shalt or must love am-ātō, he shall or must love

am-ātōte, ye shall or must love am-antō, they shall or must love

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.
(Nom. am-andum)

PRESENT: am-āre, to love PERFECT: amāv-isse, to have loved

Acc. am-andum, loving Gen. am-andī Dat. am-andō

FUTURE: amātūr-us esse, to be about to love

Abl. am-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. amāt-um, to love

Abl. amāt-ū, in loving

§ 140. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Model: moneo, I advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: mon-ēre, monu-ī, monit-um.

Bases: mon- (present); monu- (perfect); monit- (supine).

Participles { Present: mon-ens (gen. monentis), advising Future: monit-urus, monit-ura, monit-urum, about to advise

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eō, I advise	mon-ēmus,	we advise
mon-ēs, thou advisest	mon-ētis,	ye advise
mon-et, he advises	mon-ent,	they advise

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbam,	I was advising	mon-ēbāmus,	we were advising
			ye were advising
mon-ēbat,	he was advising	mon-ēbant,	they were advising

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbō,	$I\ shall\ advise$	mon-ēbimus,	we shall advise
mon-ēbis,		mon ēbitis,	$ye\ will\ advise$
mon-ēbit,	he will advise	mon-ēbunt,	they will advise

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-ī,	I advised or have	monu-imus,	we advised or have
	advised		advised
monu-istī,	thou advisedst or	monu-istis,	ye advised or have
	$hast\ advised$	l	advised
monu-it,	he advised or has	monu-ērunt) they advised or
	advised	or monu-ëre	have advised

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-eram,	$I\ had\ advised$	monu-erāmus,	we had advised
monu-erās,	thou hadst advised		ye had advised
monu-erat,	he had advised		they had advised

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erō,	I shall have advised	monu-erimus,	we shall	have
	$thou\ wilt\ have\ advised$	monu-eritis, monu-erint,	ye $will$	advised
monu-erit,	he will have advised	monu-erint,	they will	muriseu

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. (See §§ 121, 147.)

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eam, mon-eās, mon-eat. mon-eāmus, mon-eātis. mon-eant,

I should advise thou wouldst advise he would advise we should advise ye would advise they would advise

(if) I were to advise (in order that) I may advise(so that) I advise (although) I advise

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērem, mon-ērēs, mon-ēret, mon-ērēmus, mon-ērētis. mon-ērent,

I should be advising thou wouldst be advising he would be advising we should be advising ye would be advising they would be advising

(if) I were advising (in order that) I might advise(so that) I advised (when, although, etc.) I was advising

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erim monu-eris monu-erit monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint

rare in principal sentences

((if) I were to have advised(so that) I advised or have advised (although) I have advised

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-issem. monu-issēs, monu-isset. monu-issēmus. monu-issētis. monu-issent,

I should have advised thou wouldst have advised he would have advised we should have advised ye would have advised they would have advised

(if) I had advised (when, although, etc.) I had advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ē. advise (thou) mon-ēte, advise (ve)

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētō, thou shalt or must advise | mon-ētōte, ye shall or must advise mon-ētō, he shall or must advise | mon-entō, they shall or must advise

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

Present: mon-ēre, to advise Perfect: monu-isse. to have (Nom. mon-endum) Acc. mon-endum, advising Gen. mon-endī

advised FUTURE: monitur-us esse, to be about to advise

Dat. mon-endō Abl.mon-endő

SUPINE.

Acc. monit-um, to advise

Abl. monit-u, in advising

§ 141. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Model: rego, I rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: reg-ere, rex-ī, rect-um.

Bases: reg- (present); rex- (perfect); rect- (supine).

 ${\bf Participles} \left\{ \begin{aligned} & P_{\tt RESENT} \colon \texttt{reg-ens} \ \, (\text{gen. regent-is}), \ \, \textit{ruling} \\ & F_{\tt UTURE} \colon \ \, \texttt{rect-uns}, \, \texttt{rect-uns}, \, \texttt{rect-uns}, \, \texttt{about to rule} \end{aligned} \right.$

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ō,	I $rule$	reg-imus,	we rule
reg is,	$thou\ rulest$	reg-itis,	$ye \ rule$
reg-it,	he rules	reg-unt,	they rule

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-ēbam,	I was ruling	reg-ēbāmus, we were ruling
reg-ēbās,	thou wast ruling	reg-ēbātis, ye were ruling
reg-ēbat,	he was ruling	reg-ēbant, they were ruling

FUTURE TENSE.

reg·am,	I shall rule	reg-ēmus,	we shall rule
reg-ēs,	thou wilt rule	reg-ētis,	ye will rule
reg-et,	he will rule	reg-ent,	they will rule

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-ī,	I ruled or have ruled	rex-imus,	
rex-istī,	thou ruledst or hast	rex-istis,	$egin{array}{ccccc} ruled & ext{or} & have \ ruled & ext{or} & have \ \end{array}$
rex-it,	he ruled or has ruled	rex-ērunt or rex-ēre	they ruled or have

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-eram,	$I\ had\ ruled$	rex-erāmus, we had ruled
	thou hadst ruled	rex -erātis, $ye \ had \ ruled$
rex-erat,	he had ruled	rex-erant, they had ruled

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rex-erō,	I shall have ruled	rex-erimus,	we shall have ruled
rex-eris,	thou wilt have ruled		ye will have ruled
rex erit,	he will have ruled	rex erint,	they will have ruled

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

I should rule reg-am, thou wouldst rule reg-ās, he would rule reg-at, we should rule reg-āmus, reg-ātis, ye would rule they would rule reg-ant,

(if) I were to rule (in order that) I may (so that) I rule

(although I rule

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erem, reg-erēs, reg-eret, reg-erēmus. reg-erētis, reg-erent,

I should be ruling thou wouldst be ruling he would be ruling we should be ruling ye would be ruling they would be ruling

(if) I were ruling (in order that) I might rule (so that) I ruled (when, although, etc.) 1 was ruling

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-erim rex-eris rex-erit rex-erimus rex-eritis rex-erint

rare in principal sentences

(if) I were to have ruled (so that) I ruled or have ruled(although) I have ruled

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-issem. rex-issēs. rex-isset, rex-issēmus. rex-issētis. rex-issent.

I should have ruled thou wouldst have ruled he would have ruled we should have ruled ye would have ruled they would have ruled

(if) I had ruled (when, although, etc.) I had ru/ed

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

rule (thou) reg-e,

reg-ite. FUTURE TENSE.

rule(ye)

reg-itō, thou shalt or must rule | reg-itote, ye shall or must rule he shall or must rule reg-itō.

reg-unto,

they shall or must rule

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

(Nom.PRESENT: reg-ere, to rule reg-endum) Perfect: rex-isse, to have ruled Acc.reg-endum, ruling FUTURE: rectur-us esse, to be Gen. reg-endī

about to rule Dat.reg-endo Abl. reg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, to rule

| Abl. rect-u, in ruling

§ 142. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Model: audiō, I hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: aud-īre, audīv-ī, audīt-um.

Bases: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

Participles Puture: audit-urus, audit-ura, audit-urum, about to hear

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iō,	I hear	aud-īmus,	we hear
aud-īs,	thou hearest	aud-ītis,	ye hear
aud-it,	he hears	aud-iunt,	they hear

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iĕbam,	I was hearing	aud-iēbāmus,	we were hearing
	thou wast hearing		ye were hearing
aud-iēbat,	he was hearing	aud iēbant,	they were hearing

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam,	I shall hear	aud-iēmus,	we shall hear
aud-iēs,	thou wilt hear	aud-iētis,	ye will hear
aud-iet,	he will hear	aud-ient,	they will hear

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī,	${\it I heard or have heard}$	audīv-imus,	we heard or have
audīv-istī,	thou heardest or hast heard	audīv-istis,	
audīv-it,	he heard or has heard	audīv-ērunt	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-eram,	I had heard	audīv-erāmus,	we had heard
audīv-erās,	thou hadst heard	audīv-erātis,	
audīv-erat,	he had heard	audīv-erant,	they had heard

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-erō,	I shall have heard	audīv-erimus	, we shall have heard
	thou wilt have heard		ye will have heard
audīv-erit,	he will hav e h eard	audiv-erint,	they will have heard

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

I should hear aud-iam, aud-iās, thou wouldst hear aud-iat. he would hear aud iāmus. we should hear aud-iātis, ye would hear aud-iant. they would hear

(if) I were to hear (in order that) I may (so that) I hear (although) I hear

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-īrem. aud-īrēs, aud-iret, aud-īrēmus, aud-īrētis. aud-irent,

I should be hearing thou wouldst be hearing he would be hearing we should be hearing ye would be hearing they would be hearing Perfect Tense. (if) I were hearing (in order that) I might hear(so that) I heard (when, although, etc.) I was hearing

audīv-erim andīv-eris audīv-erit audīv-erimus

audīv-eritis audīv-erint

rare in principal sentences

(if) I were to have heard (so that) I heard or have (although) I have heard

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-issem, audīv-issēs, audīv-isset. audīv-issētis, audiv-issent.

I should have heard thou wouldst have heard he would have heard audīv-issēmus, we should have heard ye would have heard they would have heard

(if) I had heard (when, although, etc.) I had heard

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-I, hear (thou) aud-īte. hear (ye)

FUTURE TENSE.

thou shalt or must hear aud-ītōte, ye shall or must hear aud-ītō. aud-iunto, they shall or must hear he shall or must hear aud-ītō.

INFINITIVE. GERUND

PRESENT: aud-īre. to hear Perfect: audiv-isse, to have (Nom. aud-iendum) aud-iendum, hearing Acc.

heardFUTURE: auditur-us esse, to be Gen. aud-iendī Dat.aud-iendō

about to hear

Abl.aud-iendō

SUPINE.

Acc. audit-um, to hear

Abl. audīt-ū, in hearing

§ 143. First (or A) Conjugation.—Passive Voice. Model: amo, I love, I like.

Bases: am- (present); amāv- (perfect); amāt- (supine).

 $\mathbf{Participles} \begin{cases} \mathbf{Perfect: amāt-us, amāt-a, amāt-um,} \ loved \ or \ having \\ been \ loved. \\ \mathbf{Gerundive: am-andus, am-anda, am-andum.} \ fit \ to \ be \\ loved \end{cases}$

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

 am-or,
 I am loved
 am-āmur,
 we are loved

 am-āris,
 thou art loved
 am-āminī,
 ye are loved

 am-ātur,
 he is loved
 am-antur,
 they are loved

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābār, I was being loved am-ābāmur, we were being loved am-ābāre loved am-ābātur, he was being loved am-ābantur, they were being loved am-ābantur, they were being loved

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābor, I shall be loved am-āberis or am-ābere, thou wilt be loved am-ābitur, he will be loved am-ābutur, they will be loved

PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us sum, I was or have been amāt-ī sumus, we were or have been loved amāt-us es, thou wast or hast been loved amāt-us est, he was or has been amāt-ī sunt, they were or have been loved been loved been loved been loved

PLUPERFICT TENSE.

amāt-us eram, I had amāt-I erāmus, I had amāt-I erāmus, I had amāt-I erāmus, I been amāt-I erāmus, I been amāt-I eram, I had amāt-I eram, I had amāt-I eram, I they had I loved

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us erō, I shall have amāt-ī erimus, we shall been amāt-ī eritis, ye will been amāt-ī erunt, they will loved

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Present Tense.

am er, am-ēris or) am-ëre am-ētur.

am-ēmur. am-ēminī, am-entur,

I should be loved thou wouldst be loved

he would be loved we should be loved ye would be loved they would be loved (if) I were to be loved (in order that) I may be loved (so that) I am loved

(although) I am loved

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I should be loved am-ārer,

am-ārēris *or* am-ārēre am-ārētur, am-ārēmur, am ārēminī. am-arentur,

thou wouldst be loved

he would be loved we should be loved ue would be loved they would be loved (if) I were being loved (in order that) I might be loved (so that) I was loved (when, although, etc.) I was being loved

PERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us sim amāt-us sīs amāt-us sit amāt-i simus amāt ī sītis amāt-ī sint

rare in principal sentences

(if) I were to have been loved (so that) I was loved or have been loved (although) I have been loved

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāt-us essem, amāt-us essēs, amāt-us esset. amāt-ī essētis. amāt-ī essent.

I should have been loved thou wouldst have been loved he would have been loved amāt-ī essēmus, we should have been loved ye would have been loved they would have been loved

(if) I had been loved (when, although, etc.) I had been loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-āre, be (thou) loved

am-āminī,

be (ye) loved

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātor, thou shalt or must be |

loved

[loved

am ator, he shall or must be loved | am-antor.

they shall or must be

INFINITIVE.

to be loved Present: am-ārī,

to have been loved Perfect: amāt-us esse. to be about to be loved Future: amătum îri.

§ 158. Second (or E) Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Model: moneō, I advise.

Bases: mon-(present); monu-(perfect); monit-(supine).

Participles (Perfect: monit-us, monit-a, monit-um, advised or having been advised Gerundive: mon-endus, mon-enda, mon-endum, fit to be advised

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eor, I am advised mon-ēmir, we are advised mon-ēmir, thou art advised mon-ēmini, ye are advised mon-entur, they are advised

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbār, I was being mon-ēbāmur, we were being mon-ēbāre being mon-ēbātur, he was being mon-ēbāntur, they were being

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbor, I shall be advised mon-ēberis or thou wilt be admon-ēbere mon-ēbitur, I shall be advised mon-ēbitur, we shall be advised mon-ēbitur, ye will be advised mon-ēbuntur, they will be advised

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sum, I was or have been advised monit-us est, been advised monit-us est, been advised been advised monit-us est, been advised
PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us eram, I had been monit-us eram, thou hadst been monit-us erat, he had been monit-i eram, they had been monit-i eran, they had been

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

 $\begin{array}{lll} \text{monit-us er5, } I \ shall \\ \text{monit-us eris, } thou \ wilt \\ \text{monit-us erit, } he \ will \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{lll} have \\ been \\ \text{advised} \end{array} \begin{array}{lll} \text{monit-i erimus, } we shall \\ \text{monit-i eritis, } ye \ will \\ \text{advised} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{ll} have \\ \text{monit-i erimus, } we shall \\ \text{been } \\ \text{monit-i erunt, } they \ will \\ \text{advised} \end{array}$

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ear,
mon-eāris or
mon-eātur,
mon-eātur,
mon-eāmur,
mon-eāminī,
mon-eantur,

I should be advised thou wouldst be advised he would be advised

he would be advised we should be advised ye would be advised they would be advised (if) I were to be advised (in order that) I may be advised (so that) I am advised (although)Iam advised

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērer,
mon-ērēris or
mon-ērēre
mon-ērētur,
mon-ērēmur,
mon-ērēmuri,
mon-ērentur,

I should be advised thou wouldst be advised he would be advised

he would be advised we should be advised ye would be advised they would be advised (if) I were being advised (in order that) I might be advised (so that) I was advised (when, although, etc.) I was being advised

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sim monit-us sīs monit-us sit monit-ī sīmus monit-ī sītis monit-ī sint

rare in principal sentences (if) I were to have been advised
 (so that) I was advised or have been advised
 (although) I have been advised

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us essem, monit-us essēs, monit-us esset, monit-ī essēmus, monit-ī essētis, monit-ī essent, I should have been advised thou wouldst have been he would have been we should have been ye would have been they would have been

(if) I had been advised (when, although, etc.) I had been advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ēre, be (thou) advised

| mon-ēminī, be (ye) advised

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētor, thou must be advised mon-ētor, he must be advised

mon-entor, they must be advised

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: mon-ērī, to be advised

Perfect: monit-us esse, to have been advised Future: monitum iri to be about to be advised

§ 145. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.— PASSIVE VOICE.

Model: rego, I rule.

Bases: reg- (present); rex- (perfect); rect- (supine).

Participles Participles (Perfect: rect-us, rect-a, rect-um, ruled or having been ruled)
Gerundive: reg-endus, reg-enda, reg-endum, fit to be ruled

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-or,	I am ruled	reg-imur,	we are ruled
reg-eris,	thou art ruled	reg-iminī,	ye are ruled
reg-itur,	he is ruled	reg-untur,	they are ruled

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-ēbār, I was being ruled
reg-ēbāris or thou wast being ruled
reg-ēbāris or truled
reg-ēbātur, he was being ruled
reg-ēbātur, he was being ruled
reg-ēbātur, they were being ruled
reg-ēbantur, they were being ruled

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-ar, reg-ēris or reg-ēre	I shall be ruled thou wilt be ruled	reg-ēmur, reg-ēminī,	we shall be ruled ye will be ruled	
reg-ere	he will be ruled	reg-entur.	they will be ruled	

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sum,	I was or have been	rect-ī sumus, u	e were or	have
	ruled		$been\ ruled$	
rect-us es,	thou wast or hast	rect-ī estis, ye	were or	have
	been ruled		$been \ ruled$	
rect-us est,	he was or has been	rect-i sunt, th	ey were or	have
	ruled		been ruled	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us eram,	I~had	been	rect-ī erāmus,	we had	
rect-us erās,	$thou\ hadst$	ruled	rect-ī erātis,	ye had	oeen ruled
rect-us erat,	he had	racca	rect-ī erant,	they had	rucci

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us erō,	$I\ shall$)	have	rect-ī erimus	, we shall) have
rect-us eris,	thou wilt	}	been	rect-ī eritis,	ye will	been
rect-us erit,	he will	J	ruled	rect-ī erunt,	they will	ruled

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

PRESENT TENSE.

I should be ruled reg-ar, reg-āris or \ thou wouldst be ruled reg-āre he would be ruled reg-ātur, we should be ruled reg-āmur, ye would be ruled reg-āminī,

(if) I were to be ruled (in order that) I may be ruled(so that) I am ruled (although) I am ruled

(if) I were being ruled

(in order that) I might

(when, although, etc.)I

was being ruled

(so that) I was ruled

be ruled

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES,

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erer, reg-erēris or) reg-erēre reg-erētur. reg-erēmur, reg-erēminī, reg-erentur,

reg antur,

I should be ruled thou wouldst be ruled

they would be ruled

he would be ruled we should be ruled ye would be ruled they would be ruled

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sim rect-us sīs rect-us sit rect-ī sīmus rect-î sîtis rect-ī sint

rare in principal sentences

(if) I were to have been ruled(so that) I was ruled or have been ruled (although) I have been ruled

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us essem, rect-us essēs, rect-us esset. rect-ī essēmus, rect-ī essētis, rect-ī essent,

reg-ere,

I should have been ruled thou wouldst have been ruled he would have been ruled we should have been ruled ye would have been ruled they would have been ruled

(if) I had been ruled (when, although, etc.) I had been ruled

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

be (thou) ruled

reg-iminī, be (ve) ruled

FUTURE TENSE.

thou must be ruled reg-itor. reg-itor, he must be ruled

reg-untor, they must be ruled

INFINITIVE.

to be ruled Present: reg-ī,

to have been ruled Perfect: rect-us esse, FUTURE: rectum îri. to be about to be ruled § 146. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: audiō, I hear.

Bases: aud- (present); audīv- (perfect); audīt- (supine).

 $\mathbf{P}_{\text{ARTICIPLES}} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{Perfect: audit-us, audit-a, audit-um, } heard \text{ or } having \\ been \text{ } heard \\ \text{Gerundive: aud-iendus, aud-ienda, aud-iendum, } fit \\ to \text{ } be \text{ } heard \end{matrix} \right.$

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ior,	I am heard	aud-īmur,	we are heard
aud-īris,	thou art heard	aud-īminī,	ye are heard
aud-ītur,	he is heard	aud-iuntur,	they are heard
			U

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbar, I was being hear aud-iēbāris or \ thou wast bein	$\left. egin{array}{l} d & aud ext{-iar{e}bar{a}mur}, \ we \ were \ being \ aud ext{-iar{e}bar{a}minar{i}}, \ ye \ were \ being \ e \end{array} ight. ight.$
aud-iēbāre } heard	
aud-iebātur, he was being hear	d aud-iebantur, they were being

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iar,		aud-iēmur,	we shall be heard
aud-iēris <i>or</i>		aud-iēminī,	ye will be heard
aud-iēre aud-iētur,)		they will be heard

PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us sum,	I was or have been	audīt-ī sumus	s, we were or have
	heard		been heard
audīt-us es,	thou wast or hast	audīt ī estis,	ye were or have
	$been\ heard$		been heard
audīt-us est,	he was or has been	audīt-ī sunt,	they were or have
	heard		$been\ heard$

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us eram,	I had	heen	audīt-ī erāmus,	we had	ham
audīt-us erās,	$thou\ hadst$	heard	audīt-ī erāmus, audīt-ī erātis, audīt-ī erant,	ye had	hamil
audīt-us erat,	he had) neura	audīt-ī erant,	they had	neara

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us erō,	I shall	have	audīt-ī erimus,	we shall	have
			audīt-ī eritis,		
audīt-us erit,	he will	heard	audīt-ī erunt,	they will	heard

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iar, aud-iāris or \ aud-iāre aud-iätur. aud-iāmur, aud-iāminī. aud-iantur,

I should be heard thou wouldst be heard he would be heard we should be heard ye would be heard they would be heard

(if) I were to be heard (in order that) I may be heard (so that) I am heard (although) I am heard

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud irer. aud-īrēris or aud-îrêre aud-īrētur, aud-irēmur, aud īrēminī. aud-irentur,

I should be heard thou wouldst be heard he would be heard we should be heard ye would be heard they would be heard

(if) I were being heard (in order that) I might be heard (so that) I was heard (when, although, etc.) I was being heard

Perfect Tense.

audīt-us sim audīt-us sīs audīt-us sit audīt-ī sīmus audīt-ī sītis audīt-ī sint

rare in principal sentences

(if) I were to have been heard (so that) I was heard or have been heard (although) I have been heard

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīt-us essem, I should have been heard audīt-us essēs, thou wouldst have been heard audit-us esset, he would have been heard audīt-ī essēmus we should have been heard audīt-ī essētis. ve would have been heard audit-i essent, they would have been heard

(if) I had been heard (when, although, etc.) I had been heard

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-īre.

be (thou) heard

aud-imini,

be (ye) heard

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-itor. thou must be heard. aud-itor,

he must be heard

aud-iuntor, they must be heard

INFINITIVE.

Present: aud-īrī. Perfect: audit-us esse.

to be heard. to have been heard

Future: audītum īrī.

to be about to be heard

THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

§ 147. Model: cap-io, I take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: cap-io, cep-i, capt-um.

Bases: cap- (present); cep- (perfect); capt- (supine).

PARTI- (PRESENT: cap-iens (gen. capient-is), taking

CIPLES (FUTURE: capt-urus, capt-urus, capt-urum, about to take
ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

```
PRESENT.
                  (I take.)
cap-iō
                   cap-imus
cap-is
                   cap-itis
cap-it
                   cap-iunt
  IMPERFECT.
                (I was taking.)
                   cap-iēbāmus
cap-iēbam
                   cap iebātis
cap-iēbās
cap-iebat
                   cap-iebant
    FUTURE.
               (I shall take.)
```

cap-iam cap-iēmus
cap-iēs cap-iētis
cap-iet cap-ient
Perfect. (I took or have taken.)

cep-it cep-imus
cep-isti cep-istis
cep-it cep-erunt or

Pluperfect. (I had taken.)
cēp-erām cēp-erātis
cēp-erat cēp-erat
Future-Perfect. (I shall have

taken.)
cēp-erō cēp-erimus

cep-ero cep-erimus cep-eris cep-eritis cep-erit cep-erint

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: cap-ere, to take Perfect: cop-isse, to have taken Future: captur-us esse, to be

about to take

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Presert. (I should take.)
cap-iam cap-iāmus
cap-iās cap-iātis
cap-iat cap-iant

IMPERFECT. (I should be taking.)

cap-erem cap-eremus cap-eres cap-eretis cap-eret cap-erent

Perfect.

cēp-erim cēp-erimus cēp-eris cēp-eritis cēp-erit cēp-erint

PLUPERPECT. (I should have taken.)

cēp-issem cēp-issēmus cēp-issēs cēp-issetis cēp-isset cēp-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.
PRISENT. (Take.)
cap-e cap-ite

FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must take.)

cap-itō cap-itōte cap-itō cap iuntō

GERUND.

(Nom. car-iendum)
Acc. cap-iendum, taking
Gen. cap-iendī

Dat. cap-iendo Abl. cap-iendo

SUPINE

Acc. capt-um, to take

| Abl. capt-u, in taking

PASSIVE VOICE.

D	(Perfect:	capt-us,	capt-a,	capt-um,	taken or having
Partici-	_				been taken
PLES	GERUNDIVE:	cap-iend	lus, cap-	ienda, ca	ap-iendum, fit to be taken
	DICATIVE MO				IVE MOOD.
Pres	SENT. ($I\ am\ ta$	ken.)	Prese	NT. $(Ian$	or may be taken.)
cap-ior	cap-i	mur	cap-ia:	r	cap-iāmur
cap eris	cap-i	ninī	cap-iā:	$oldsymbol{ris}\ or$	
cap-itur	cap-i	untur	cap-	iāre	cap-iāminī
IMPERFI	ECT. (I was bein	ig taken.)	cap-iā	tur	cap-iantur
cap-iēbar		bāmur	IMPER	REECT. (I	was or might be
cap iēbār				tak	en.)
cap-iēb		bāminī	cap-er	er	cap-erēmur
cap-iĕbāt	ur cap-i	ëbantur	cap-er	ēris or	•
Furu	TRE. ($I\ shall\ be$		cap-	erēre	cap-erēminī
cap-iar	cap-i	mur	cap-er	ētur	cap-erentur
cap-iēris				Per	FECT.
cap-iēr			cant-u	s sim	
cap-iētur	cap-i	entur			capt-ī sītis
Perfec	T. (I was taker	n or have			capt-ī sint
	been taken.)				-
capt-us s			LLUPE		should have been en.)
capt-us e			annt m		
capt-us e	st capt-	ī sunt			capt-i essēmus
	ECT. (I had be			s essēs	
	12	==	capt-u	s esset	capt-ī essent

capt-us eram capt-ī erāmus capt-us erās capt-ī erātis capt-ī eratis capt-ī erant
Future-Perfect. (I shall have

been taken.)

cant-us erō capt-ī erimus

capt-us erō capt-ī erimus capt-us eris capt-ī eritis capt-us erit capt-ī erunt IMPERATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (Be taken.)

cap-ere cap-imini
FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must be taken.)

cap-itor cap-iuntor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

Present: cap ī, to be taken

PERFECT: captus esse, to have been taken FUTURE: captum īrī, to be about to be taken

All verbs of the third conjugation (i.e. with pres. inf. act. ending in -ere) which in the pres. indic. act. end in -iō are conjugated like capiō, as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in -ior. A list of these verbs is given in §§ 325, 330.

Obs. Capiō is conjugated like audiō in those parts in which the i of audiō is followed by a vowel, i.e. in which the i is short; in other parts capiō is conjugated like regō.

DEPONENT VERBS .- FIRST CONJUGATION. § 148.

Model: hortor, I exhort.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: hort-ārī, hortāt-us sum.

Bases: hort- (present); hortat- (supine).

PRESENT: hort-ans (gen. hortant-is), exhorting FUTURE: hortāt-ūrus, hortāt-ūra, hortāt-ūrum, about to exhort PERFECT: hortat-us, hortat-a, hortat-um, having exhorted GERUNDIVE: hort-andus, hort-anda, hort-andum, fit to be exhorted

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. (I exhort.)

hort-amur hort-or hort-āris or -āre hort-āminī hort-ätur hort-antur IMPERFECT. (I was exhorting.) hort-ābar hort-ābāmur

hort-ābāris or hort-ābāre hort-ābāminī hort-ābātur hort-abantur FUTURE. (I shall exhort.)

hort-ābimur hort-abor hort-āberis or hort-abere hort-ābiminī hort-ābitur hort-abuntur

(I exhorted or have PERFECT. exhorted.) hortāt-us sum hortāt-ī sumus

hortat us es hortāt-ī estis hortat-us est hortāt-ī sunt PLUPERFECT. (I had exhorted.) hortāt-us eram hortāt-ī erāmus hortāt-us erās hortāt-ī erātis hortāt-us erat hortāt-í erant (I shall have FUTURE-PERFECT.

exhorted.) hortāt-us erō hortāt-ī erimus hortāt-ī eritis hortāt-us eris

hortāt-ī erunt hortāt-us erit

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(I should exhort.) Present. hort-ëmur hort-er

hort-ēris or hort-ēre

hort-ēminī hort-ētur hort-entur (I should be ex-IMPERFECT. horting.)

hort-aremur hort-ärer hort-ärēris or

hort-ārēre hort-ārēminī hort-äretur

hort-arentur PERFECT. hortāt-us sim hortāt-ī sīmus

hortāt-us sīs hortāt-ī sītis hortāt-us sit hortāt-ī sint PLUPERFECT. (I should have

exhorted.) hortāt-us essem hortāt-ī essēmus hortāt-us essēs hortāt-ī essētis hortat-us esset hortat-i essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. (Exhort.) hort-are hort-āminī

(Thou shalt or must FUTURE. exhort.)

hort-ator hort-ator hort-antor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

Present: hort-ārī, to exhort (Nom. hort-andum) Acc. hort andum, exhorting PERFECT: hortat-us esse, to have Gen. hort-andī exhorted

Dat. FUTURE: hortātūr-us esse, to be hort-ando about to exhort AbLhort-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. hortāt-um, to exhort

Abl. hortat-a, in exhorting

Acc. verit-um, to fear

§ 149. DEPONENT VERBS.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

Model: vereor, I fear.

Principal Parts: ver-ērī, verit-us sum. Bases: ver- (present); verit- (supine).

PRESENT: ver-ens (gen. verent-is), fearing FUTURE: verit-urus, verit-ura, verit-urum, about to fear Perfect: verit-us, verit-a, verit-um, having feared GERUNDIVE: ver-endus, ver-enda, ver-endum, fit to be feared INDICATIVE MOOD. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (I fear.) PRESENT. (I should fear.) ver-ēmur ver-eamur ver-eor. ver-ear ver-ēris or ver-ēre ver-ēminī ver-eāris or ver-ētur ver-entur ver-eāre ver-eāminī ver-eatur ver-eantur IMPERFECT. (I was fearing.) ver-ēbar ver ēbāmur IMPERFECT. (I should be fearing.) ver-ēbāris or ver-ērer ver-ērēmur ver-ēbāre ver-ēbāminī ver-ērēris or ver-ēbātur ver-ēbantur ver-ērēre ver-ērēminī FUTURE. (I shall tear.) ver-ērētur ver-ērentur ver-ēbimur ver-ēbor PERFECT. ver-ēberis or verit-us sim verit-ī sīmus ver ēbere ver-ēbiminī verit-us sīs verit-ī sītis ver-ēbitur ver-ēbuntur verit-us sit verit-ī sint Perfect. (I feared or have feared.) PLUPERFECT. (I should have feared.) verit-us sum verit-ī sumus verit-us es verit-ī estis verit-us essem verit-ī essēmus verit-us est verit-i sunt verit-us essēs verit-ī essētis PLUPERFECT. (I had feared.) verit-us esset verit-ī essent verit-us eram verit-ī erāmus IMPERATIVE MOOD. verit-us erās verit-i erātis PRESENT. (Fear.) verit-us erat verit-i erant ver-ēminī ver-ēre Future-Perfect. (I shall have feared.) FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must verit-us erō verit-ī erimus fear.) verit-us eris verit i eritis ver-ētor verit-us erit verit-ī erunt ver-ētor ver-entor VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES. INFINITIVE. GERUND. (Nom. ver-endum) PRESENT: ver-ēri, to fear Acc. ver endum, fearing PERFECT: verit-us esse, to have Gen. ver-endī feared Dat. ver-endo FUTURE: veritur-us esse, to be Abl. ver-endō about to fear SUPINE.

Abl. verit-u, in fearing

```
84
                     DEPONENT VERBS.
         DEPONENT VERBS .- THIRD CONJUGATION.
§ 150.
                  Model: loquor, I speak.
          PRINCIPAL PARTS: loqui, locut-us sum.
         Bases: loqu- (present); locut- (supine).
               loqu-ens (gen. loquent-is), speaking
   PRESENT:
  FUTURE:
               locut-urus, locut-ura, locut-urum, about to speak
   Perfect:
               locat-us, locat-a, locat-um, having spoken
   GERUNDIVE: loqu-endus, loqu-enda, loqu-endum, fit to be spoken
    INDICATIVE MOOD.
                                    SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
     PRESENT.
                (I speak.)
                                   Present.
                 loqu-imur
loqu-or
                                 loqu-ar
                                                 loqu-amur
                                 loqu-āris or
loqu-eris or
                 loqu-iminī
  logu-ere
                                   loqu-āre
                 logu-untur
loqu-itur
                                 loqu-ātur
                                                 loqu-antur
             (I was speaking.)
 IMPERFECT.
loqu-ēbar
                 loqu-ēbāmur
                                              ing.)
loqu-ēbāris or
                                 loqu-erer
                                                 loqu-eremur
  loqu-ēbāre
                 loqu-ēbāminī
                                 logu-erēris or
logu-ēbātur
                 loqu-ēbantur
                                   loqu-erēre
   FUTURE.
             (I shall speak.)
                                 logu-erētur
                                                 loqu-erentur
```

loqu-ëmur loqu-ar loqu-ēris or loqu-ēminī loqu-ēre

loqu-ētur loqu-entur (I spoke or have Perfect. spoken.)

locūt-ī sumus locut-us sum locut-ī estis locüt-us es locūt-ī sunt locut-us est Pluperfect. (I had spoken.) locut-us eram locūt i erāmus locūt-us erās locut i erātis locūt-us erat locut i erant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

have spoken.) locüt-us erő locut-i erimus locut-us eris locut i eritis

locut-us erit locūt-ī erunt

(I should speak.) loqu-āminī

IMPERFECT. (I should be speak-

loqu-erēminī

Perfect. locut-us sim locūt-ī sīmus locut-us sis locūt-ī sītis locūt-us sit locut-i sint

Pluperfect. (I should have spoken.) locut-us essem locut-i essemus locūt-us essēs locāt-ī essētis

locat-i essent

loqu-untor

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

locüt-us esset

PRESENT. (Speak.) loqu-ere loqu-iminī

FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must speak.)loqu-itor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

logu-itor

INFINITIVE. GERUND.

(Nom. logu-endum) Present: loqu-i, to speak PERFECT: locut-us esse, to have Acc. loqu-endum, speaking

Gen. loqu-endî spoken Dat. FUTURE: locutur us esse, to be loqu-endō Abl.about to speak loqu-endō

(I shall

SUPINE.

Acc. locut-um, to speak

Abl.locut-u, in speaking

§ 151. DEPONENT VERBS.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Model: partior, I divide.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: part-īrī, partīt-us sum.

Bases: part- (present); partīt- (supine).

part-iens (gen. partient-is), dividing

FUTURE: partit-urus, partit-ura, partit-urum, about to divide PERFECT: partīt-us, partīt-a, partīt-um, having divided

GERUNDIVE: part-iendus, part-ienda, part-iendum, fit to be divided

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (I divide).

part imur part-ior part-iris or

part-ire part-imini part-ītur part-iuntur

(I was dividing.) IMPERFECT. part-iēbāmur part-iēbar part-iëbāris or

part-iēbāre part-iēbāminī part-iebātur part-iēbantur FUTURE. (I shall divide.)

part-iar part-iemur part-ieris or

part-iēre part-iēminī part-iëtur part-ientur Perfect. (I divided or have divided.)

partīt-i sumus partīt-us sum partit-us es partīt-ī estis partīt-us est partīt-ī sunt

Pluperfect. (I had divided.) partit-us eram partīt-ī erāmus partit-us erās partīt-ī erātis partīt-us erat partīt-ī erant

Future-Perfect. (I shall have divided.)

partīt-us erō partīt-ī erimus partīt-ī eritis partīt-us eris partīt-us erit partīt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (I should divide.)

part-iar part-iāris or part-iāre part-iātur

part-iamur part-iāminī part-iantur

IMPERFECT. (I should be dividing.) part-irēmur

part-irer part-īrēris or part-irēre

part-īrēminī part-īrētur part-irentur

Perfect.

partīt-us sim partīt-ī sīmus partīt-us sīs partīt-ī sītis partīt-us sit partīt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (I should have divided.)

partīt-us essem partīt-ī essēmus partīt-us essēs partīt-ī essētis partīt-us esset partīt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (Divide.) part-īre part-imini

FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must divide.)

part-ītor part-itor

part-iuntor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

Present: part-īrī, to divide PERFECT: partit-us esse, to have divided:

FUTURE: partītūr-us esse, to be

about to divide

GERUND.

(Nom. part-iendum) Acc. part-iendum, dividing

Gen. part-iendī

Dat. part-iendō Abl. part-iendō

SUPINE.

Acc. partit um, to divide

Abl. partit-a, in dividing

LESSON 37.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

Learn the indicative and imperative active of **amō** (p. 64); also the present and imperfect subjunctive active (p. 65).

Read over what is said on pp. 60, 61 about the Four Regular Conjugations.

QUESTIONS.

152. A question may be introduced in Latin as in English by some interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb; e.g. quantus? how great? quis? who? cūr? why?

cur templa spoliatis?

why are you pillaging the temples?

153. If no such interrogative word is used to introduce the question, Latin employs an interrogative particle:

nonne, expecting the answer "yes";num, expecting the answer "no";-ne, simply asking for information.

num barbarörum Römulus rex fuit? nonne Römänörum Römulus rex fuit? Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he? was not Romulus king of the Romans?

154. The particle -ne is enclitic, *i.e.* it cannot stand by itself (cp. -que, Vocabulary 8, Obs.), but is appended to the first word in the sentence or clause. This word must be that on which emphasis is laid in asking the question.

superavitne Caesar Nerviös?

did Caesar overcome the

Caesarne Nerviös superāvit?

was it Caesar who overcame the Nervii?

Nerviosne superāvit Caesar?

was it the Nervii whom Caesar overcame?

Note.—For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) -ne is regarded as forming part of the word to which it is appended; e.g. superavitne.

Learn Vocabulary 37 (p. 87).

Vocabulary 37.

ēmend-ō, -āre, amend, correct. lēgātiō, lēgātiōn-is, f., embassy. lēgāt-us, -ī, m. (legate), ambassador, lieutenant. mercator, mercator-is, m., merchant. mos, mor-is, m., manner, custom; pl. morals, manners, character.

ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, f., oration, speech. popul-us, -ī, m. (popular), people. qual-is, -e, (quality), what kind regn-ō, -āre, reign. repudi-ō, -āre, reject. suppedit-ō, -āre, supply, provide.

LESSON 38.

Revise the present and imperfect subjunctive active of amō (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

- 155. A dependent question is not a question that is then and there asked, but one that is reported or mentioned. The question-clause is in dependence on a principal sentence which may be a statement, a question, or a command.
- 156. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent questions; the right-hand column gives the same questions in a direct or independent

I know what he is doing. Can you guess which book I am reading? Which book am I reading? Tell me when they will arrive. He asked me if I was well. It is impossible to say whether he is at home or no.

What is he doing? When will they arrive? Are you well?

Is he at home or no?

From the above examples it will be seen that direct questions which are introduced by some interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (e.g. what? which? when?) retain this interrogative word when they become dependent; other questions when they become dependent are introduced by if or whether. If the principal verb is in a past tense, the verb in the dependent question is also past.

157. It is often impossible to tell by the form of the dependent clause whether it is a dependent question or no, as a relative or conditional clause may be of exactly the same form as a dependent question; compare the following with the sentences given in § 156:—

I don't approve of what he is doing.

I will let you see the book which I am reading.

Go to meet them when they arrive.

I used always to walk if I was well.

Have you made up your mind to call whether he is at home or no?

In order to distinguish between dependent questions and clauses such as the above, it is well to consider the character of the principal sentence: a dependent question usually depends on some expression of wondering, enquiring, knowing, or telling.

Note.—Occasionally, however, it may happen that neither the nature of the principal verb nor the form of the dependent clause enables us to decide whether the latter is a dependent question or a relative clause. Take for instance the sentence

I saw what he had in his basket.

If the meaning is "I saw that which he had in his basket," the clause is relative; if the meaning is "I got to know what he had in his basket," the clause is a dependent question (direct form, "what has he in his basket?").

- 158. In Latin a dependent question is introduced either (a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or (b) by one of the particles -ne, num (if or whether), nonne (if or whether . . . not). Of these, num is the commonest, and in a dependent question does not imply that a negative answer is expected.
- 159. In dependent questions in Latin the verb stands in the subjunctive mood. In deciding which tense of the subjunctive to use the choice between imperfect and perfect must be made in accordance with the rule as to the sequence of tenses given on the next page; beyond this the meaning will afford sufficient guidance.

160. For the purposes of the rule given in § 161 tenses are divided into two classes: primary tenses and historic tenses :--

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.

Subjunctive.

Present. Future.

Present.

Perfect (with Present-

Perfect.

Perfect meaning). Future-Perfect.

HISTORIC.

Indicative.

Imperfect.

Subjunctive. Imperfect. Pluperfect.

Perfect (with past meaning).

Pluperfect.

Obs.—The perfect indicative is said to be used with "present perfect "meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, e.g. amavi, I have loved, and is said to be used with a "past" meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, e.g. amāvī, I loved. Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

- 161. Rule.—A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and an historic tense in the principal sentence requires an historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.
- 162. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the present tense.

Direct question—

aedificantne Galli oppidum? are the Gauls building a town?

(a) Primary sequence: dependent verb in present subjunctive.

rogō, I ask rogābō, I shall ask

rogāvī, I have asked ·

rogā, ask

num Gallī oppidum aedificent. rogāverō, I shall have asked whether the Gauls are building a town.

rogēmus, let us ask

(b) Historic sequence: dependent verb in imperfect subjunctive.

rogābam, I was asking num Galli oppidum aedificărent. rogāvī, I asked whether the Gauls were building a town. rogaveram, I had asked Learn Vocabulary 38.

Vocabulary 38.

aegr**ōt-ō, -āre**, *be ill*. Gallic-us, -a, -um, Gallic. ignor-o, -are (ignorant), not to know, be unaware. labor, labor-is, m., labour. obses, obsid-is, c., hostage.

quando, adv., when? quant-us, -a, -um, how great? quō, adv., whither ? rog-ō, -āre, ask. ubi or ubī, adv., where ?

LESSON 39.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of amō; also the future participle (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS (continued).

163. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in a past tense.

Direct question vastābantne Gallī agrös?

were the Gauls laying waste the fields?

vastāvēruntne Gallī agrōs?

did the Gauls lay waste have the Gauls laid waste

(a) Primary sequence: dependent verb in perfect subjunctive.

rogo, I ask num Gallī agrōs vastāverint. rogābō, I shall ask rogāvī, I have asked whether the Gauls were laying waste, laid waste, or have laid rogāverō, I shall have asked rogā, ask rogēmus, let us ask

(b) Historic sequence: dependent verb in pluperfect subjunctive.

) num Gallī agrōs vastāvissent. rogābam, I was asking whether the Gauls had been laying waste rogāvi, I asked rogāveram, I had asked or had laid waste the fields.

164. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the future tense.

Direct question—

quando Caesar Gallos superabit?

when will Caesar overcome the Gauls?

(a) Primary sequence: dependent verb expressed by future participle and present subjunctive of sum.

rogō, I ask rogābō, I shall ask rogāvī, I have asked rogā, ask rogēmus, let us ask

quando Caesar Gallos superātūrus sit. rogavero, I shall have asked when Caesar will overcome the Gauls.

(b) Historic sequence: dependent verb expressed by future participle and imperfect subjunctive of sum.

rogābam, I was asking rogāvī, I asked rogaveram, I had asked

quando Caesar Gallos superātūrus esset. when Caesar would overcome the Gauls.

Learn Vocabulary 39.

Vocabulary 39.

conclam-o, -are, shout (together). coniūr-ō, -āre, conspire. dēplor-o, -āre, deplore, lament. dimic-o, -are, fight a pitched battle. fortiter, adv., bravely. hiem-o, -are, pass the winter, iact-ō, -āre, throw, hurl.

lapis, lapid-is, m. (lapidary), stone. lībertās, lībertāt-is, f., liberty. monstr-ō, -āre (demonstrate), show. reciper-ō, -āre, recover, regain. sign-um, -I, n., sign, standard.

LESSON 40. THE INFINITIVE.

Learn the infinitive active of amō (p. 65).

165. The infinitive, being a verbal substantive, may stand as the subject of a sentence.

ambulāre aestāte grātum est walking is pleasant in summer, or in summer it is pleasant to walk

166. The infinitive, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb.

lentē ambulāre aestāte grātum it is pleasant to walk slowly in est summer

DEPENDENT STATEMENTS.

- 167. A dependent statement is not one that is then and there made, but one that is reported or mentioned. The principal sentence which introduces the dependent statement may be a statement, a question, or a command, just as was seen to be the case with a principal sentence introducing a dependent question.
- 168. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent statements; the right-hand column gives the same statements in a direct or independent form:—

I know (that) he is doing nothing.
You told me (that) they would arrive soon.
He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill.
Do you think (that) we shall win?
Did you think (that) we should win?
Tell him (that) you will go.
Let us suppose (that) this is so.

He is doing nothing.
They will arrive soon.
I am quite well, but have been very ill.
We shall win.
We shall win.
I will go.
This is so.

- 169. A dependent statement usually depends on some verb or phrase* denoting feeling, seeing, thinking, knowing, saying, promising, threatening; also verbs of hoping.
- 170. The dependent statement may or may not be preceded by the conjunction that; but even if this conjunction is used the clause is not necessarily a dependent statement. The following sentences, for instance, do NoT contain dependent statements:—

Take care that you do not make a mistake. Many work that they may grow rich. Some work so hard that they have no leisure.

^{*} Among such phrases all impersonal constructions such as the following are included: "it is said," "it is certain," "it is probable," "it is agreed."

- 171. A dependent statement may be recognised as such i) by its being possible to reproduce from it the corresponding direct statement, and (ii) by the principal sentence serving to report or mention this statement.
- 172. In Latin a dependent statement is expressed by means of the construction known as the accusative and infinitive, in which the subject is in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive mood.

Thus, just as in English, instead of saying "I consider (that) he is an honourable man" we may say "I consider him to be an honourable man." so in Latin we must always say putō hunc honestum esse.

173. (a) The present infinitive is used when the action of the dependent statment is contemporaneous with that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the present tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT { Caesar appropringuat. Caesar is approaching or approaches.

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, they announce
nuntiābunt, they will announce
nuntiāvērunt, they have announced
nuntiāvērint, they will have announced)
nuntiābant, they were announcing
nuntiāvērunt, they announced
nuntiāvērunt, they had announced

Caesarem appropinquare.

that Caesar is approaching or approaches.

Caesarem appropringuare. that Caesar was approaching or approached.

(b) The **perfect infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **prior** to that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when a **past tense** would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT.

Caesar appropinquābat

Caesar was approaching

Caesar appropinguāvīt

or Caesar (has) approached

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, they announce nuntiabunt, they will announce nuntiaverunt, they have announced nuntiaverint, they will have announced.

Caesarem appropinquāvisse. that Caesar has approached. nuntiabant, they were announcing nuntiaverunt, they announced nuntiaverant, they had announced

Caesarem appropinquāvisse. that Caesar had approached.

(c) The future infinitive is used when the action of the dependent statement is subsequent to that of the introductory verb, i.e. when the future tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT { Caesar approprinquabit. Caesar will approach.

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, they announce nuntiābunt, they will announce nuntiaverunt, they have announced nuntiaverint, they will have announced that Caesar will approach.

Caesarem appropinquătūrum esse.

nuntiaverunt, they announced nuntiaverant, they had announced that Caesar would approach.

nuntiābant, they were announcing) Caesarem appropinguātūrum

174. The rule that the tense of the infinitive is present. perfect, or future according as a present, past, or future tense of the indicative would have been used in the corresponding direct statement must be carefully borne in mind in translating into Latin such sentences as "He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill," because in English a present or present-perfect tense in the direct form (" I am quite well, but have been very ill ") becomes past or past-perfect in the dependent form if the principal verb is past: no such change of tense occurs in Latin.

Learn Vocabulary 40.

Vocabulary 40.

audacter, adv., boldly. cert-us, -a, -um, certain. crēdibil-is, -e, credible. dictit-o, -are, say frequently. facil-is, -e (facility), easy.

mund-us, -i, m. (mundane), world. neg-ō, -āre (negative), deny, say \dots not.

vērīsimil-is, -e (verisimilitude), probable.

LESSON 41. THE GERUND.

Learn the gerund of amo (p. 65).

175. The gerund is an abstract substantive of neuter gender declined in the singular only; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, e.g. amandum, loving, i.e. the act of loving, and corresponds to the English gerund, a verbal noun in -ing (e.g. "I take exercise by walking"), which originally ended in -ung, and so was distinct in form from the present participle which ended in -ende and with which the gerund is now often confused.

Obs.—The nominative of the gerund is not, as a rule, found except in the case of intransitive verbs; it is therefore included in brackets () in the tables of the regular conjugations.

Note.—The gerund, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb, and in the case of transitive verbs the genitive and ablative gerund (but not the accusative or dative) may govern a direct object in the accusative case; cp. the first example in § 177.

176. Rule.—The gerund of an intransitive verb is used with est, erat, etc., in the nominative singular to express duty or necessity. The person concerned is put in the dative case.

nöbīs ambulandum est

we must walk

177. Rule.—The genitive of the gerund is frequently used in dependence on substantives and adjectives expressing fondness or desire, and with the ablatives grātiā, causā, for the sake of, on account of.

equitēs cupidī sunt agrōs lātē vastandī Catilīna regnandī gratiā

Learn Vocabulary 41.

the horsemen are desirous of laying waste the fields far and wide Catilina sinned for the sake of reigning

VOCABULARY 41.

ars, art-is, f., art.
caus-ā, abl. (with gen.), for the
sake of, on account of.
cupīdō, cupīdin-is, f., desire.

grāti-a, -ae, f., favour. grātiā, abl. (with gen.), for the sake of, on account of. salūtār-is, -e, salutary, beneficial.

LESSON 42.

ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

Learn the active participles of amo (p. 65).

- 178. There are two active participles in Latin: (a) the present participle, declined like prūdens, § 69; (b) the future participle, declined like bonus, § 36.
 - Obs. 1.—The perfect participle active is wanting in the Latin verb.
- Obs. 2.—In translating English into Latin the learner must use participles with caution, and in accordance with the rules given here and elsewhere in this book: an English participle (especially a present participle) is often rendered in Latin by some other part of the verb.
- 179. The present participle is sometimes used to express a class of persons; e.g. aegrōtantēs, people who are ill.
- 180. The future participle is combined with some parts of the verb sum, and is then variously translated; e.g. pugnātūrus sum, I am about to fight, I purpose to fight, I am likely to fight, I am destined to fight.

Learn Vocabulary 42.

Vocabulary 42.

advent-ō, āre (advent), be on the point of arriving.
ardor, ardōr-is, m. (ardour), heat.
cōgit-ō, -āre (cogitate), meditate.
for-um, -ī, n., market-place.
hūmān-us, -a, -um, human.
impet-us, -ūs, m., attack.
integrātiō, integrātiōn-is, f.,
renewal.

ir-a, -ae, f., anger.
iterum, adv. (iterate), again, a
second time.

ōti-um, -ī, n., ease, rest.
sollicitūdō, sollicitūdin-is, f. (solicitous), anxiety.
tēlum, -ī, n., weapon, javelin.
trucīd-ō, -āre, butcher.

LESSON 43.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative active and the imperative active of moneō (pp. 66, 67).

181. Just as the first conjugation is also called the A conjugation, on account of its characteristic vowel, so the second conjugation is known as the E conjugation. It will be noticed that in the present and imperfect indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), the second conjugation differs from the first only in the vowel immediately following the base. The same remark applies to the future indicative, to the imperfect subjunctive, to the imperative, and to the present infinitive, present participle, and gerund.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

182. A conditional sentence consists of two parts: (I) a dependent clause usually introduced by if in English and by sī in Latin, stating the condition and called the protasis; and (2) the principal sentence, called the apodosis, relating to some action the occurrence of which is to be regarded as depending on the fulfilment of the condition. The apodosis may be either a statement, a question, or a command, thus—

If it rains, $\begin{cases} I \text{ shall stop at home.} \\ \text{will you stop at home.} \end{cases}$?

- 183. A negative protasis may be introduced by sī... non, if not, or by nisi, unless.
- 184. When neither of the auxiliaries should, would is used in the apodosis in English, the verb in both parts of the sentence is in the indicative mood in Latin, or (if the sense requires it) the imperative is used in the apodosis.

sī peccāvī, insciens peccāvī

sī putās mē aegrōtāre, errās

sī tibī placet, huic aliquid

if I sinned (or have sinned), I sinned unwittingly

if you think that I am ill, you are wrong

if you please (lit. if it pleases you), give this man something

185. Note the tense of the infinitive in-

patrī pārēre dēbēs patrī pārēre dēbēbās you ought to obey your father you ought to have obeyed your father

The irregularity here is not in the Latin, but in the English. *Ought* being a past form used with a present meaning, past time has to be expressed in English by the use of the present-perfect infinitive.

Learn Vocabulary 43.

VOCABULARY 43.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like amō or moneō; if a verb is defective (as valeō, below) or irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

abstin-eō, -ēre, abstinu-ī, abstent-um, abstain.

coerc-eō, -ēre (coerce), control, curb.

corpus, corpor-is, n. (corpse), body.

dēb-eō, -ēre (debit), owe, ought. hab-eō, -ēre (habit), have, hold, consider.

ōrātiōnem habeō, make a speech. insciens, inscient-is, unwitting,

unknowing.
interrog-ō, -āre, interrogate,
question.

lingu-a, -ae, f. (linguist), tongue,

mon-eō, -ēre, warn, admonish.
noc-eō, -ēre, do harm, injure
(with dat.).

parens, parent-is, c., parent. par-eo, -ere, be obedient, obey

(with dat.).
plac-eo, -ere, be pleasing, please

(with dat.).
supplici-um, -i, n., punishment.

tac-eō, -ēre (tacit), be silent. terr-eō, -ĕre, terrify.

val-eō, -ēre, valu-ī, —, (valid), be well or strong.

LESSON 44.

Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative active of moneō (p. 66).

186. It will be seen that (as pointed out in § 181) in the future indicative of moneō the endings resemble those of the corresponding tense of amō, except that the characteristic vowel immediately following the base is e, not a.

The remaining tenses of the indicative are given in full in order that the learner may have the second conjugation before him complete. All that has to be remembered, however, is that the perfect base of the second conjugation is found by adding -u- to the present base (thus: infinitive monēre, present base mon-, perfect base monu-), unless otherwise stated; the personal endings of the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses are the same for all verbs.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (continued).

187. Consider carefully the following—

```
sī hōc negābis, errābis if you de n y this, you will be wrong
```

sī hostēs superāveritis, võbīs if you overcome the enemy, I will praemia dõnābõ give you rewards

In the case of the first sentence, the time of the denying is evidently future, although the English tense is the present; in the case of the second sentence the overcoming not only belongs to future time, but must be accomplished before the rewards are given. Therefore the use of the future negābis and of the future-perfect superāveritis is natural and accurate; the English use of the present tense in such sentences is merely idiomatic and must not be reproduced in Latin.

188. Rule.—Certain verbs like doceō, I teach, rogō, I ask, cēlō, I keep in ignorance, are often constructed with two accusatives, one of the person taught, asked, or kept in ignorance, the other of that which he is taught, for which he is asked, or about which he is kept in ignorance.

```
      ötium deös rogö
      I ask the gods for leisure

      puerös elementa docēbō
      I shall teach the boys their letters

      nôn cēlāvī tē sermōnem Titi
      I did not keep you in ignorance as to Titus' conversation
```

Learn Vocabulary 44 (p. 100).

VOCABULARY 44.

cēl-ō, -āre (conccal), keep in ignorance concerning.

contin-eō, -ēre, continu-ī, content-um, contain, keep (in a place).

dignitās, dignitāt-is, f., dignity.
doc-eō, -ēre, docu-ī, doct-um (doctor), teach.
eg-eō, -ēre, egu-ī, —, need, be in need of (with abl. or gen.).

ēloquenti-a, -ae, f., eloquence.
exerc-eō, -ēre, exercise.
Latīn-us, -a, -um, Latin.
mer-eō, -ēre, merit, descree.

min-ae, -ārum, f. pl., threats.
offici-um, -I, n., duty.
quōmodo, adv., how? by what
means?
rēs publica, reī publicae, f., state,
commonwealth.
retin-eō, -ēre, retinu-ī, retent-um,
retain.
sustin-eō, -ēre, sustinu-ī, sustent-um, sustain.
tim-eō, -ēre, timu-ī, —, (timid),
fear.
vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty.

LESSON 45.

Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive active of moneō (p. 67).

It should be noted that the imperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding m to the present infinitive active: e.g. amāre, amārem; monēre, monērem.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (continued).

189. Two kinds of conditional sentences have one or other of the auxiliaries *should* and *would* in the apodosis in English and either the present or imperfect subjunctive in both protasis¹ and apodosis in Latin. Thus—

```
if you were to deny this, you sī hōc neges, errēs would be wrong
if I feared the enemy, I should not be fighting not be fighting sī hostēs timērem,
```

¹ Occasionally the sense may admit the pluperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 192); e.g. Sī tacuissem, ubī hodiē essēs? If I had held my tongue, where would you be to-day?

- 190. In these conditional sentences, in which the apodosis in English has either should or would—
- ... the **present subjunctive** is used in Latin if the condition is represented as open to fulfilment (of course in the future), e.g. "If you were (at any time) to deny this, you would be wrong";
- ... the imperfect subjunctive is used in Latin if the condition is represented as unfulfilled in the present; e.g. "If I (now) feared the enemy (but I do not fear them), I should not be fighting."

Learn Vocabulary 45.

VOCABULARY 45.

curs-us, -ūs, m., course.
exempl-um, -ī, n., example.
exinde, adv., thenceforth.
iniūri-a, -ae, f., injury, act of
violence.
iac-eō, -ēre (adjacent), lie, lie
dead.
iuss-um, -ī, n., command, order.
mōt-us, -ūs, m., rising, revolt.
pall-eo, -ēre, pallu-ī, —, be pale.

Pompēi-us, -ī, m., Pompeius, celebrated Roman general).
praeb-eō, -ēre, furnish, show, set. praedō, praedōn-is, m., robber, pirate.
rub-eō, -ēre, rubu-ī, —, (ruby), blush.
ten-eō, -ēre, tenu-ī, tent-um, hold. cursum teneō, hold on one's course.

LESSON 46.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of moneō (p. 67).

It should be noted that the perfect subujnctive active is always (except in the first person singular) identical in form with the future-perfect indicative active.

191. As in the indicative, so in the subjunctive, the perfect and pluperfect tenses have the same personal endings in all verbs. It should be noted that the pluperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding m to the perfect infinitive active. e.g. amāvisse, amāvissem; monuisse, monuissem.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (concluded).

192. Conditional sentences having either of the auxiliaries should have or would have in the apodosis in English require the pluperfect subjunctive in both protasis¹ and apodosis in Latin. Thus—

if I had feared the enemy, I should not have fought.

Learn Vocabulary 46.

sī hostēs t i m u i s s e m , non pugnāvissem.

VOCABULARY 46.

clār-us, -a, -um, famous, illustrious, renowned.
displic-eō, -ēre, displease (w. dat.).
gubernātor, gubernātōr-is, m.
(governor), pilot.
incolum-is, -e, unhurt, safe and sound.
insons, insont-is, innocent.
iūment-um, -i, n., baggage-animal.
lat-eō, -ēre, latu-ī, —, (latent),
hide.

litter-ae, -ārum, f.pl., letters, literature.
perterr-eō, -ēre, to strike with panic.
probr-um, -ī, n., reproach.
sīcāri-us, -ī, m., assassin.
statim, adv., at once, immediately.
stud-eō, -ēre, studu-ī, —, devote oneself to (with dat.).
stup-eō, -ēre, stupu-ī, —, be aghast.

LESSON 47.

Learn the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of moneō (p. 67.)

193. When he, she, it, or they, in a dependent statement or a dependent question refers to the subject of the principal sentence it must be translated by sē (§ 99); similarly suus (§ 102) is used in a dependent statement or a dependent question of that which belongs to the subject of the principal sentence, if this subject is in the third person.

the queen denies that she (herself) is ill

the merchant asked if his son was well

rēgīna negat sē aegrōtāre

mercātor rogāvit num fīlius suus valēret

¹ Occasionally the sense may admit the imperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 189); e.g. Nisi pater tuus essem, tacuissem, If I were not your father, I should have held my tongue.

194. Rule.—Verbs of hoping are constructed with the accusative and infinitive; and if the sense shows that the action hoped for is subsequent to the hoping, the future infinitive is used.

dux spērāvit s ē hostēs superātūrum (esse).

spērō mē orātiōnem habitūrum (esse).

spērō tē ōrātiōnem habitūrum (esse).

spērō tē valēre.

spērō tē nōn doluisse.

the general hoped to overcome the enemy.

I hope to make a speech.

spērō tē to valēre.

I hope (that) you will make a speech.

I hope (that) you are well.

Obs.—In the above examples esse is placed in brackets (), as it is often omitted, the future participle standing alone in place of the future infinitive active.

Learn Vocabulary 47.

Vocabulary 47.

angu-is, -is, m., snake.
appār-eō, -ēre, appear.
calamitās, calamitāt-is, f., calamity.
dēlect-us, -ūs, m., levy (of recruits).
dēliber-ō, -āre, deliberate.
dol-eō, -ēre (dolorous), grieve.
flōr-eō, -ēre, flōru-i, —, flourish.
fūnest-us, -a, -um, baneful.

Graeci-a, -ae, f., Greece.
laev-us, -a, -um, left, on the left.
molesti-ae, -ārum, f.pl. (molest), annoyances.
rīp-a, -ae, f. (riparian), bank.
senāt-us, -ūs, m., senate.
spēr-ō, -āre (desperate), hope.
vīt-ō, -āre (inevitable), avoid.

LESSON 48.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative and the imperative active of rego (pp. 68, 69).

195. The third conjugation is also known as the consonant conjugation, and is characterised by short vowels. In the imperfect indicative, however, $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ is found immediately following the base, as in the second conjugation.

196. Rule.—The place whither motion is directed is expressed by the accusative with the preposition ad, to, or in, into.

Gallī lēgātōs in Britunniam the Gauls send ambassadors to mittunt Britain

But no preposition is used if the goal is

- (a) the name of a town, or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place;
- (b) the words **domum**, home, rūs, the country (and a few others);

Brundisium ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsī I have sent ambassadors to Caesar at Brundisium (lit. to Brundisium to Caesar)

NOTE.—If a substantive (e.g. urbs, city, oppidum, town) stands in apposition to the name of the town, a preposition must be used.

consul lēgātōs ad urbem Rōmam mīsit the consul sent ambassadors to the city of Rome

Learn Vocabulary 48.

Vocabulary 48.

ante, prep. (with acc.), before. Ariovist-us, -i, m., Ariovistus. bene, adv., well. dīc-ō, -ere, dix-ī, dict-um (imperative dic), (dictionary), say. discēd-ō, ·ere, discess-ī, discess-um, depart. domum, acc. (domestic), home. dūc-ō, -ere, dux-ī, duct-um (imperative **dūc**), lead. epistol-a, -ae, f. (epistle), letter. fortun-a, -ae, f., fortune. fret-um, -ī, n., strait. gerō, -ere, gess-ī, gest-um, wage. in, prep. (with acc.), into, upon. against.

intelleg-\(\bar{0}\), -ere, intellex-\(\bar{1}\), intellect-um (intelligent), understand.

iung-ō, -ere, iunx-ī, iunct-um, join.

mitt-ō, -ere, mīs-ī, miss-um, send.

nunti-us, -ī, m., messenger.

permitt-ō, -ere, permis-ī, permiss-um (permit), entrust.

Rhēn-us, -i, m., Rhine.

scrīb-ō, -ere, scrips-ī, script-um (scribe), write.

trans, prep. (with acc.), across.
vīv-ō, -ere, vix-ī, vict-um (revive), live.

LESSON 49.

Learn the remaining indicative tenses and the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of rego (pp. 68, 69).

197. Rule.—The place whence motion is directed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition if it is (a) the name of a town or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place, or (b) domo, from home, rure from the country.

nuntium ad Caesarem Romā mīsī

from Rome I sent a messenger to Caesar.

Note.—In all other cases a preposition must be used, and also if a substantive (e.g. urbs, city, oppidum, town) stands in apposition to the name of the town or small island.

ab urbe Romā nuntium mīsī

I sent a messenger from the city of Rome

Learn Vocabulary 49.

Vocabulary 49.

ag-ō, -ere, ēg-ī, act-um, drive. consist-ō, -ere, constit-ī, constit-um, settle, halt.

contend-ō, -ere, contend-ī, content-um, hasten.

crēd-ō, -ere, crēdid-ī, crēdit-um (credit), believe (with dat.). ex or ē, prep. (with abl.), out of, from.

excēd-ō, -ere, excess-ī, excessum, retire.

impediment-a, - \bar{o} rum, n.pl. (impediment), baggage.

irrump-o, -ere, irrūp-ī, irrupt-um (irruption), break into.

Massīli-a, -ae, f., Marscilles. occurr-ō, -ere, occurr-ī, occursum (occur), fall in with, fall upon (with dat.).

parc-ō, -ere, peperc-ī, pars-um (parsimony), be sparing, spare (with dat.).

paulātim, adv., gradually.

praeceps, praecipit-is (precipitous), headlong.

relinqu-ō, -ere, reliqu-i, relict-um, relinquish, leave.

-ere, vic-i, vict-um vinc-ō, (victory), conquer.

LESSON 50.

Learn the subjunctive active of **rego** (p. 69). Revise § 55 (pp. 24, 25).

FINAL CLAUSES.

198. A clause which expresses the purpose or end (finis) of the action of the principal sentence is called a final clause. The subjunctive is the mood used in Latin final clauses, and the tense is the present subjunctive in primary sequence (§ 160), and the imperfect subjunctive in historic sequence.

A final clause is usually introduced by ut or uti (that, in order that), or ne (lest, in order that . . . not).

moneō tē nē Caesarī displiceās I advise you not to displease Caesar

monuî të në Caesarî displicërës I advised you not to displease Caesar

Note.—Very frequently the English infinitive expresses purpose and must be translated by a present or imperfect subjunctive. This infinitive is especially common after verbs of commanding, advising, and striving. ¹

199. The city of, the town of is expressed in Latin by the name of the town (island, country, river, etc.) in apposition to the substantive urbs, oppidum (insula, flūmen, etc.).

urbs Roma oppugnāta est the city of Rome was assaulted

200. If these substantives stand in apposition to the name of a town expressing "place where" (§ 55), they are put in the ablative case preceded by the preposition in.

Athēnīs in urbe opulentissimā I was educated in the wealthy city of Athens

Learn Vocabulary 50 (p. 107).

RHYME: With ask, command, advise, and strive, By ut translate infinitive.

Vocabulary 50.

afflīg-ō, -ere, afflix-ī, afflict-um (affliction), dash. claud-ō, -ere, claus-ī, claus-um, contemn-ō, -ere, contemps-ī, contempt-um, despise.

cūr-ō, -āre, take care.

em-ō, -ere, ēm-ī, empt-um, buy. ērump-ō, -ere, ērūp-ī, ērupt-um (eruption), break out, sally forth.

fing-ō, -ere, fin**x-**ī, fict-um (fiction), feign.

imper-ō, -āre (imperious), command, give orders (with dat.). inerm-is, -e, unarmed.

leg-ō, -ere, leg-i, lect-um (legible),

or-o, -are (oration), beg, beseech. pell-ō, -ere, pepul-ī, puls-um (propel), drive. port-a, -ae, f. (portal), gate.

LESSON 51.

Learn the active voice of audio, except the subjunctive (pp. 70, 71).

201. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote place where in the following expressions:—

> terrā, by land, mari, by sea,

dextra, on the right. laevā, on the left, loco (usually with an adjective), in place,

and some less common words.

Gallos terrā marique superāvimus

we have overcome the Gauls by land and sea

202. Place where may also be expressed without a preposition if the substantive is qualified by medius, middle, or totus, whole.

carcerem mediā urbe aedificant

consulēs tōtā Italiā dēlectum

hahēbant

they are building a prison in the middle of the city

the consuls were holding a levy all over Italy

Obs.—A preposition is required in expressions denoting place where. except (1) in accordance with §§ 201, 202, and (2) in the case of names of towns and small islands (§ 55).

Learn Vocabulary 51 (p. 108).

VOCABULARY 51.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre, -īre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like amō or moneō or audiō; if a verb is irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

aper-io, -ire, aperu-i, apert-um (aperture), open. aud-iō, -īre (audience), hear. comper-io, -īre, comper-ī, compert-um, ascertain. consent-iō, -īre, consens-ī, consens-um (consent), come to an understanding (with). conven-io, -īre, convēn-ī, convent-um (convent), assemble. custod-io, -ire (custody), keep, guard. dorm-io, -ire (dormitory), sleep. exul, exul-is, m., exile. idone-us, -a, -um, suitable. iniqu-us, -a, -um (iniquity), unfair, disadvantageous, unfavourable.

loc-us, -ī, m. (local), place. medi-us, -a, -um, middle. mūn-iō,-īre (ammunition), fortify. opulent-us, -a, -um, opulent, flourishing. pon-o, -ere, posu-i, posit-um, place, pitch (a camp). pūn-iō, -īre, punish. reper-io, -īre, repper-ī, repertum, find. sc-iō, -ire (science), know. sepel-iō, -īre, sepelīv -i, sepult-um (sepulture), bury. ven-iō, -īre, vēn-i, vent-um, come vinc-io, -ire, vinx-i, vinct-um, bind.

LESSON 52.

Learn the subjunctive active of audio (p. 71).

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

203. A consecutive clause expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence. It is usually introduced in Latin by ut (that, so that), or, if the clause is negative, by ut followed by non or some other negative word. The principal sentence often contains a demonstrative adverb meaning so, e.g. adeo, ita, sic, tam, or an adjective such as tot (indeclinable), so many, tantus (so great), tālis, such.

The mood of the verb in the consecutive clause is always subjunctive, and the rule for the sequence of tenses must be observed.

ita vīvit ut omnibus cārus sit. accidit u t numquam Rōmae essem

adeō mē timet ut adhūc tacuerit

tanta erat operis firmitūdō ut multos annos dūrāvisset

he so lives that he is dear to all. it so happened that I was never at

he fears me so much that he has been silent till now

such was the strength of the work that it had lasted many years

Note 1.—Nē (§ 198) must never be used in a consecutive clause.

Note 2.—In consecutive clauses the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found where the rule for the sequence of tenses would require the imperfect.

Learn Vocabulary 52.

Vocabulary 52.

accid-it, -ere, accid-it, —, verb | nondum, adv., not yet. impers. (accident), it happens. adeō, adv., so. adven-iō, -īre, advēn-ī, adventum (advent), arrive. anim-us, -ī, m. (animate), mind. disert-us, -a, -um, eloquent. moll-io, -ire, mitigate, soothe. multitūdō, multitūdin-is, f. multitude.

pavor, pavor-is, m., panic. praeven-iō, -īre, praevēn-ī, praevent-um (prevent), get the start of. repentin-us, -a, -um, sudden. statio, station-is, f. (station), post. strepit-us, -ūs, m., uproar, din. tam, adv., so.

vox, voc-is, f., voice.

LESSON 53.

Learn the active voice of capio (p. 80).

204. All verbs of the third conjugation (i.e. with present infinitive active ending in -ere) which in the present indicative active end in -iō are conjugated like capiō.

Obs.—Capiō is conjugated like audiō in those parts in which the i of audio is followed by a vowel, i.e. in which the i is short (i); in other parts capio is conjugated like rego,

Learn Vocabulary 53 (p. 110).

VOCABULARY 53.

ad unum, phrase, to a man. cap-iō, -ere, cēp-ī, capt-um (capture), take. convent-us, -us, m., assembly, council. conventum ago, hold a council. corrip-io, -ere, corripu-i, correptum, snatch up. cup-iō, -ere, cupīv-ī, cupīt-um (cupidity), desire. curr-ō, -ere, cucurr-ī, curs-um (course), run. effic-iō, -ere, effēc-ī, effect-um (efficient), bring it about. fac-iō, -ere, fēc-ī, fact-um (imperative fac), make, do.

fug-a, -ae, f., flight. fug-io, -ere, fug-ī, fugit-um, flee. interfic-io, -ere, interfec-i, interfect-um, kill. iac-iō, -ere, iēc-ī, iact-um, throw. legiō, legiōn-is, f., legion. par-io, -ere, peper-i, part-um (parent), bring forth, gain. praefic-iō, -ere, praefēc-ī, praefect-um (prefect), set over (with acc. and dat.). quat-iō, -ere,—, quass-um, shake. quid, what? (§ 118). salūs, salūt-is, f., safety. satisfac-iō, -ere, satisfēc-ī, satisfact-um, satisfy (with dat.).

LESSON 54.

Learn the indicative and imperative passive of amo (pp. 72, 73).

205. In the case of the tenses conjugated with the help of the perfect participle it must be remembered that the forms given in the table are masculine and are to be used only if the subject is masculine; cp. p. 20, footnote.

Double Questions.

206. Rule.—When two or more alternatives are put in the form of a question, the first is usually introduced by utrum, whether, and the second and subsequent alternatives by an, or.

utrum Caesarem an Pompēium laudās? utrum pugnābitis an fugiētis? utrum fīlius meus tibī pāruit annōn? do you praise Caesar or Pompeius? will you fight or flee? did my son obey you or not?

Learn Vocabulary 54 (p. 111).

Vocabulary 54.

administr-o, -are, administer, carry on, manage. agger, agger-is, m., earthwork. amplific-o, -are, amplify, extend.

cas-us, -us, m., chance. consili-um, -i, n. (counsel), purpose, design. vall-um, -ī, n., rampart.

LESSON 55.

Learn the subjunctive passive of amo (p. 73).

DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

207. Rule.—Double questions, like single questions, may be reported, and are then called dependent double questions. The only change is in the verb, which passes into the subjunctive and follows the rules already given for the sequence of tenses.

rogō utrum Caesarem an Pompēium laudēs rogāvī utrum Caesarem an I ask whether you praise Caesar or Pompeius

Pompēium laudārēs

I asked whether you were praising Caesar or Pompeius

In a dependent double question or not is expressed by necne rather than by annon.

208. Rule.—A verb or phrase expressing doubt, if preceded by a negative, is followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by quin, (but) that. The same construction is used after nemo est, there is no one (who . . . not); nihil est, there is nothing (that . . . not). Sequence of tenses is observed.

nön dubium est quin Caesar adventet nēmō erat quīn tibī crēderet. there is no doubt (but) that Caesar is on the point of arriving there was no one who did not believe you

Note.—When used without a negative, such expressions are usually followed by a dependent question.

sapientēs dubitant utrum dīvitēs an pauperēs fēlīci**or**ēs philosophers doubt whether the rich or the poor are happier

Learn Vocabulary 55 (p. 112).

VOCABULARY 55.

ancor-a, -ae, f., anchor. fraude (abl. of manner), by guile. aries, ariet-is, m., ram, batteringonerāri-us, -a, -um, burdenram. bearing. dēlig-ō, -āre, fasten. nāvis onerāria, merchant-vessel. dubi-us, -a, -um, doubtful. vis (acc. vim, no gen. or dat., foss-a, -ae, f., trench. abl. vī), f., force, violence. fraus, fraud-is, f., fraud, craft, vir-es, -ium, f.pl. (pl. of vis), guile. strength.

LESSON 56.

Learn the infinitive and participles passive of **amō** (p. 73).

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION.

209. In such sentences as—

- (a) the day being fine, I took a walk;
- (b) all else failing, I shall trust to you;
- (c) all his schemes having failed, he was thrown into despair;
- (d) the enemy having been driven off, the British entered the town;

the phrase containing a participle, although it adverbially modifies the statement, is regarded as independent of the construction, and has been given the name of **nominative** absolute (absolutus = freed).

210. A corresponding construction exists in Latin, but the case of the participle and of the word with which the participle agrees is ablative. The participles used in Latin in the ablative absolute construction are the present participle active and the perfect participle passive.

Obs.—The ablative is thus used as being the instrumental case. The ablative absolute expresses an action which accompanies that of the finite verb, and is sometimes known as the ablative of the attendant circumstance.

211. If neither of these is available, an English nominative absolute phrase must be rendered by a Latin clause—

temporal, conditional, or other, according to the meaning; and such a clause is always admissible, even if the required participle exists. Thus, in the examples given above, the nominative absolute might be represented by clauses such as—

- (a) as the day was fine . . . (causal);
- (b) if all else fails . . . (conditional);
- (d) when the enemy had been driven off . . . (temporal).

212. The ablative absolute is, however, more used in Latin than is the nominative absolute in English, so that an English temporal or other clause may often conveniently be rendered by it; but the form of the expression must be so altered that the participle may be either present active or perfect passive; moreover, the substantive or pronoun with which this participle agrees must be neither the subject nor the object of the sentence. Thus—

Sentence with dependent clause.

Sentence as rendered with ablative absolute

while the consul was saying these words, the horsemen departed

the consul saying these words, the horsemen departed

haec dīcente consule, equites discesserunt

when many had been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the river many having been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the

multīs interfectīs, reliquī sē in flūmēn praecipitāvērunt

the townsfolk, when they heard the shouts, slew the hostages been heard, slew the hostages

oppidānī, clāmoribus audītīs, obsidēs interfēcērunt

Obs.—In the last sentence it should be noticed (1) that hearing really means having heard, for the slaying of the hostages followed as the result of the hearing, (2) that as Latin has no perfect participle active, the active form having heard the shouts is converted to the passive form the shouts having been heard, and, the shouts being neither the subject nor the object of the verb slew, the phrase is put in the ablative absolute.

Learn Vocabulary 56 (p. 114).

Vocabulary 56.

apud, prep. (with acc.), in the | expon-o, -ere, exposu-i, expositpresence of, among arx, arc-is, f., citadel. auxili-um, -i, n. (auxiliary), help, aid; pl. reinforcements. concili-um, -ī, n., council. convoc-ō, -āre (convoke), summon, call together. crem-ō, -āre, burn, cremate. dēclār-ō, -āre, declarc.

um, land (transitive). frustrā, adv. (frustrate), in vain. invād-ō, -ere, invās-ī, invās-um, invade, seize. numer-us, -i, m., number. prob-ō, -āre (approbation), apbrove. reduc-o, -ere, redux-i, reduct-um, lead back. sententi-a, -ae, f., opinion.

LESSON 57.

THE GERUNDIVE.

213. The gerundive is an adjective formed from transitive verbs, and denotes that a person or thing is fit or meet to be the object of the verbal action; e.g. amandus, lovable or fit to be loved; deplorandus, to be lamented; cantandus, fit to be sung of; arandus, arable; narrandus, fit to be narrated; honorandus, meet to be honoured. The person by whom the action is to be performed is expressed by a dative.

bonī semper amandī sunt good men must always be loved by omnibus

Obs.—In the case of intransitive verbs, i.e. verbs which do not govern an accusative case, and consequently have no gerundive, the gerund (§ 176) may be used. Note the different constructions to be employed in translating into Latin the following:—

parentës sunt honorandi parents should be honoured (transitive)

parentibus est obtemperandum (intransitive)

parents must be obeyed (lit. there is a duty of giving way to parents)

214. There is another use of the gerundive quite distinct from the above; viz. that known as the gerundive construction. As neither the accusative nor the dative gerund ever governs a direct object (§ 175, Note), its place must be supplied by this gerundive construction, the rule for which is as follows.

The substantive which would be the object of the gerund is put into the case in which the gerund would be, and the gerundive is made to agree with that object; thus instead of translating

I devote myself to correcting books

by studeō with dative gerund of ēmendō governing a direct object, we put librī in the dative and make the gerundive ēmendandus agree with it. We thus get

studeo librīs ēmendandīs.

215. Examples are—

equitēs ad urbem oppugnandam parātī erant

Caesar Romam contendit ad auxilia comparanda

sunt nonnullī acuendīs puerōrum ingeniīs nōn inūtilēs lūsūs the cavalry were ready for assaulting the city

Caesar hastens to Rome to collect reinforcements

there are some games not unserviceable for sharpening boys' wits

216. The gerundive construction is usually substituted for an ablative gerund with a direct object and often for a genitive gerund with a direct object.

tõtum diem in fābulis narrandis consūmēs

hūc vēnī fīliae exspectandae causā (or grātiā) or fīliam exspectandi causā (or grātiā) you will spend the whole day in telling tales

I came hither for the sake of awaiting (to await) my daughter

217. From the above examples it will be seen that the gerundive construction may be used to express purpose either (a) in the genitive with causā or grātiā, or (b) in the accusative preceded by the preposition ad.

Learn Vocabulary 57 (p. 116).

Vocabulary 57.

apt-us, -a, -um (apt), fit, adapted. Hannibal, Hannibal-is, m., Hannibal (a Carthaginian general). imperi-um, -I, n., empire, rule. maximē, adv., very greatly. occāsiō, occāsiōn-is, f., opportunity. pristin-us, -a, -um (pristine), former. prōnunti-ō, -āre, proclaim.

report-ō, -āre, bring back.
reserv-ō, -āre, reserve.
sollicit-ō, -āre, work upon, instigate.
summ-a, -ae, f. (sum), whole,
chief responsibility.
tent-ō, -āre, try, tempt.
ūnivers-us, -a, -um, universal.
valētūdō, valētūdin-is, f. (valetudinarian), health.

LESSON 58.

Learn the passive voice of **moneō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 74, 75).

218. The conjugation of moneō differs from that of amō in the same way in the passive as it does in the active, i.e. the vowel immediately following the base is e, not a, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), in the imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, present infinitive, and the gerundive (cp. § 181), but in other respects these parts are formed in the same way in the two conjugations.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: PRESENT OR FUTURE TIME.

219. In such sentences as-

when I do wrong, I get punished; when I see you, I will tell you all about it; as soon as I arrived, I went upstairs;

the clauses introduced by when, as soon as, or the like are called temporal, i.e. they define the time (tempus) at which the action of the principal sentence takes place, relatively to another action, viz. that of the clause.

- 220. In Latin emporal clauses in which the time is present or future, the mood used is indicative, and the tense is that which the meaning requires.
- 221. The English idiom, by which the present is used in the second sentence given in § 219, must not be reproduced in Latin, but the future or future-perfect must be used if the time is future. Cp. § 187.
- 222. The commonest temporal conjunction in Latin is cum'.
 - c u m permagna praemia s u n t, est causa peccandī
 - cum epistolam lēgerō, respondēbō
 - cum adventābunt equitēs, fugite

when the rewards are very great, it is a reason for wrong-doing when I have read the letter, I will reply

when the horsemen are on the point of arriving, flee

Obs.—Commands naturally refer to future time.

Learn Vocabulary 58.

Vocabulary 58.

auctoritās, auctoritāt-is, f., influence, authority.
aug-eō, -ēre, aux-ī, auct-um, increase (transitive).
circum, prep. (with acc.), around.
clāmor, clāmor-is, m., cheer, shout
comiti-a, -ōrum, n. pl., election.
comitia habeō, hold an election.
commov-eō, -ēre, commōv-ī,
commot-um, stir, move.
dēl-eō, -ēre, dēlēt-um,
destroy.

ē vītā excēdō, die.
graviter, adv., heavily, deeply.
mov-eō, -ēre, mōv-ī, mōt-um,
move (trans.); pass., move (intrans.).
obsīd-eō, -ēre, obsēd-ī, ōbsess-um,

perven-iō, -ire, pervēn-i, pervent-um, arrive. tellūs, tellūr-is, f., the earth. undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides.

^{&#}x27; Sometimes spelt quum.

LESSON 59.

Learn the subjunctive passive of moneō (p. 75).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES: PAST TIME.

223. In such sentences as—

when I was at school, I used to learn Latin; when he had said this, he went away; when the envoys arrived, Caesar demanded hostages:

in which the action of the temporal clause and that of the principal sentence belong to the same series of events, the Latin conjunction cum is followed by the subjunctive mood, the imperfect or pluperfect being used according to the requirements of the sense.

audiēbam frequenter

cum Athēnis essem, Zēnonem when I was at Athens, I often heard Zeno's lectures

haec cum dixisset, suos in when he had said this, he led his hostës duxit

men against the enemy

domum discessit

cum nostros fugere vidisset, when he saw that our men were flecing, he went off home

Obs.—In the last example the pluperfect subjunctive is used because the action of seeing had preceded that of departing.

Note.—If the action of the temporal clause is represented as in no way connected with that of the principal sentence, cum is followed by the indicative; e.g. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, potentissimī erant Haedul, When Caesar came to Gaul (or at the time of Caesar's coming to Gaul), the Haedui were very powerful.

224. Other common temporal conjunctions are ut or uti, when, as soon as, ubi or ubi, when, followed by the indicative.

Pompēius, ut equitātum suum fugātum vīdit, aciē excessit

when (or as soon as) Pompeius saw his cavalry put to flight, he left the line of battle

ubi ea diës quam constituerat vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, concilium convocāvit

when the day which he had appointed had come and the ambassadors had returned to him, he summoned a meeting

Note.—The perfect indicative is used after ut or ubi where, if the clause were induced by cum, the pluperfect subjunctive would stand, and the perfect indicative so used is often (as in the example last given) rendered by the English past-perfect.

225. Rule.—Verbs which in the active voice govern both an accusative of the person and an accusative of the thing (§ 188) may retain the accusative of the thing in the passive

linguam Latīnam ā magistrō docēmur

we are taught Latin by the master

Learn Vocabulary 59.

Vocabulary 59.

cohib-eō, -ēre, restrain. commīlitō, commīlitōn-is, m., comrade, fellow-soldier. consum-ō, -ere, consumps-ī, consumpt-um, consume, spend. distribu-ō, -ere, distribu-ī, distribūt-um, distribute.

dolor, dolor-is, m., grief, indignaimpetum facio, charge (military phrase). inter, prep. (with acc.), among. nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque, conj., neither . . . nor. revoc-ō, -āre, call back.

LESSON 60.

Learn the passive voice of rego, except the subjunctive (pp. 76, 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

226. Causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions quod or quia (because), quoniam (since or seeing that). the cause is stated as a fact, the indicative is used.

vēnī quod mē appellāvistī I came because you called me

227. Rule.—Verbs which govern the dative cannot be used personally in the passive: the impersonal construction must be employed.

mihī crēditur, tibī invidētur

I am believed, you are envied (lit. there is a putting trust in me, there is a feeling of envy against you)

captīvīs parcētur

the prisoners will be spared (lit.
there will be a showing of mercy
to the prisoners)

Learn Vocabulary 60.

Vocabulary 60.

adduc-ō, -ere, addux-ī, adductum, bring.

commeāt-us, -ūs, m., supplies. dēser-ō, -ere, dēseru-ī, dēsert-um,

desert.
dilig-ō, -ere, dilex-i, dilect-um,

dilig-ō, -ere, dilex-ī, dilect-um, esteem. expell-ō, -ere, expul-ī, expulsum

(expel), drive out. fav-eō, -ēre, fāv-ī, faut-um, be favourable. incend-ō, -ere, incend-ī, incensum (incendiary), burn (trans.). instru-ō, -ere, instrux-ī, instructum, draw up.

invid-eō, -ēre, invid-ī, invis-um, be envious, envy (with dat.). opus est, there is need (with abl. of the thing needed).

praesidi-um, -ī, n., garrison.

subduc-ō, -ere, subdux-ī, subductum, beach, haul up on shore

LESSON 61.

Learn the subjunctive passive of rego (p. 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES (continued).

228. In a causal clause introduced by quod (or by quia or quoniam) the subjunctive is used if the speaker does not wish to vouch for the truth of the cause assigned. The conjunction thus followed by the subjunctive may often be translated on the ground that . . . , because (as he said . . .), because (so he thought). . . .

dolēbat quod peccāvisset

he was grieving because (he thought) he had done wrong

229. A causal clause introduced by cum (since) is always in the subjunctive. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 160) must be observed.

quael cum ita sint, domum and since these things are so, I discēdam

shall go home

230. Rule.—The expression opus est, there is need (lit. there is work to be done), is usually constructed with an ablative of the thing or person needed, and a dative of the person needing.

duce nobis opus est

we have need of a leader (lit. there is for us work to be done with a leader)

Learn Vocabulary 61.

VOCABULARY 6T.

dēdūc-ō, -ere, dēdux-ī, dēduct--um (deduct), launch (lit. bring down from the shore). dīmitt-ō, -ere, dīmīs-ī, dīmiss-um (dismiss), disband. dirim-ō, -ere, dirēm-ī, diremptum, break down, destroy. interclūd-ō, -ere, interclūs-ī, interclūs-um, cut off.

iam, adv., now, by this time. poster-us, -a, -um (posterity), following. reg-ō, -ere, rex-ī, rect-um (regiment), rule, govern. trād-ō, -ere, trādid-ī, trādit-um, hand over, betray. vic-us, -i, m., village.

LESSON 62.

Learn the passive voice of audio, except the subjunctive (pp. 78, 79).

Concessive Clauses.

- 231. Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning although are called concessive clauses.
- 232. Etsi (although, even if) is used with the indicative when that which is conceded is regarded as fact.

etsī stultus es, sapientior es although you are foolish, you are quam frāter tuus wiser than your brother

quae (§ 114) = et ea (§ 111).

233. Quamquam (although) is always followed by the indicative.

quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa

though you are in a hurry, the delay is not great

Learn Vocabulary 62.

VOCABULARY 62.

admitt-ō, -ere, admīs-ī, admissum, commit (crime). ars, art-is, f., art; pl. the arts. carcer, carcer-is, m. (incarcerate), prison. effug-iō, -ere, effūg-ī, —, escape. ēgregiē, adv., admirably. ēmoll-iō, -īre (emollient), refine. ērud-iō, -īre (crudite), train, polish.
līberāl-is, -e, liberal (i.e. befitting a free man).
saepissimē, adv., very often.
tamen, adv., nevertheless.
test-is, c. (testify), witness.

LESSON 63.

Learn the subjunctive passive of audio (p. 79).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (concluded).

234. Rule.—Cum (although), quamvīs (although), licet (although), require the subjunctive. So too do etsī and etiamsī (even if), if they introduce concessions made merely for the sake of argument.

cum prīmī hostium concidissent, tamen ācriter reliquī resistēbant

quam vīs sīs molestus, numquam dīcam tē esse malum

etiamsī peccāvisset, non pūnītus esset although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen, nevertheless the rest resisted vigorously

although you may be troublesome, I will never say that you are wicked

even if he had done wrong, he would not have been punished

Learn Vocabulary 63 (p. 123).

Vocabulary 63.

abrip-iō, -ere, abripu-ī, abreptum, carry off. aerāri-um, -ī, n., treasury. aliquandō, adv., some day. barbar-us, -a, -um, barbarous, uncivilised. combūr-ō, -ere, combuss-ī, combust-um, burn (trans.).

concid-ō, -ere, concid-ī, --, fall.

exhaur-iō, -Ire, exhaus-ī, exhaust-um, exhaust.
fīn-iō, -Ire, finish, end.
inven-lō, -Ire, inven-ī, invent-um
(invent), find.
omnīnō, adv., altogether, wholly.
pell-is, -is, f., skin.
saepius, adv., more often, oftener.
vest-iō, -Ire (vest), clothe.

LESSON 64.

Learn the passive voice of capio (p. 81).

235. Rule.—Verbs of fearing are followed by a final clause (§ 198) introduced by nē, that or lest, or ut, that ... not.

timeō nē urbs capiātur timeō ut urbs capiātur I fear that the city will be taken
I fear that the city will not be taken

Learn Vocabulary 64.

Vocabulary 64.

affic-iō, -ere, affēc-ī, affect-um, affect.

confic-iō, -ere, confēc-ī, confectum, finish.

conspic-iō, -ere, conspex-ī, conspect-um (conspicuous), behold, observe.

dēfic-iō, -ere, dēfēc-ī, dēfect-um (deficient), fall away, fail; passive (with abl.), be lacking dīrip-iō, -ere, dīripu-ī, dīreptum,
 pillage.
incendi-um, -ī, n. (incendiary),

fire.
mulier, mulier-is, f., woman.

ratio, ration-is, f. (rational), reason.

refic-iō, -ere, refēc-ī, refect-um, repair.

The learner must now study Lessons 32-35 (on the pronouns), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 32-35.

LESSON 65.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Learn the conjugation of hortor and of vereor (pp. 82, 83).

- **236.** Some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called *deponents*, because they were considered by the old grammarians to *lay aside* (deponere) their passive meaning.
- 237. It is not in all cases clear what was originally the force of the passive form in these verbs, but in many of them it was evidently reflexive, e.g. amplector, I embrace, i.e. twine myself around (from pleeto, I plait, and the prefix ambi-, around), glorior, I boast, i.e. glorify myself.

But whatever the origin of the deponent verbs may have been, they are for all practical purposes equivalent both in force and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as

amplector) or intransitive (as glorior).

238. The following non-deponent parts are found in all deponent verbs:—

(r) Present Participle

(2) Future Participle (and consequently Future Infinitive)

active in form.

(3) Gerund (4) Supine

(4) Supme (5) Gerundive

passive in meaning.

For examples, see §§ 148-151.

Note.—In some deponent verbs the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning; e.g. veneror, I worship, has perfect participle veneratus, worshipped (passive) or having worshipped (deponent).

239. There are four conjugations of deponent verbs, resembling those of the regular passive verbs with the addition of the aforesaid forms of the corresponding active conjugations.

Three deponent verbs and their compounds (morior, mortuus sum, *die*; gradior, gressus sum, *step*; patior, passus sum, *suffer*) are conjugated like capior (§ 147).

240. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs (see § 134). The supine base of deponent verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the present base just as in active verbs; exceptions to this rule are shown in the Vocabularies, and a full list is given in the Appendix. The supine bases of deponents of the third conjugation must be learned from the Vocabularies and (later on) from the Appendix (§§ 329, 330).

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

241. Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle), viz.:—

1	res. Indic	.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation Third Conj.		I dare I rejoice I am accustomed I trust	gaud-ēre sol-ēre	aus-us sum gāvīs-us sum solit-us sum fīs-us sum

So also the compounds confīdo, I trust, and diffīdo, I distrust.

242. Rule.—**Iubeō**, *I bid*, *I command*, **vetō**, *I forbid*, and **cōnor**, *I attempt*, are constructed with an infinitive.¹

iubeō tē tacēre fugere cōnābātur I command you to be silent he was attempting to flee

With ask, command, advise, and strive, By ut translate infinitive; But not so after iubeō, nor With vetō or deponent cōnor.

¹ Hence the rhyme given on p. 106 (footnote) will run -

243. Rule.—Verbs of promising, like verbs of hoping, are constructed with the accusative and future infinitive, with or without esse.

pollicētur sē ita factūrum he promises to do so (esse)
Learn Vocabulary 65.

Vocabulary 65.

anteä, adv., beforehand. arbitr-or, -ārī, think. cohort-or, -ārī, exhort. commor-or, -ārī, linger. confit-eor, -ērī, confess-us sum, confess, admit. con-or, -ārī, attempt. dēd-ō, -ere, dēdid-ī, dēdit-um, surrender. dextr-a, -ae (sc. manus), f., right ēdūc-ō, -ere, ēdux-ī, ēduct-um (educe), lead out, draw (a sword). ēven-iō, -īre, ēvēn-ī, ēvent-um (event), turn out, happen. impuls-us, -ūs, m., impulse, initiative.

incert-us, -a, -um, uncertain. iub-eō, -ēre, iuss-ī, iuss-um (jussive), bid. longius, adv., farther, too far. mor-or, -ari, delay (trans. and intrans.). pābul-or, -ārī, forage. pauc-ī, -ae, -a (paucity), few. pollic-eor, -ērī, promise. specul-or, -ārī (speculate), reconnoitre. suspic-or, -ārī, suspect. tu-eor, -eri, watch, defend. vag-or, -ārī (vagabond), wander. ver-eor, -ērī, fear. vet-o, -are, vetu-i, vetit-um, forbid.

LESSON 66.

Learn the conjugation of loquor (p. 84). Revise the rules about the sequence of tenses and dependent questions (§§ 155-162).

244. Rule.—The verbs ūtor, I use, abūtor, I misuse, fungor, I perform, fruor, I enjoy, take an ablative representing the direct object of the corresponding English verbs; an ablative is also used with dignor, I deem myself worthy of, potior, I gain possession of, vescor, I feed on.

impedimentiset castris our men gained possession of the baggage and camp

Learn Vocabulary 66 (p. 127).

Rhyme:—Put ablative with dignor, vescor, ūtor,
And fungor, fruor, potior, abūtor.

Vocabulary 66.

abūt-or, -ī, abūs-us sum, abuse (with abl.).

adipisc-or, -i, adept-us sum, ob-

carō, carn-is, f. (carnal), flesh.

colloqu-or, -ī, collocūt-us sum (colloquy), parley.
confīd-ō, -ere, confīs-us sum, be

confident.

ēlāb-or, -ī, ēlaps-us sum (elapse), slip out, escape.

expedit-us, -a, -um (expedite), light-armed.

fru-or, -i, fruct-us sum (fruition), enjoy (with abl.).

fung-or, -ī, funct-us sum (function), discharge (with abl.).

insequ-or, -ī, insecūt-us sum, follow, pursue.

īrasc-or, -ī, īrāt-us sum (irate), be angry.

lac, lact-is, n., milk.

litter-a, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet), character.

loqu-or, -ī, locūt-us sum (loqua-cious), speak, talk.

persequ-or, -ī, persecūt-us sum (persecute), follow up, pursue.

proficisc-or, -i, profect-us sum, set out.

sequ-or, -i, secut-us sum (sequel), follow.

sõlum, adv., only.

ūt-or, -ī, ūs-us sum, use (with abl.).

vesc-or, -ī,—, feed on (with abl.). vīcīn-us, -a, -um (vicinity), neighbouring.

LESSON 67.

Learn the conjugation of partior (p. 85). Revise the rules about the accusative and infinitive (§§ 167-174) and the ablative absolute (§§ 209-212).

245. Deponents are the only Latin verbs which have a perfect participle with active meaning. This participle is often used in agreement with the subject where, in the case of an ordinary verb, we should require the perfect participle passive in the ablative absolute construction or a temporal or causal clause.

Caesar, hostēs persecūtus, castra in colle posuit

princeps, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsit Caesar, having followed up the enemy, pitched his camp on a hill

the chief, fearing lest he should be deserted by all, sent ambassadors to Caesar

Obs. 1.—In the first example given above the ablative absolute is inadmissible with persecutus, because the participle refers to the subject of the sentence and must agree with it. On the other hand, if for having followed up the enemy we substitute having put the enemy to flight, then, as fugo has no perfect participle with active meaning, we must either use a temporal clause, cum hostes fugavisset, or turn the expression into the passive and say hostibus fugātīs, where the ablative absolute is required because the participle refers to a word which is neither the subject nor the object of the verb posuit.

Obs. 2.—In the second example the perfect participle is rightly used because the feeling of fear preceded (and resulted in) the sending of ambassadors; the use of the present participle in English is idiomatic.

Learn Vocabulary 67.

Vocabulary 67.

ador-ior, -īrī, adort-us sum. mor-ior, -ī, mortu-us sum (morattack. cōg-ō, -ere, coēg-ī, coact-um, collect. complex-us, -ūs, m., embrace. dē improvīso, unexpectedly. ērip-iō, -ere, ēripu-ī, ērept-um, tear away, snatch. exigu-us, -a, -um, scanty. exper-ior, -īrī, expert-us sum (experiment), try, put to the trial. hic. adv., here. ingred-ior, -ī, ingress-us sum (ingredient), set foot in. mēt-ior, -īrī, mens-us sum (mete) measure out.

tal), die. nasc-or, -ī, nāt-us sum (nascent). be born. opper-ior, -īrī, oppert-us or opperīt-us sum, wait.

or-ior, -īrī, ort-us sum (orient). part-ior, -īrī (part), divide.

pat-ior, -ī, pass-us sum (patient),

pot-ior, -iri, get possession of. possess (with abl.).

progred-ior. -ī, progress-us sum (progress), advance. semel, adv., once.

The learner must now study Lessons 27-29 (on the comparison of adjectives), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 27-29.

LESSON 68.

THE VERB POSSUM.

246. Possum, *I am able*, *I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective pot-is, *able*, +sum), is conjugated as follows:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potu-ī.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjectives only): potens (gen. potent-is), powerful.

INDICATIVE MOOD. Present. (I am able.) pos-sum pos-sumus pot-es pot-estis pot-est pos-sunt IMPERFECT. (I was able.) pot-eram pot-erāmus pot-erās pot-erātis pot-erat pot-erant FUTURE. (I shall be able.) pot-erō pot-erimus pot-eritis pot-eris pot-erunt pot-erit Perfect. (I was or have been able.) potu-i, etc.

Pluperfect. (I had been able.)

potu-eram, etc.

Future-Perfect. (I shall have been able.)

potu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (I should be able.)
pos-sim
pos-sīs
pos-sītis
pos-sit
pos-sint

IMPERFECT. (I should be able.)
pos-sem pos-sēmus
pos-sēt pos-sētis
pos-set pos-sent

Perfect. potu-erim, etc.

Pluperfect. (I should have been able.)

potu-issem, etc. INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: posse, to be able.

Perfect: potu-isse, to have been able.

Possum has no imperative, supine, or future participle.

247. Rule.—After verbs of hindering or preventing the dependent clause is introduced by quōminus or (if the principal sentence is negative) by quōm.

nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quōminus in portum venīre possent

Germānī retinērī non potuērunt quīn in nostros tēla conicerent the ships were being hindered by the wind from being able to reach the harbour

the Germans could not be restrained from throwing darts at our men

Learn Vocabulary 68 (p. 130).

¹ Tenses formed from the perfect or supine base of irregular verbs are conjugated regularly; cp. § 186.

Vocabulary 68.

comit-or, -ārī (concomitant), accompany. ēdisc-ō, -ere, ēdidic-i, —, learn by heart. dect-ō, -ere, flex-ī, flex-um (deflect), bend, sway. obst-ō, -āre, obstit-ī, obstāt-um (obstacle) prevent. persuād-eō, -ēre, persuās-ī, persuās-um, persuade. prae, prep. (with abl.), for, by reason of (after a negative). prohib-eō, -ēre (prohibit), hinder, forbid. sine, prep. (with abl.), without. vers-us, -ūs, m., verse.

LESSON 69.

THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

248. The following compounds of sum are conjugated like the simple verb (§ 138).

Present Indic. Present Infin. Perfect.

ab-sum ab-esse āfu-ī am absent adfu-ī ad-sum ad-esse am present am wanting, am neglectful dē-sum dē-esse dēfu-ī infu-ī am in in-sum in-esse interfu-i am in the midst inter-sum inter-esse ob-sum ob-esse obfu-i am harmful, harm praefu-i am in command prae-sum prae-esse am beneficial, do good prō-sum prōd-esse prōfui-ī sub-sum sub-esse subfu-ī am under super-sum super-esse superfu-ī am left

Note.—Prosum retains \mathbf{d} (elsewhere dropped) before \mathbf{e} ; e.g. the present indicative is

prö-sum prö-sumus pröd-es pröd-estis pröd-est prö-sunt

249. The compounds of sum (except possum) are constructed with the dative case.

Caesar exercitul praecrat Caesar was in command of the army

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (continued from Lesson 59).

250. (a) Dum meaning as long as (i.e. all the time that) is followed by the indicative, the tense being such as the sense requires.

dum pugnābunt (cp. § 187) so long as they fight, we also will illī, nos etiam pugnābimus fight

251. Often the action of the principal sentence is represented as occurring within (not as extending throughout) the period referred to by the **dum**-clause; **dum** is then idiomatically followed by the present indicative, and is rendered by *while*.

dum Römānī in nāvibus aedificandīs tempus terunt, urbs obsidēbātur while the Romans were wasting time in building ships, the city was being besieged

252. (b) **Dum**, *until*, is followed by the indicative if nothing more than time is expressed; but by the subjunctive if it is implied that the event described in the **dum**-clause is or was purposely awaited.

hostēs pugnāvērunt dum dux interfectus est

was slain

pugnābimus dum dux hostium interficiātur we will fight until the enemy's leader is slain

the enemy fought until the leader

253. Rule.—The conjunctions **aut** and **vel** both mean *or*. **Aut** however presents alternatives each of which excludes the other, while **vel** leaves a choice open as to some detail.

aut pugnandum aut vel hodiē vel crās moriendum est

we must either fight or else either to-day or to-morrow—die

Learn Vocabulary 69.

VOCABULARY 69.

aedifici-um, -ī, n. (edifice), building.
autem, conj. (to be placed after
the first word), but, however.
custos, custod-is, m. (custody),

guard.

Labien-us, -i, m., Labienus (a Roman commander). paene, adv., almost. tot, indecl. adj., so many.

Lesson 70 will be found on p. 138.

II.-VOLO, NOLO, AND MALO.

§ 254. PRINCIPAL PARTS: -

volō, velle, volu-ī, I will, am willing.
nōlō (ne-, not, + volō), nolle, nōlu-ī, I will not,
am unwilling.

mālo (mag-, as in magis more, + volo), malle, mālu-ī, I am more willing, prefer.

		not Participle. nolens (gen. nolent- unwilling.	is), None.	
	INDIC	ATIVE MOOD.		
Present	(I am willing) volō vis vult volumus vultis volunt	(I am unwilling) nõlõ nõn vīs nõn vult nõlumus nõn vultis	(I prefer) mālō māvīs māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt	
IMPER- FECT	(I was willing) volēbam volēbās volēbāt volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	(I was unwilling) nõlēbam nõlēbās nõlēbat nõlēbāmus nõlēbātis nõlēbant	(I was preferring) mālēbam mālēbās mālēbāt mālēbāmus mālēbātis mālēbānt	
Future	(I shall be willing) volam volēs volet volēmus volētis volent	(I shall be un- willing) (nölam) nölös nölet (nölömus) (nölötis) (nölent)	(I shall prefer) (mālam) (mālēs) (mālet) (mālēmus) (mālētis) (mālent)	
PERFECT	(I was or have been willing) volu-ī, etc.	(I was or have been unwilling) nōlu-ī	(I preferred or have preferred) mālu-ī, etc.	
PLUPER- FECT	(I had been willing volu-eram, etc.	(I had been un- willing) nolu-eram, etc.	(I had preferred) mālu-eram, etc.	
FUTURE- PERFECT	(I shall have been willing) volu-ero, etc.	(I shall have been unwilling) nõlu-erō, etc.	(1 shall have pre- ferred) mālu-erō, etc.	

	SUBJUI	NCTIVE MOOD.				
Present	(I should be will- ing) velim velīs velit velīmus velītis velint	(I should be un- willing) nölim nölīs nölit nölīmus nölīmus nölītis	(I should prefer) mālim mālis mālit mālīmus mālītis mālītis			
Imper- fect	(I should be will- ing) vellem vellēs vellet vellēmus vellētis vellent	(I should be un- willing) nollem nollēs nollet nollēmus nollētis nollent	(I should prefer) mallem malles mallet malletus malletis malletis			
Perfect	volu-erim, etc.	nolu-erim, etc.	mālu-erim, etc.			
PLU- PERFECT	(I should have been willing) volu-issem, etc.	(I should have been unwilling) nölu-issem, etc.	(I should have preferred) mālu-issem, etc			
	IMPER	ATIVE MOOD.				
Present	None	(Be unwilling) nölī nölīte	None			
Future	None	(Thou shalt be unwilling) nölitö nölitö nölitöte nöluntö	None			
INFINITIVE.						
Present Perfect	velle, to be will- ing volu-isse, to have been willing	nolle, to be un- willing nōlu-isse, to have been unwilling	malle, to prefer malu-isse, to have preferred			

Obs. Volo. nolo, and malo have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs; nor have they any gerund.

Note.—Noli and nolite are frequently used with the present infinitive in prohibitions.

III.—FERO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 255. Principal Parts: fer-ō, fer-re, tul-ī, lāt-um, I bear.

Bases: fer- (present); tul- (perfect); lat- (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to tollo, I raise. The supine (tlatum) has lost an initial t.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: fer-ens (gen. ferent-is), bearing

FUTURE: lat-urus, lat-ura, laturum, about to bear Perfect: lat-us, lat-a, lat-um, borne or having been borne

GERUNDIVE: fer-endus, fer-enda, fer-endum, fit to be borne

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (I bear.)
fer-5 fer-imus
fer-s fer-tis
fer-t fer-unt

IMPERFECT. (I was bearing.) fer-ēbam fer-ēbāmus

fer-ēbās fer-ēbātis fer-ēbat fer-ēbant FUTURE. (I shall bear.)

fer-am fer-ēmus fer-ēs fer-ētis fer-et fer-ent

Perfect. (I bore or have borne.)

tul-i, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (I had borne.) tul-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (I shall have borne.) tul-ero, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (I should bear.) fer-am fer-āmus

fer-ās fer-ātis fer-at fer-ant

IMPERFECT. (I should be bearing.)
fer-rem fer-remus

fer-ret fer-retis fer-ret

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (I am borne.)
fer-or fer-imur
fer-ris fer-iminī

fer-tur fer-untur Imperfect. (I was being borne.)

fer-ēbārur fer-ēbāmur fer-ēbāris or-ēbāre fer-ēbāminī fer-ēbātur fer-ēbantur

FUTURE. (I shall be borne.) fer-ar fer-ēmur fer-ēris or fer-ēre fer-ēminī

fer-etur fer-entur
PERFECT. (I was or have been borne.)

lāt-us sum, etc.

Pluperfect. (I had been borne.) lät-us eram, etc.

FOTURE-PERFECT. I shall have been borne.) lāt-us erē, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (I should be borne.)
fer-ar fer-āmur

fer-āris or fer-āre fer-āminī fer-ātur fer-antur

IMPERFECT. (I should be borne.)
fer-rer fer-remur
fer-reris or fer-rere fer-remini

fer-retur fer-rentur

ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE. SUBJUNCTIVE (continued.) SUBJUNCTIVE (continued). PERFECT. PERFECT. lāt-us sim, etc. tul-erim, etc. PLUPERFECT. (I should have PLUPERFECT. (I should have been borne.) borne.) lat-us essem, etc. tul-issem, etc. IMPERATIVE MOOD. IMPERATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (Be borne.) PRESENT (Bear.) fer-iminī fer-re fer fer-te FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must be borne.) bear.) fer-tö fer-tōte fer-tor fer-tō fer-unto fer-tor fer-untor VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES. VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES. Infin. Pres: fer-ri, to be borne Infin. Pres.: fer-re, to bear PERF.: tul-isse, to have PERF. : lat-us esse, to have been borne borne Fur.: lat-um iri, to be FUT.: latur-us esse, to be about to be borne about to bear GERUND: fer-endum, bearing, etc.

§ 236. Compounds.

in bearing

Supine: lat-um, to bear; lat-u,

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of ferō; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive:—

Compou	nded with				
ab:	aufer-ō	-re	abstul-ï	ablāt-um	bear away
ad:	affer-ō	-re	attul-ī	allāt-um	bring
cum:	confer-ō	-re	contul-ī	collat-um	bring together
dis∙:	differ-ð	-re	distul-ī	dīlāt-um	separate
ex:	effer-ō	-re	extul-ï	ēlāt-um	bring out
in:	infer-ö	-re	intul-ī	illāt-um	bring in
ob:	offer-ō	-re	obtul-ī	oblāt-um	offer
re-:	refer-ō	-re	rettul-ī (§ 270)	relät-um	bear back
rē:	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{refer-t} \\ (\S \ 233) \end{array} \right\}$	-re	rētul-it		concern
sub:	suffer-ō	-re	sustul-ī	sublāt-um	endure
Other pr	eps. un- ed as in				
dēfer-		-re	dētul-ī	dēlāt-um	bear down

IV.—EO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 257. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, īv-ī, it-um, I go.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Participles { Present: ions (gon. cunt-is), going. Future: it-arus, it-aru, it-arum, about to go.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT. (I go.) īmus eδ ĩs ītis iŧ eunt IMPERFECT. (I was going.) ībam ībāmus ībās ībātis ībat ībant FUTURE. (I shall go.) ībō ībimus îbis ībitis īhit. ihunt

PERFECT. (I went or have gone.)

IVI or ii Ivimus or iimus

IVISTI (iistI) or ivistis (iistis) or

istI istis

IVIT, iit (or It) {

IVĒTUNT or iĒTUNT

IVĒTU or iĒTE

PLUPERFECT. (I had gone.)
iv-eram or i-eram, etc.
FUTURE-PERFECT. (I shall
have gone.)

īv-erō or i-erō, etc

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with vare more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The forms included in brackets () are comparatively rare.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. (I should go.)
eam eāmus
eās eātis
eat eant

IMPERFECT. (I should be going.)
irem irëmus

īrēs īrētis īret īrent

Perfect.

iv-erim or i-erim, etc.

Pluperfect. (I should have gone.)

īv-issem (i-issem) or issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (Go.) ite

FUTURE. (Thou shalt or must yo.)

ito itote

ito eunto

INFINITIVE.

Present: īre, to go Perfect: īvisse (iisse) or isse,

to have gone
FUTURE: itur-us esse, to be
about to go

GERUND.

Nom. eundum, going, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. it-um, to go

§ 258. Compounds.

ab-eō go away
ad-eō approach
co-eō come together
in-eō enter
inter-eō yanish
intro-eō go in
ob-eō traverse, die

per-eð perish prae-eð precede pröd-eð go forth praeter-eð go past red-eð go back sub-eð go up to endure trans-eð go across

FIO AND DO.

259. Fiō, I become, am made, takes the place of the passive of facio, I make, in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of fio are supplied by the passive voice of facio, of which the supine base is fact-.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: fīō, fierī, fact-us sum.

Participles { Perfect: fact-us, fact-a, fact-um, having become. Gerundive: faciend-us, -a, -um, fit to become.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Present. (<i>I become.</i>) fiō fis —— fit fiunt	Present. (I should become.) fiam fiāmus fiās fiātis fiat fiant
IMPERFECT. (I was becoming.) fiēbam fiēbāmus fiēbās fiēbātis fiēbat fiēbant	IMPERFECT. (I should become.) fierem fierēmus fierēs fierētis fieret fierent
FUTURE. (I shall become.) flam flēmus flēts fletts flett PERFECT: fact-us sum, etc. PLUPERF.: fact-us eram, etc.	PERFECT: fact-us sim, etc. PLUPERF: fact-us essem, et IMPERATIVE MOOI). PRESENT. (Become.) fi fite
FutPerf.: fact-us ero, etc.	FUTURE. (None).

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: fleri, to become. Perfect: fact-us esse, to have become. FUTURE: factum īrī, to be about to become.

Obs.—Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, fio follows the fourth conjugation; it has, however, i (long) in all parts except fit, fieri, and the imperfect subjunctive.

Compounds of facio with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive, e.g. afficio, I affect (compounded of the preposition ad, to, and facio, has passive afficior.

260. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, I give, differs from a regular verb of the first conjugation in having a instead of a after d (e.g. damus, dabam), except in the second person sing. of the present indicative and imperative active, das, da.

Note.—Circumdo, I surround, I put around, is conjugated like do.

LESSON 70.

Learn the conjugation of volo, nolo, malo (pp. 132, 133).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (continued).

261. Rule.—Postquam, after, introduces a temporal clause in which the verb is in the indicative.

> postquam haec audīvī, profectus sum. after I had heard this, I set out. on hearing

Obs.—The Latin perfect is usually found after postquam, whereas in English the natural tense is the past-perfect, or on with the gerund may be used.

262. Rule.—After verbs of motion, purpose may be expressed by the accusative supine instead of by a final clause.

dux lēgātōs misit pacem the leader sent ambassadors to petitum beg for peace

263. Rule.—The present subjunctive is used in questions as to the course of action to be pursued, the imperfect in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative is non. This is called the deliberative or dubitative subjunctive.

quid faciam? quid facerem? what am I to do? what was I to do?

Learn Vocabulary 70.

Vocabulary 70.

accip-iō, -ere, accēp-ī, accept-um mortifer, mortifer-a, (accept), receive. fer-um, fatal, mortal. (with dat.). magis, adv., rather.

mortifer-a. morticonsul-o, -ere, consulu-i, consult-um, consult the interests of nightly, by night. regred-ior, -i, regress-us sum.

return.

LESSON 71.

Learn the conjugation of fero and compounds (pp. 134, 135).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (continued).

264. The verb in a clause introduced by the conjugation antequam, before, or its equivalent priusquam, is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted; but it is subjunctive if the action expressed by the clause is represented as purposely anticipated or (when the principal sentence is negative) purposely awaited.

nec prius ille estrelictus locus nor was that position abandoned quam fīnis est pugnandī factus

before an end was made of fighting

Romanus priusquam fores the Roman rushed in before the obicerentur irrupit

gates could be shut

runt quam ab his esset concessum arma uti caperent

Galli non prius duces dimise- the Gauls did not send away the chieftains before the latter had consented to take up arms

Obs.—1. Often after antequam or priusquam the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English past-perfect; cp. § 224, NOTE.

Obs.—2. Antequam, priusquam, postquam may each be written as two words: ante, prius, or post is frequently placed in the principal sentence, quam introducing the clause. (Cp. the first and third of the above examples.)

Learn Vocabulary 71.

VOCABULARY 71.

aest-us, ūs, m. (estuary), tide. bellum infero, make war upon. breviter, adv., briefly. coor-ior, -Iri, coort-us sum, arise. eodem, adv., to the same place. exstingu-ō, -ere, exstinx-ī, exstinct-um, extinguish. German-us, -a, -um, German.

man-eō, -ēre, mans-ī, mans-um (mansion), remain. pēs, ped-is, m. (pedal), foot. pedem refero, take to flight. solv-ō, -ere, solv-ī, solūt-um (solvent), loose, pay. nāvēs solvo, set sail.

LESSON 72.

Learn the conjugation of eo, fio, do, and compounds (pp. 136, 137).

265. Rule.—Verbs meaning to be appointed, to be named. to be thought, are used with a complement (sometimes called a secondary predicate) in the same case as the subject. Such verbs are creor, I am appointed (magistrate, etc.), appellor, I am called, videor, I seem. The same rule applies to fīō.

Cicero creabitur consul creātum īrī

Cicero will be appointed consul dicunt Ciceronem consulem they say that Cicero will be abpointed consul

Learn Vocabulary 72.

Vocabulary 72.

discipul-us, -ī, m., disciple, pupil. eo, adv., thither, to that place. lūd-ō, -ere, lūs-ī, lūs-um (ludicrous), play. mātūrius, adv., earlier.

ostend-ō, -ere, ostend-ī, ostentum (ostentatious), show. unde, adv., whence. venia, -ae, f. (venial), pardon. vid-eō, -ēre, vīd-ī, vīs-um, scc.

LESSON 73.

SOME IMPERSONAL VERBS.

266. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive.

- I.—IMPERSONAL VERBS WITH AN OBJECT. 267.
- (a) With a direct object in the accusative, and an infinitive as subject.

dec-et, -ere, it beseems. dēdec-et, -ēre, it misbeseems. dēlect-at, -are, it pleases.

iuv-at, -āre, iūv-it, it delights. oport-et, -ēre, it behoves.

oportet më loqui, it behoves me to speak.

(b) With a direct object in the accusative, and a genitive as secondary object.

miser-et, -ēre, it moves pity. paenit-et, -ēre, it repents.

pud-et, -ēre, it shames. taed-et, -ēre, it disgusts.

pig-et, -ēre, it causes dislike. pudet më stultitiae meae

I am ashamed of my folly

(c) With an indirect object in the dative, and an infinitive as subject.

> accid-it, -ere, accid-it, -, it happens. conting-it, -ere, contig-it, -, it happens. lib-et, -ēre, libitum est or libu-it, it pleases. lic-et, -ēre, licu-it or licitum est, it is allowed.

non cuivis hominī contingit adīre Corinthum.

it is not every man's luck to go to Corinth

licet tibi loqui.

you may speak.

Obs.—Accidit is commonly used for unfortunate events, contingit of fortunate events.

268. II.—Impersonal verbs without an Object.

These express natural phenomena:—

ning-it, -ere, ninx-it, it snows. plu-it, -ere, pluit, -, it rains. ton-at, -are, tonu-it, it thunders.

269. It has already been pointed out (§ 185) that, in the case of debeo with an infinitive, the time is indicated by the tense of debeo, whereas in English it is shown by that of the infinitive. This is the case also with **possum**, **oportet**, and other verbs of similar meaning.

> potui hōc facere oportuit te hoc facere you ought to have done this.

I could have done this.

Learn Vocabulary 73.

VOCABULARY 73.

LESSON 74.

This Lesson may be postponed until after Lessons 75-80. IMPERSONAL VERBS (continued).

270. (a) Refert, it concerns, where the English has a personal pronoun of the first or second person as object, is used with the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective. The same applies to the third person, when the pronoun is reflexive. With any other object, interest (see below) should be used.

quid hoc tua refert?

in what respect does this concern vou?

dixit illud suā rēferre

he said it concerned himself

(b) **Interest**, it is the business of, has the same construction as **rēfert** when the indirect object is of the first or second person, or third person reflexive; in the case of other words the genitive is used.

 $\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{me\bar{a}}\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{interest} \\ \operatorname{r\bar{e}fert} \end{array} \right\} \operatorname{haec} \ \operatorname{fier\bar{i}}. \quad \operatorname{omnium} \ \operatorname{interest} \ \operatorname{haec} \ \operatorname{fier\bar{i}} \\ it \ is \ \left\{ \begin{array}{c} my \\ everybodv's \end{array} \right\} interest \ that \ this \ should \ bc \ done \end{array}$

- (c) The degree of importance is expressed by an accusative singular neuter (e.g. quid, in what respect? nihil, in no respect), or by magni (magnus, great), parvi (parvus, small), quanti (quantus, as great as), plūris (plūs, more), maximi (maximus, very great), minimi (minimus, very small).
- (d) The subject of **interest** and **rēfert** may be (i) an infinitive, (ii) a dependent question, or (iii) in the case of **interest**, a clause introduced by **ut** or **nē**, or (iv) in the case of **rēfert**, a neuter pronoun.

 $\label{eq:meamaximi} \text{meā maximi interest } \begin{cases} \text{tē haec facere.} \\ \text{ut haec faciās.} \end{cases}$

it is of the greatest importance to me that you should do this.

quid illius interest u bisīs? what does it matter to him where you are?

Obs.—With the exception of the use of a neuter pronoun as subject, all the constructions of refert can be used with interest, but not all the constructions of interest can be used with refert. Therefore, except with a neuter pronoun as subject, it is safer to use interest.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 271. The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

Aiō, I say.

Present Participle: äiens (gen. äient-is), saying. Indicative Present: äiö (I say), ais, ait; äiunt.

IMPERFECT: aibam (I was saying), etc. (complete).

PERFECT: ait, he said.

Subjunctive Present: aiat, he would say.

Inquam, I say.

INDICATIVE PRESENT: inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquiunt

IMPERF. : inquiebat, he was saying.

FUTURE: inquies (thou wilt say), inquiet. ,, PERFECT: inquii (I said or have said), inquisti, inquit.

Fārī, to say. (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT: fantem (acc.), fanti (dat.), saying.

Perfect: fat-us, fata, having said.

GERUNDIVE: fand-us, -a, -um, fit to be said.

Indicative Present: fatur, he says. fābor (I shall say), fābitur.

FUTURE: PERFECT: fat-us est, he said or has said.

Pluperfect: fat-us eram (I had said), fat-us erat. IMPERATIVE PRESENT: fare, say. INFIN. PRESENT: fari, to say. GERUND: fandī, fandō (saying). Supine: fātū, in saying.

Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of fari occur.

The following have no present base in use: coep-ī, I began; memin-ī, I remember; ōd-ī, I hate.

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of memini and odi) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use:-

From coepi: Perf. part. pass., coept-us, -a, -um, and tenses formed by it with sum.

meminī: Imperative, mementō (remember), mementōte. ,,

odi: Future part., osur-us, -a, -um, about to hate.

The following are isolated forms:-

(1) Infit, he begins (to speak).

(2) Quaeso, I entreat; quaesumus (used parenthetically like English pray).

(3) Ave or aveto, hail! : avete. Infinitive, avere, to cry "hail." (4) Salvē, hail!; salvēte. Ind. fut., salvēbis. Infin., salvēre.

(5) Cedo, give (imperative).

Vocabulary 74.

aliën-us, -a, -um (alien), belonging to another, of others. facultās, facultāt-is, f. (faculty), opportunity. ita, adv., so.
perīt-us, -a, -um, experienced.
produc-o, -ere, produx-i, product-um, protract.

LESSON 75.

ADVERBS.

- 272. Adverbs may for convenience be arranged in three classes:—
 - I. Adverbs expressing
 - (a) Place, time, degree, etc.;
 - (b) Negation, interrogation, transition, etc.
- II. Adverbs formed from pronominal roots; e.g. quō, whither, from the root of quī, who.
- III. Adverbs formed from adjectives; e.g. libere, freely, from liber, free.
 - I. (a) ADVERBS OF PLACE, TIME, DEGREE, ETC.
 - 273. The following are examples:—

PLACE.

alibī, elsewhere
circā, around
circum, baround
citrā, on this side
contrā, opposite
coram, face to face
extrā, outside
infrā, below
intrā, inside
intus, i
intus, l
inxide
intxa, close
nusquam, nowhere
passim, hither and thither

pone, post, behind.
post, far
procul, far
prope, near
subter, beneath
super above
sursum, upwards
ubique, everywhere
ultrā, beyond
undique, from all sides
usquam, anywhere
utrimque, from both sides
versus, facing

TIME.

aliās, at another time aliquando, at some time before anteā, cottīdiē, quotidie, daily crās, to-morrow dēmum, at length diū, long heri, yesterday hodiē, to-day i**am,** already iamdūdum, \ a long time iamprīdem, ∫ already intereā, } meanwhile interdum, sometimes iterum, again mane, in the morning

modo, just now mox, soon numquam, never nunc, now nuper, recently olim, at that time parumper, for a little while afterwards posteā, quando, when? quondam, formerly rursus, again, back again saepe, often semper, always simul, at the same time statim, forthwith tandem, at length tunc, then tum, umquam, ever

MANNER, DEGREE, ETC.

adeō, so aliter, otherwise ceu, like as clam, secretly frustrā, in vain ita, so modo, only too much nimium omnīnō, altogether paene, almost palam, openly parum (also used as a neuter substantive too little nom, and acc. sing. praesertim, especially. vix, scarcely

prope, nearly
quam, as, than
quasi, as if
quoties or quotiens, as often as
satis (also used as an indeclinable substantive
or adjective)
sic, thus
tam, so
tamquam or
tanquam,
as it were
toties or totiens, so often
ultro, further
usque, all the way, even
ut or uti, as

INTERROGATION, NEGATION, TRANSITION, ETC.

```
Interrogation, etc.
                                             Negation.
-ne (enclitic) introduces a ques- non, not
                                  haud (rare with verbs), not
nonne introduces a question ex-
                                  nē (in prohibitions), not
  pecting an affirmative answer
                                  nē . . . quidem, not even
num introduces a question ex-
  pecting a negative answer
quam, how!
                                           Transition, etc.
quārē or cūr, why?
                                  contrā, on the other hand
quōmodo, how !
                                  ergō.
quin, why not?
                                  ideō,
                                  igitur (seldom placed first)
quoties or quotiens, how often?
ut or uti, how?
                                  item. likewise
utrum . . . an, whether . . . or
                                  praetereā, besides
utrum . . . {annon} whether . . .
                                 proptereā, therefore
            necne or not
                                  utinam introduces a wish
```

Obs.—The term enclitic applied to -ne and similar particles implies that they throw their accent back on to the words to which they are appended; e.g. vides, you see vidésne, do you see?

II. ADVERBS FORMED FROM PRONOMINAL ROOTS.

274. Many adverbs are formed from the same roots as the demonstrative and relative pronouns; some are included in the above lists. Others are—

```
hic. here
              istīc.
                      illīc, ibi, there
                                           ubi.
                                                 where
hūc, hither
              istūc,
                      illūc, eō, thither
                                           quō,
                                                  whither
hinc, hence
             istinc, illinc, inde, thence
                                           unde, whence
                            eā, that way quā.
hāc, this way
                      illā.
                                                 which way
```

NOTE.—The adverbs in the right-hand column serve both as relatives and as interrogatives.

III.—Adverbs formed from Adjectives (including Participles).

275. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of $-\bar{\mathbf{e}}$ to the base of the adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adv	erb.
angustus, narrow ornātus, adorned (perf. part.) passive of ornō, I adorn)	angust- ornāt-	angustē, ornātē,	narrowly ornately
pulcher, beautiful liber, free	pulchr- līber-	pulchrē, līberē,	beautifully freely

276. From some adjectives of the first class adverbs are formed by adding -ō to the base.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adver	b.
rārus, scanty	rār-	rārō,	scantily
consultus (perf. part. passive of) consulo, I deliberate)	consult-	consultõ,	on purpose

277. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of -iter to the base of the adjective; but if the base of the adjective ends in -nt, then -er is added instead of -iter.

EXAMPLES.

Adje	ective.	Base.	Adv	erb.
fēlix prūdens,	sharp short fortunate discreet	memor- ācr- brev- fēlīc- prūdent-	memoriter, ācriter, breviter, fēlīciter, prūdenter,	by heart sharply briefly fortunately discreetly
amans,	loving (pres. 1) etive of amo, I love	amant-	amanter,	lovingly

278. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective (Nom. Sing. Masc.)	Adjective (Acc. Sing. Neut.) and Adverb
multus, much	multum, much
dulcis, sweet	dulce (also dulciter), sweetly.
facilis, easy	facile, easily.
Also plērīque (pl.), very many	plērumque, very frequently.

279. The following adverbs are irregulary formed:—

From	audax,	bold,	audacter,	boldly
,,	bonus,	good,	bene,	well
,,	citus,	quick,	cito,	quickly
,,	difficilis,		difficulter,	with difficulty
,,	magnus,	great,	magnopere,	greatly
,,	malus,	bad,	male,	badly
,,	validus,	strong,	valdē,	strongly

Obs.—Magnopere (also written as two words, magno opere) properly means with great labour; hence, very much, greatly.

280. Rule.—The third person singular of any tense of the passive of an intransitive verb modified by an adverb can be used impersonally to translate an English phrase containing a verbal noun and adjective.

acerrimē pugnātum est fierce fighting took place

Learn Vocabulary 75.

Vocabulary 75.

approbo, -āre, approve. certior fio, get information. col-ō, -ere, colu-ī, cult-um, cultidiscurr-ō, -ere, discurr-ī and discucurr-ī, discurs-um, run (in different directions). longe, adv., far. nobil-is, -e, nobly born. noctū, adv., by night. nov-us, -a, -um (novel), new.

oppugnātio, oppugnātion-is, f., siege. repente, adv., suddenly.

stō, stāre, stet-ī, stat-um, stand, remain firm, persist in (with

tum dēmum, adv., then at length. utrimque, adv., from both sides, on both sides.

vac-ō, -āre (vacant), have leisure (with abl.).

LESSON 76.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

- 281. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of comparisonpositive, comparative, and superlative: e.g. breviter, briefly: brevius, more briefly; brevissimē, most briefly. Where no standard of comparison is expressed or distinctly understood, the comparative may denote "considerably" or "excessively," and the superlative "exceedingly" e.g. brevius, somewhat briefly or too briefly; brevissime, very briefly.
- 282. A comparative adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the corresponding comparative adjective (cp. § 278).

A superlative adverb is formed by adding -ē to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective, in accordance with the rule for forming adverbs from adjectives of the first class.

These rules apply whether the comparison of the adjective is regular or irregular.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective. sanctus, religious Adverb. sanctē, religiously Adjective. ācer, sharp Adverb. ācriter, sharply	sanctior sanctius ācrior ācrius	sanctissimus sanctissimē ācerrimus ācerrimē
Adjective. facilis, easy Adverb. facile, easily	facilior facilius	facillimus facillimē
Adjective. bonus, good Adverb. bene, well	melior melius	optimus optimē
Adjective. malus, bad Adverb. male, ill	pēior pēius	pessimus pessimē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

283. The following are the only exceptions to the rules given in § 282 :--

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
magnopere, grea		maximē plūrimum

§ 284. Comparative and Superlative Adverbs not formed from Adjectives.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
diū,	long	diūtius	diūtissimē
nüper,	recently		nūperrimē
saepe,	often	saepius	saepissimē

- 285. Some words which are usually adverbs serve also as substantives denoting quantity and are constructed with a genitive; e.g. parum fortitūdinis, too little bravery; satis frūmentī, enough corn.
- 286. Rule.—The genitive is used with verbs of condemning and accusing to express the nature of the charge, and sometimes with verbs of remembering and forgetting to express that which is remembered or forgotten.

mē timōris arguunt they accuse me of fear numquam obliviscar noctis I shall never forget that night illius

Obs.—With verbs of remembering and forgetting that which is remembered or forgotten is often expressed by the accusative.

Learn Vocabulary 76.

Vocabulary 76.

accūs-ō, -āre, accuse. indulg-eō, -ēre, induls-ī, indultaegrē fero, resent bitterly (lit. bear um, be indulgent, indulge (with with difficulty). dat.). ambit-us, -ūs, m., bribery. mord-eō, -ēre, momord-ī, morsargu-ō, -ere, argu-ī, argūt-um, um, bite. accuse. oblīvisc-or, -ī, oblīt-us sum, forcav-eo, -ere, cav-i, caut-um, beget (with gen. or acc.). ware. qual-is, -e, of what kind? what copiose, adv., fully. sort of? ferociter, adv., fiercely. spond-eō, -ēre, spopond-ī, sponsimpune, adv., with impunity. um, promise. vēnātor, vēnātor-is, m., hunter.

The learner must now study Lesson 25 (on irregular adjectives), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 25.

LESSON 77.

THE NUMERALS.

Learn the table of numerals (p. 153), but do not commit to memory the portions printed in lighter type.

In the table a hyphen divides the base from the variable

ending of such of the numerals as are declinable.

- 287. (1) There is one numeral substantive: milia (n.), thousands.
 - (2) There are three series of numeral adjectives:—
 - (a) Cardinal, corresponding to the English series one, two, three, etc.;
 - (b) Ordinal, corresponding to the English series first, second, third, etc.;
 - (c) Distributive, denoting one a-piece, two a-piece, three a-biece, etc.
- (3) There is a series of numeral adverbs denoting once, twice, three times, etc.

Note.—The ending of the ordinals from 18 upwards is sometimes spelt -ensim-us instead of -esim-us, and that of the adverbials fr m 5 upwards -ens instead of -es; c.g. vicensim-us, tricensim-us, quinquiens, sexiens.

Declension of Numerals.

- 288. CARDINALS.—Unus is declined like nullus (§ 81). The declension of **duo** and **tres** is given in § 82.
- 289. The cardinals denoting hundreds from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of bonus (§ 36), except that they usually have genitive plural in -um, not in -orum or -arum; e.g. ducentum.
- 290. The other cardinal numerals, viz. 4 to 20, the tens up to 100, and mille, 1000, are indeclinable.
- 291. The substantive milia is declined in the plural only:-

N.V.A. milia

Gen. milium

Dat. milibus Abl. milibus

- Obs. 1.—A declinable numeral qualifying mīlia must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on mīlia is put in the genitive; e.g. tria mīlia equitum, 3000 horsemen.
- Obs. 2.—Mille is an indeclinable adjective; therefore a thousand horsemen (nominative) is mille equites.
- **292.** ORDINALS AND DISTRIBUTIVES.—These are declined like **bonus** (§ 36), with the exception of **alter**, second (of two), for which see § 81, and Note 1. The genitive plural of distributives generally ends in -um, not in -ōrum or ārum; e.g. dēnum.

293. On Compounding Numerals.

21 to 99.—The smaller number follows the larger without et or precedes it with et; e.g. vīgintī quinque or quinque et vīgintī, just as in English we say twenty-five or five-and-twenty.

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing duode-, under respectively to it; see 28 and 29 in the table. (De is a preposition denoting from.) Such expressions as viginti octo and octo et viginti occur, but are less usual.

- 101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and et may be inserted (except in distributives); e.g. duo mīlia (et) quingentī (et) quadrāgintā equitēs or equitum duo mīlia (et) quingentī (et) quadrāgintā, 2540 horsemen.
- Obs.—The substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from mīlia by numerals which do not qualify mīlia.
- 294. Rule.—The great or small value at which a thing is held is expressed by the genitive singular neuter of adjectives such as those given in § 270 (c).

quanti quisque se ipse facit, at whatever price each values himtanti fit ab amicis self, at this price he is valued by his friends

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	Adverss.
1	un-us, one	prīm-us, first	singul-ī, one a-	semel, once
2	du-o	secund-us or alter*	bīn-ī [piece	bis
3	tr-ēs	terti-us	tern-i or trin-i+	ter
4	quattuor	quart-us	quatern-ī	quater
5	quinque	quint-us	quin-i	quinquies
6	sex	sext-us	sēn-ī	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-us	septēn-ī	septiēs
8	octo	octāv-us	octon-i	octiës
9	novem	non-us	novēn-ī	noviēs
10		decim-us	dēn-ī	deciēs
11	undecim	undecim-us	undēn-ī	undeciēs
	duodecim	duodecim-us	duodēn-ī	duodeciēs
	tredecim	terti-us decim-us	tern-ī dēn-ī	terdeciës
	quattuordecim	quart-us decim-us	quatern-ī dēn-ī	quater deciës
15	quindecim	quint-us decim-us	quin-i den-i	quindeciës
16	sēdecim	sext-us decim-us	sēn-ī dēn-ī	sēdeciēs
17	septemdecim	septim-us decim-us	septēn-ī dēn-ī	septiēs deciēs
	duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsim-us	duodēvīcēn-ī	duodēvīciēs
	undēvīgintī	undēvicēsim-us	undēvīcēn-ī	undēviciēs
	viginti	vīcēsim-us	vicēn-i	vicies
21	un-us et viginti or	un-us et vicesim-us or	vicën-i singul-i	
21	viginti ün-us	vīcēsim-us prīm-us	vicch-i singui-i	Schiol Co Violes
22	du-o et viginti or	alt-er et vicësim-us or	vicēn-i bīn-i	bis et vīciēs
22	viginti du-o	vīcēsim-us alt-er	VICCII-I DIII-I	DIS CO VICIOS
98	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsim-us	duodētrīcēn-ī	duodētrīciēs
29		undētrīcēsim-us	undētrīcēn-ī	undetricies
	trīgintā	trīcēsim-us	tricen-i	tricies
40		quadrāgēsim-us	quadrāgēn-ī	quadrāgiēs
50	• . •	quinquāgēsim-us	quinquāgēn-ī	quinquāgiēs
	sexāgintā	sexāgēsim-us	sexāgēn-ī	sexāgiēs
	septuāgintā	septuāgēsim-us	septuāgēn-ī	septuāgiēs
	octoginta	octogesim-us	octōgēn-ī	octōgies
90		nōnāgēsim-us	nonagen-î	nonāgies
	centum	centēsim-us	centen-i	centies
200	ducent-î	ducentēsim-us	ducen-i	ducentiēs
	trecent-i	trecentēsim-us	trecen-i	trecenties
400	quadringent-ī	quadringentēsim-us	quadringën-ī	quadringentië
500	quingent-ī	quingentēsim-us	quingen-i	quingenties
600		sescentēsim-us	sescen-ī	sescenties
700	septingent-i	septingentēsim-us	septingēn-ī	septingenties
800		octingentēsim-us	octingen-i	octingenties
900	nongent-i	nongentēsim-us	nongēn-ī	nongenties
1000	mille	millēsim-us	singul-a mīl-ia	millies
2000	du-o mīl-ia	bis millēsim-us	bin-a mil-ia	bis milliēs
4000	du-o mm-18	ols minicalm-us	om-a min-ia	ors millies

^{*} Alter, second (of two); secundus, second (of a larger number than two).
† Trini (not terni) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; e.g. trinae aedēs, three houses.

296. Rule.—Tantī, quantī, plūris, minoris, are also used to denote the **price** at which a thing is bought or sold. the case of all other words the price is expressed by the ablative.

quanti hoc emptum est? parvō

at what price was this bought? At a small price

297. Rule.—Extent of space is expressed by the accusative case.

perduxit

fossam quindecim pedes latam he constructed a trench fifteen feet hyoad

298. Rule.—The predicative dative expresses that which a person or thing serves as, or that in which a thing results.

maximo mihī ūsuī eris

you will be of very great service

haec tibī sunt cūrae Learn Vocabulary 77. these things are an anxiety to you

Vocabulary 77.

angusti-ae, -ārum, f.pl., narrowness. circumd-ō, -are, circumded-ī, circumdat-um, surround. collaud-ō, -āre, bestow praise on. conscrīb-ō, -ere, conscrips-ī, conscript-um, enrol. conspic-or, -ari, come in sight of. dist-o, -are, -, be distant. ēgred-ior, -ī, ēgress-us sum, quit. exstru-ō, -ere, exstrux-ī, ex-struct-um, raise, construct. fac-iō, -ere, fēc-ī, fact-um, make, value, esteem.

inter sē, among themselves, one from another. lāt-us, -a, -um (latitude), widc, broad. nancisc-or, -ī, nact-us sum, get. \overline{ov} -um, $\overline{-i}$, n. (oval), egg. pass-us, -ūs, m., pace. perduc-ō, -ere, perdux-ī, per-duct-um, lead through, carry or construct (a wall, trench, **praesertim**, adv., cspecially. vend-ō, -ere, vendid-ī, vendit-um

(vend), sell.

LESSON 78.

PREPOSITIONS.

299. Most Latin prepositions (like all English ones) take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions (Lesson 79), and a few take either case (Lesson 80).

300. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Accusative Only.

ad, to inter, adversum or adversus, sopposite, towards intrā, iuxtā, ante, before apud, with (a person), at the house of circia, circum, around pone, circiter, about (of number) praete cis this side of prope, citrā, sumards (a person) ergā, towards (a person) ergā, towar

inter, between, among intra, within iuxta, close by ob, because of penes, in the power of per, through pone, behind post, after praeter, beyond prope, near propter, near, on account of secundum, following on supra, above trans, across ultra, on the other side of

301. The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the accusative only:—
ante, post, cis, citrā, ultrā, propter, ob, secundum, ergā;
trans and per; adversus, contrā; ad and apud, prope, iuxtā;
praeter, pōne; infrā, suprā; penes, inter, intrā, extrā.

302. Rule.—The genitive of a substantive accompanied by an adjective in agreement may be used to describe some characteristic or quality, and this construction is accordingly known as the **genitive of quality**.

Titus Manlius vir erat priscae sevēritātis

Caesar quadrāgintā diērum iter processit

Titus Manlius was a man of old-fashioned sternness

Caesar advanced forty days' march

Learn Vocabulary 78 (p. 156).

circum, circiter, and circa;

Vocabulary 78.

altitūdō, altitūdin-is, f. (altitude), height, depth. consist-ō, -ere, constit-ī, constitum, take up a position. equitāt-us, -ūs, m., cavalry (collective). incol-ō, -ere, incolu-ī, incult-um, dwell. inopi-a, -ae, f., scarcity.

invīt-us, -a, -um, unwilling.
opprim-ō, -ere, oppress-ī, oppress-um, overwhelm.
pondus,ponder-is, n. (ponderous),
weight.
Rhodan-us, -ī, m., Rhone.
sax-um, -ī, n., rock, stone.
solum, -ī, n., soil.
veterān-us, -a, -um, veteran.

LESSON 79.

PREPOSITIONS (continued).

Revise the rules about conditional sentences (§§ 182-192).

303. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Ablative Only.

ā (before a consonant)
ab (before a vowel or h)
abs (only with tē, thee
cōram, in the presence of
cum, with
dē, down from, concerning
ē or ex, out of

from,

palam, in the presence of prae, in front of; with neg. on account of pro, before, instead of procul, far from sine, without tenus, as far as

Rhyme:—ā, ab, abs, cum, ex and ē, cōram, palam, procul, dē, sine, tenus, prō, and prae.

Note 1.- -Tenus is also found with the genitive case.

Note 2.—Ab (not \bar{a}) must be used before a vowel or h, and is not uncommon before some consonants. Ex is used before a vowel or a consonant; \bar{e} before consonants only.

304. The usual place for a preposition is, of course, immediately before its substantive (or pronoun), but some prepositions are occasionally found after their substantives, tenus being always so placed.

305. Cum always follows the personal pronouns mē, tē, nobīs, vobīs, sē, and is then enclitic (Vocab. 8, Obs.); e.g. mēcum, with me. Cum is generally enclitic also with the relative pronoun (quō, quā, quibus), but may precede; e.g. quōcum or cum quō, with whom.

Learn Vocabulary 79.

Vocabulary 79.

affirm-ō, -āre, affirm.
Collīn-us, -a, -um, Colline (the name of one of the gates of Rome).
crēditor, crēditōr-is, m., creditor dēflu-ō, -ere, dēflux-ī, dēflux-um, flow down.

despic-iō, -ere, despex-ī, despectum, look down.
ērudīt-iō, ērudītiōn-is, f., learning.
rēs gestae, exploits.
respond-eō, -ēre, respond-ī, respons-um, reply.

LESSON 80.

PREPOSITIONS (concluded).

306. Prepositions used with Substantives in the Accusative or Ablative.

clam (rarely with abl.), without the knowledge of in with acc., into in with acc., into in with acc. (denoting motion up to from beneath), up to super (with abl. in rest under), below super (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), over subter (,, in poetry only), under

Rhyme:—To super, subter, clam, we give
Most commonly accusative.

If in and sub should motion show,
With them accusative must go;
But when they mean rest at a place,
The ablative's the proper case.

CONJUNCTIONS.

307. Conjunctions are of two kinds—co-ordinating and subordinating. A co-ordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

308. The following are in common use:—

```
et.
-que (enclitic; Vocab. 8, Obs.)
āc (before a consonant only),
atque (before any letter).
etiam
necnōn, \also
quoque, J
                          \ both .
et . . . et,
cum (or quum) . . . tum, f and
nec or neque, nor
nec . . . nec,
                      neither
neque . . . neque,
tamen (seldom placed first), yet,
  however
```

sed,
autem (not placed first),
but
at,
vel, or (§ 253)
-ve (enclitic)
aut...aut,
vel...vel, either
sive...sive, whether...
seu...seu, if...or if
enim (not placed first),
nam,
namque,

II. Subordinating Conjunctions.

309. The sections to which reference is made contain particulars as to the use of the conjunctions in questions.

```
(With Indicative or Subjunctive.)
sī, if (§§ 182-192)
nisi, unless (§ 183)
           although (§§ 232, 234)
etiamsī,
        with indic., when (§ 222)
       | with subj., when (§ 223),
         since (§ 229), although
          (§ 234)
antequam, before that (§ 264)
      with indic., whilst, until
         (§§ 250-252),
      with subj., until (§ 252)
donec, until
quod, because (§§ 226, 228)
quoniam, since (§§ 226, 228)
```

```
(With Indicative only.)
quamquam, although (§ 233)
ubi
ut or uti, } when (§ 224)
```

(With Subjunctive Only.)
ut or utī, in order that, so that,
although (§§ 198, 203, 235)
nē, lest (§ 198, 235)
postquam, after (§ 261)
quō, that (thereby)
quōminus,that (thereby) ... not
(§ 247)
quīn, that (thereby) ... not, but
that (§\$ 208, 247)
quamvīs,
} although (§ 234)

VOCABULARY 80.

abd-ō, -ere, abdid-ī, abdit-um. hide (trans.). accēd-ō, -ere, access-ī, access-um (accession), approach. admov-eō, -ēre, admov-ī, admotum, move up. bib-ō, -ere, bib-ī, -- (bibulous), drink. cad-ō, -ere, cecid-ī, cās-um (case) fall. cognosc-ō, -ere, cognōv-ī, cognit-um, recognise. dēscend-ō, -ere, dēscend-ī, dēscens-um, descend. dīvid-o, -ere, dīvīs-ī, dīvīs-um, divide. fund-ō, -ere, fūd-ī, fūs-um, pour; perf. part. pass., stretched. immin-eō,-ēre, —, —(imminent), overhang. iug-um, -ī, n., yoke.

moen-ia, -ium, n.pl., walls (of a nās-us, -ī, m. (nasal), nose. pet-ō, -ere, petīv-ī or peti-ī, petit-um, seek, ask. profund-us, -a, -um (profound). recip-iō, -ere, recēp-ī, recept-um, receive. ru-ō, -ere, ru-ī, rut-um, rush. sin-ō, -ere, sīv-ī, sit-um, allow; perf. part. pass., situated. spēlunc-a, -ae, f., cave. spons-us, -i, m., betrothed, lover. terg-um, -ī, n., back. testūdō, testūdin-is, f., tortoise (a defence made by interlocking shields). vert-ō, -ere, vert-ī, vers-um (convert), turn (trans.)

The learner must now study Lesson 74 (on impersonal and defective verbs), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 74.

HINTS.

Some of these hints apply only to the latter exercises; they should therefore be revised from time to time as the learner works through his book.

I.—On Translating Latin Sentences into English.

(1) Look for the verb, distinguishing (in a complex sentence)

between the principal verb and that of a dependent clause.

(2) If the verb is in the first or second person, the termination by itself suffices instead of a subject. Sometimes this is the case also if the verb is in the third person, but with a third person verb you will usually find a subject in the form of a substantive, or an adjective used substantivally, or a pronoun—of course in the nominative case (unless the verb is in the infinitive, § 172).

(3) If the verb is transitive, look for an object in the accusative. If it is intransitive, there may be an indirect object in the dative; with copulative verbs ("to be," etc.) there will probably be a com-

pletion of the predicate in the same case as the subject.

(4) Assign adjectives and adjectival pronouns to the substantive with which they agree, and the genitives to the substantive, etc., on

which they depend.

(5) Any words which still remain unaccounted for will very likely be adverbial in character, perhaps a proposition with its case, perhaps an ablative of instrument or ablative absolute. If the verb is of the second person, there may be a substantive in the vocative. The subject or object may have a substantive in apposition with it.

II.—On Translating English Sentences into Latin.

(1) Analyse the sentence.

(2) See that your verb agrees with the subject in number and person; also, if the verb is in a perfect tense passive or deponent, see that the participle is in the right number and gender. In a dependent clause be careful of the mood; and if you use the subjunctive, remember the rule for the sequence of tenses. See, too, that you use the right voice.

(3) If the Latin verb is transitive, put its object in the accusative. Beware of doing the same when you are rendering an English transitive verb (e.g. "obey") by an intransitive Latin verb (e.g. pareo,

"I am obedient").

(4) Copulative verbs take a complement in the same case as the subject. So too with quam, "than," the words denoting the things compared must be in the same case.

(5) Be sure that every adjective agrees with that to which it refers

cither as attribute or as predicate.

(6) The normal Latin order is—subject, indirect object, direct object, adverb or adverbial expression, verb. An attribute other than an adjective of quantity commonly follows its substantive. In a complex sentence the dependent clause or clauses may be inserted in the principal sentence, but not in such a way as to leave a number of verbs together at the end.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

A.—I. Saltas. 2. Vocant. 3. Cursas. 4. Errat. 5. Clamant. 6. Saltamus. 7. Erratis. 8. Vocas. 9. Ambulamus. 10. Cantat. 11. Vocatis. 12. Cursat. 13. Erras. 14. Ambulat. 15. Saltatis. 16. Erramus. 17. Voco. 18. Clamatis. 19. Cantas. 20. Saltant. 21. Clamamus. 22. Vocat. 23. Amant. 24. Erro. 25. Ambulatis. 26. Clamas. 27. Amamus. 28. Vocamus. 29. Errant. 30. Ambulas.

B.—I. You are walking. 2. You (pl.) sing. 3. He is shouting. 4. I am calling. 5. They are dancing. 6. We are mistaken. 7. They love. 8. You (pl.) dance. 9. We are calling. 10. You (pl.) shout. 11. We are walking. 12. He sings. 13. You (pl.) call. 14. I dance. 15. They shout. 16. He dances. 17. You are mistaken. 18. You (pl.) love. 19. We are shouting. 20. He walks. 21. I am singing. 22. They are calling. 23. We dance. 24. They love. 25. I am calling. 26. You are shouting. 27. They are walking. 28. We sing. 29. They are mistaken. 30. They are running to and fro.

EXERCISE 2.

A.—I. Amabit. 2. Festinabat. 3. Arabant. 4. Peccabamus. 5. Vigilabitis. 6. Saltabimus. 7. Cantabam. 8. Clamabo. 9. Errabunt. 10. Saltabas. 11. Amabamus. 12. Festinabimus. 13. Peccabitis. 14. Arabo. 15. Saltabatis. 16. Vigilabant. 17. Clamabas. 18. Cantabis. 19. Errabam. 20. Saltabit. 21. Festinabatis. 22. Amabitis. 23. Saltabunt. 24. Vigilabo. 25. Peccabant. 26. Errabis. 27. Saltabamus. 28. Clamabit. 29. Cantabat. 30. Arabas.

B.—I. They will hasten. 2. You were sinning. 3. You will shout. 4. I shall command. 5. We were dancing. 6. He will watch. 7. They were labouring. 8. You (pl.) were singing. 9. We shall plough. 10. He was watching. 11. I shall sing. 12. You will hasten. 13. He was commanding. 14. You (pl.)

were shouting. 15. They will dance. 16. You (pl.) were watching. 17. I shall plough. 18. You will labour. 19. You (pl.) will watch. 20. They were ploughing. 21. He will command. 22. You (pl.) will shout. 23. We were singing. 24. He will hasten. 25. They were dancing. 26. You (pl.) will love. 27. You will plough. 28. They were commanding. 29. They will command. 30. We were ploughing.

EXERCISE 3.

A.—I. Laudavit. 2. Clamavi. 3. Superabit. 4. Laboravistis. 5. Festinate. 6. Vulneravere. 7. Saltavisti. 8. Pugnaverunt. 9. Vigila. 10. Dubitavimus. 11. Saltabamus. 12. Pugnate. 13. Saltavistis. 14. Festinavimus. 15. Arate. 16. Clamavistis. 17. Laudavimus. 18. Laboraverunt. 19. Superate. 20. Festinaverunt. 21. Pugnavimus. 22. Salta. 23. Vulneravi. 24. Vigilate. 25. Festinavistis. 26. Dubitaverunt. 27. Aravi. 28. Ambulavisti. 29. Vulnerabimus. 30. Erravistis.

B.—I. They overcame. 2. You have wounded. 3. Watch (pl.). 4. He fought. 5. I shouted. 6. They will praise. 7. Hasten. 8. You (pl.) hesitated. 9. We have blamed. 10. You (pl.) are overcoming. 11. They have wounded. 12. I have overcome. 13. You wounded. 14. Fight (pl.). 15. We watched. 16. We shouted. 17. He will plough. 18. You (pl) hastened. 19. Hesitate. 20. You have overcome. 21. Sing. 22. You (pl.) have fought. 23. We ploughed. 24. You watched. 25. He has loved. 26. They laboured. 27. Watch. 28. You (pl.) ploughed. 29. He hesitated. 30. We have shouted.

EXERCISE 4.

A.—I. Feminae saltant. 2. Nautae filia clamavit. 3. Puella nautam amat. 4. Regina nautas laudavit. 5. Poetae, rosas amatis. 6. Puellae nautas laudabant. 7. Puellae audaciam nautarum laudabunt. 8. Sapientia nautae procellam superat. 9. Nautae, pugnas laudabatis. 10. Puellae rosas laudant. 11. Silvas amamus. 12. Turba clamavit. 13. Reginae sapientia turbam superavit. 14. Filias poetarum amamus. 15. Poeta reginam laudabit. 16. Regina, rosas amas. 17. Poeta, audaciam feminarum lauda. 18. Nautae, feminam vulneravistis. 19. Audacia turbae sapientiam reginae superavit. 20. Poetae, silvas reginae laudavistis.

B.—1. The sailor hesitated. 2. The poets were singing. 3. The queen is walking. 4. The girls are dancing. 5. The sailors

will watch. 6. We like roses. 7. You praise wisdom. 8. Boldness overcomes wisdom. 9. The woman wounded the sailor. 10. The poets were praising roses. 11. Poet, you loved the girl. 12. The sailors will overcome the storm. 13. The queen will praise wisdom. 14. Poets will praise wisdom. 15. The poets love woods. 16. The poet loved the queen's daughter. 17. The wisdom of the sailors will overcome the storm. 18. The queen was praising the poet's wisdom. 19. The daughters of the queen praised the boldness of the crowd. 20. The queen's boldness overcame the poet's wisdom.

EXERCISE 5.

A.—I. Nautae patriam* amant. 2. Nauta agricolae pecuniam donavit. 3. Puellae, reginae rosas indicate. 4. Hastis pugnavimus. 5. Feram hasta vulneravi. 6. Agricolae insulam habitant. 7. Audaciam poetae culpabimus. 8. Agricola reginam rosis delectat. 9. Puellae agricolis hastas donabunt. 10. Reginae sapientiam pecunia superabitis. 11. Insulae nautas delectabant. 12. Agricolae audaciam nautarum laudaverunt. 13. Nauta vitam agricolae laudabat. 14. Agricolae feminis rosas donabunt. 15. Nautae, reginam audacia delectabatis. 16. Cantate, poetae; saltate, puellae. 17. Regina nautis pecuniam donabit. 18. Nauta filiam poetae hasta vulneravit. 19. Nautis pecuniam donabo. 20. Poetae, audaciam turbae sapientia superate.

B.—I. The girls will dance. 2. The farmer was ploughing. 3. We inhabit an island. 4. I shall point out the boldness of the women. 5. The girl pointed out the roses to the farmer. 6. You have wounded a wild beast with your† spear. 7. The queen blames her native land. 8. I gave the girl a rose. 9. The woman gives money to the sailor. 10. Sailors delight women by their boldness. 11. The poet wounded the farmer with a spear. 12. You (pl.) overcame the queen by your wisdom. 13. The queen's daughters were praising the sailors' boldness. 14. The farmer's daughters were giving roses to the poets. 15. The queen will delight the poet by her wisdom. 16. The farmers wound the wild beasts with spears. 17. The poet was praising the queen's wisdom. 18. Woman, you

^{*} The Latin for the possessive adjective my, your, his, etc., is often omitted if it can be easily understood; e.g. here it is clear that the native land which sailors love is their native land, and the word their should be added in translating.

[†] Words in italics in this and following exercises need not be translated.

will give roses to your daughter. 19. Woman, your daughters will give roses to the sailors. 20. Farmers, overcome the wild beasts of the island with spears.

EXERCISE 6.

A.—I. Procella crit.* 2. Pugna in silva fuit. 3. Agricolae sumus. 4. Nauta fuisti. 5. Erant in insula aquilae. 6. Regina es. 7. Poetae filiae in Gallia sunt. 8. In Italia fuimus. 9. Nautae in insula erunt. 10. Nautarum audacia victoriae causa est. 11. Regina sum. 12. Poetae sumus. 13. Filiae nautarum estis. 14. Silvae in insulis fuerunt. 15. Turba in via erat. 16. Nautae in oris insulae sunt. 17. Columbae in insulis sunt. 18. Agricolae in silva crunt. 19. Feminae reginae erunt. 20. Nautae, poetae sumus.

B.—I. You have been queen. 2. I shall be a sailor. 3. Rome is in Italy. 4. The queen's folly was the cause of the battle. 5. There are doves in the woods. 6. The sailors are on the shore of the island. 7. There were crowds in the streets. 8. The queen was in Gaul. 9. We have been sailors. 10. You are poets. 11. There were roses in the woods. 12. There is a crowd of sailors on the shore of the island. 13. The queen's folly will be the cause of victory. 14. The girls were in the wood. 15. We are farmers' daughters. 16. There were eagles in Gaul. 17. The queen of the island is in Italy. 18. You are farmers. 19. There will be wild beasts in the woods of the island. 20. Girl, you will be queen.

EXERCISE 7.

A.—1. Nauta filium culpabat.

3. Medici filio equum donabo.

4. Medicus morbos superat.

5. Sapientia medicorum morbum non superabit.

6. Agricolarum hortos laudavimus.

7. Medice, servi dominum vulneraverunt.

8. Amici, non inimici, sumus.

9. Filius reginae equos medici laudebat.

10. In insula sunt tauri et equi.

11. Nauta filio gladium donabit.

12. Medice, avum gladio vulneravi.

13. Filii reginae avum gladio necavere.

14. Fluvios insulae laudabimus.

15. Dominus medicis pecuniam donabit.

16. Sapientia medicorum reginam delectabat.

17. Agricolae filios et nautae filias amavimus.

18. Servi, amicos domini necavistis.

19. Medicorum filii in horto ambulant.

20. Dominus filiae equum donavit.

^{*} When the third person of sum stands as a verb of complete predication, it is often translated by there is, there are, there was, there will be, etc.

B.—1. The farmer's bulls were in the island. 2. Rivers and woods delight poets. 3. The disease will overcome the doctors' wisdom. 4. The doctor's son was walking in the garden. 5. The girl loves her grandfather. 6. Slaves, slay your master with a sword. 7. The doctor's sons are walking in the gardens. 8. The farmer's horses will delight the lord's son. 9. I like horses and bulls. 10. The queen's sword delights the girls. 11. Slave, you have slain your master with a sword. 12. We were praising the rivers of the island. 13. You do not love the enemies of your friends. 14. The doctor's daughters are dancing in the garden. 15. The lord's sons were walking in the woods. 16. We gave money to the doctor. 17. The queen's grandfather loved (use the imperfect) poets. 18. Bulls and horses delight farmers. 19. Women do not fight with swords. 20. We will kill the queen's sons with a sword.

EXERCISE 8.

A.—I. Agricolae agros arabant. 2. Regina, insulam genero donabis. 3. Pueri libros, puellae rosas laudaverunt. 4. Feminae liberos culpant. 5. In agris erravi. 6. Servos ministrosque culpavisti. 7. Magistrorum libri puerum delectaverunt. 8. Agricolae apros hastis superaverunt. 9. Agricolarum agros non laudavimus. 10. Generi soceros non semper amant. 11. Ministri feram gladio necabunt. 12. Stultitiam puerorum culpavi. 13. Viri feminis pecuniam donaverunt. 14. Reginae gener liberos poetae culpavit. 15. Servi agros domini arant. 16. Puerorum libri magistrum non delectabunt. 17. Viri gladios, feminae libros laudabant. 18. Pueri apros hastis vulneraverunt. 19. Nautae in silvis errabunt. 20. Magister libros generorum laudavit.

B.-1. The boys were praising the masters' wisdom. 2. The children will dance in the garden. 3. The queen gave gardens to her servants. 4. The men wounded the wild boars with spears. 5. Farmers like fields and poets like books. 6. The Gauls slew the women and children. 7. You (pl.) will give a book to the girl and a horse to the boy. 8. The masters did not always praise the boys. 9. Servants, you have slain the queen's son-in-law with a sword. 10. The farmers' horses will be in the fields. 11. The wild boars overcame the servants. 12. I do not praise the fields of Gaul. 13. The queen was blaming the folly of her son-in-law. 14. Books do not always delight children. 15. Master, I was walking in the farmer's fields. 16. The doctor's wisdom did not overcome the carpenter's disease. 17. Roses delight girls, swords delight boys. 18. I praised the woman but blamed the men. 19. We wounded the wild boar with a spear. 20. The queen was always giving money to her son-in-law.

EXERCISE 9.

A.—I. Oppida aedificatis. 2. Bella non laudamus. 3. Agricolae proelia non amant. 4. Reginae dona culpabas. 5. Venena
medicorum laudavi. 6. Praemia nautis donate. 7. Scuta in
templo sunt. 8. Romani oppidum spoliabunt. 9. Templum in
insula aedificabimus. 10. Stultitia saepe est initium belli. 11.
Romani oppida et templa spoliavere. 12. Aurum et argentum
reginam delectant. 13. Poetae, dona deorum laudate. 14. Scuta
gladiosque in templo dedicavimus. 15. Nauta, proelia belli narra.
16. Feminae aquam, viri vinum laudant. 17. Dona magistri
pueros delectabant. 18. Dominum veneno necabimus. 19.
Romani oppida et agros spoliabunt. 20. Viri pueris praemia
donaverunt.

B.—I. We blame wars. 2. Tell the queen's deeds, poets. 3. We praise the joys of life. 4. You blame the gifts of the gods. 5. Boy, give the sailors wine. 6. I shall not praise the rewards of folly. 7. We are building a town in the island. 8. Wine was the beginning of joy. 9. You (pl.) were praising the towns of Gaul. 10. Relate the battle to your father-in-law. 11. Doctors overcome diseases by drugs. 12. The queen was giving rewards to the poets. 13. The poets' joy delighted the queen. 14. The boys were handling the shields and swords of the men. 15. The servants will kill the queen with poison. 16. You will build towns in the woods. 17. In the earth are gold and silver. 18. The queen's anger will be the beginning of the war. 19. Pillage the temples, slay the men. 20. Farmers do not often handle swords and shields.

EXERCISE 10.

A.—1. Silvas amoenas Italiae laudavimus. 2. Verba poetae docti turbam confirmaverunt. 3. Pueri in horto amoeno erant. 4. Facta amicorum perfidorum culpamus. 5. Ira reginae patriae noxia est. 6. Vitia reginae belli causa erant. 7. Verba puerorum stultorum non laudavisti. 8. Magnae turbae in viis clamabant. 9. Viri feminas timidas multis verbis confirmavere. 10. Praemia magna nautis bonis donabimus. 11. Romani templa magna in multis oppidis aedificaverunt. 12. Regina, aurum multum in templo dedicavisti. 13. Puerorum gaudium magistro gratum erit. 14. Viri verba feminarum timidarum non laudant. 15. Poeta reginae bonae facta splendida narravit.

B.—1. I blamed the words of the treacherous sailor. 2. The vices of the wicked lords will be the cause of the war. 3. There were many eagles in the large island. 4. The anger of the queen

will overcome the timid sailors. 5. The drugs of the learned doctor are not pleasing to the boy. 6. Sailors, you have overcome many dangers by your great boldness. 7. You (pl.) do not love treacherous friends. 8. The queen encouraged the learned poet with splendid gifts. 9. I was walking in the pleasant woods. 10. In Gaul there are many long rivers. 11. We will build splendid temples in the towns. 12. Master, you did not blame the deeds of the bad boys. 13. The dangers of the long way were not pleasing to the timid women. 14. I will give a large sum of money to the clever doctors. 15. We were blaming the deeds of the foolish sailors.

EXERCISE 11.

A.—1. Pueri aegri sunt. 2. Puellas pulchras amamus. 3. Aguos teneros immola. 4. Aquam puellae aegrae donavi. 5. Oculi reginae pulchrae nigri sunt. 6. Amicos asperos et perfidos non amamus. 7. Agricolae tauros nigros et equos albos laudaverunt. 8. Sapientia viri docti feminas pulchras delectavit. 9. Romani agros agricolarum miserorum vastabunt. 10. Filiae nautae aegri pecuniam donavi. 11. Pericula viae asperae sunt multa. 12. Puellae, rosas albas rubrasque deae dedicavistis. 13. Nautae puellas donis pulchris delectaverunt. 14. Poetae, facta splendida reginae pulchrae narrate. 15. Servis aegris rosas donabo.

B.—1. Give red roses to the girl. 2. I have sacrificed a black bull. 3. The temple is sacred. 4. The eyes of the beautiful girls were large. 5. We blamed the rough words of the sailor. 6. The red roses and white lilies will delight the sailor's eyes. 7. Queen, you gave much gold and silver to the black slaves. 8. The rough way was hurtful to the delicate woman. 9. You will give roses to the sick woman. 10. The slaves killed the sacred doves. 11. The cold winds will be hurtful to the tender lambs. 12. The Romans are building beautiful towns and large temples. 13. Wretched farmers, you are ploughing small fields. 14. The daughters of beautiful women are not always beautiful. 15. The sailor overcame the farmer with harsh words.

EXERCISE 12.

A.—1. Vulnerabamini. 2. Culpabamur. 3. Amaris. 4. Regina laudatur. 5. Oppida spoliantur. 6. Oppida a Gallis aedificantur. 7. Praemiis splendidis a regina honorabaris. 8. A bonis non amamini. 9. Agricola a nauta superabatur. 10. Somno et cibo

recreabamini. 11. A medico docto culpamur. 12. Marce, a regina amaris. 13. Puer a nauta castigatur. 14. Puellae tenerae via longa defatigantur. 15. Apri ab agricolis hastis vulnerabantur.

B.—1. You were being chastised. 2. We are being wounded. 3. Marcus, you are blamed. 4. Towns were being built. 5. Bulls are being sacrificed. 6. The women are loved by their sons. 7. The splendid deeds of the beautiful queen were being narrated by the poet. 8. Boys, you are blamed by the master. 9. We were being delighted by the poet's words. 10. Sailors, you are praised by the queen. 11. The girl is being wounded by the slave with a sword. 12. You are delighted with the poet's books. 13. Marcus, you were being chastised by the master. 14. Riches are desired by the wretched farmers. 15. You are praised by women, but you are blamed by men.

EXERCISE 13.

A.—I. Amabimini. 2. Culpata sum. 3. Laudaberis. 4. Nautae, superabimini. 5. Oppida spoliata sunt. 6. Templa deorum a Gallis spoliabuntur. 7. Regina, a malis laudaberis, a bonis culpaberis. 8. Vita rustica ab agricolis semper laudabitur. 9. Dominus a servis necatus est. 10. Feminae benevolentia medici delectatae sunt. 11. Puer ab avo castigabitur. 12. Nautae, praemiis splendidis honorabimini. 13. Ab amicis multis culpati sumus. 14. Oppida a Gallis habitabuntur. 15. Facta reginae malae a bonis culpata sunt.

B.—1. You will be chastised. 2. We shall be praised. 3. Queen, you have been overcome. 4. The beautiful girls have been praised. 5. The bulls will be sacrificed. 6. Rewards will be given to the skilful physicians. 7. The poet was honoured by the queen's friendship. 8. Town life will never be praised by doctors. 9. The towns were pillaged by the Gauls. 10. We shall be praised by our enemies and blamed by our friends. 11. The danger was overcome by the queen's boldness. 12. You will be delighted with the rivers and woods of the island. 13. Girls, you will be delighted with the roses and lilies of the garden. 14. The men were overcome by the women's tears. 15. You will be wounded by a black slave.

EXERCISE 14.

A.—1. Nautae navem coronis ornabant. 2. Cives classem comparabunt. 3. Clades reginae nuntiata est. 4. Navis, cives conservavisti. 5. Oppidum turri firmabitur. 6. Cives turres aedificabant. 7. Poeta, reginae cladem nuntiabis. 8. Nautae,

nubes spectate. 9. Colles civium oculos delectant. 10. Insula vallibus et collibus abundat. 11. Naves a civibus comparabantur. 12. Puellae, vestibus pulchris delectabimini. 13. Hortos magnos civibus donavimus. 14. Cives, castra turribus firmate. 15. Oppida hostium templis splendidis ornata sunt.

B.—1. The ship will be overcome by the winds. 2. The camp will be pillaged by the enemy (pl.). 3. We dedicated the fleet to Neptune. 4. Queen, you have been wounded by a treacherous citizen. 5. Boys, you will be delighted with the hills and valleys of Gaul. 6. The citizens will get together money and garments. 7. The ships' prows have been adorned with garlands. 8. Sailor, you will be delighted with the citizens' gardens. 9. Queen, cheer the timid citizens. 10. The winds will be hurtful to the fleet. 11. We will give ships to the citizens. 12. The enemy were looking at the valleys and hills of the island. 13. The town is being strengthened by large towers. 14. The queen will be delighted with the beautiful garment. 15. Citizens, build towers.

EXERCISE 15.

A.—I. Cives, pontem turribus firmate. 2. Dentes vulpium longi et albi sunt. 3. Silvas in montibus specto. 4. Multae urbes in montibus aedificatae sunt. 5. Athenis templa splendida in montibus aedificata sunt. 6. Incolae montium glandes vorant. 7. Gadibus cives miseri glandes vorabant. 8. Aqua fontis feminas recreavit. 9. Aqua fontium frigida erat. 10. Cives, urbem pontibus et turribus firmavistis. 11. Urbes turribus firmatae sunt. 12. Romae vitam rusticam laudabam. 13. Cives templa donis splendidis ornaverunt. 14. Gabiis templa a civibus donis splendidis ornabuntur. 15. Tarenti ab incolis urbis educaberis.

B.—1. Romulus built the city. 2. The Romans are building many cities in Italy. 3. The enemy (pl.) will behold the towers of the cities. 4. The fox will wound the sailor with his teeth. 5. The citizens will strengthen the city with towers. 6. The sailors were praising the towers of the city. 7. You have beheld many mountains, sailors. 8. At Corinth you beheld many mountains. 9. At Gades the citizens are educated by the poets. 10. At Athens many fountains were dedicated to the goddess. 11. I beheld a city on the mountain. 12. At Rome you (pl.) praised temples and fountains, at Gades islands and ships. 13. Many citizens have been wounded by the teeth of the foxes. 14. At Gabii you (pl.) were delighted by mountains and valleys. 15. At Gades you will be honoured with splendid gifts.

EXERCISE 16.

- A.—1. Sedilia multa in hortis reginae sunt. 2. Venti classem incitabunt. 3. Cubilia ferarum in montibus erant. 4. Nautae in mari nabant. 5. Agricolae vulpes retibus superabunt. 6. Violentia maris naves superavit. 7. Equus animal pulchrum est. 8. Vectigalia deae dedicata sunt. 9. Venti frigidi animalibus noxii erunt. 10. Nautae fessi cubilia laudaverunt. 11. Cives hortes sedilibus ornant. 12. Equus calcari incitabitur. 13. Romae animalia multa sacra erant. 14. Vulpes ab agricolis rete superabitur. 15. Gadibus mare et naves laudabas.
- B.—I. I will prepare beds for the sailors. 2. The violence of the storm was hurtful to the nets. 3. The lord's spurs were sharp. 4. The boys will overcome the foxes with nets. 5. The sailor blamed the violence of the sea. 6. Many animals are swimming in the river. 7. You drive forward your horse with spurs. 8. We will give ships and nets to the sailors. 9. Beds will be welcome to the tired women. 10. Citizens do not like taxes. 11. The foxes overcame the farmer's net with their teeth. 12. The sailor has beheld many seas. 13. The citizens will be delighted with the seas and fountains. 14. At Corinth I used to* swim in the sea. 15. At Athens the citizens used to sacrifice many animals to Neptune.

EXERCISE 17.

A.—I. Aestate paludes siccae erunt. 2. Virtutem militum laudabimus. 3. Naves tempestate quassatae sunt. 4. Crassus pedites in hibernis collocabit. 5. Nauta tempestates hiemis culpabat. 6. Galli principibus non obtemperant. 7. Hieme urbes, castra aestate laudamus. 8. Crasse, equites revoca. 9. Trabes pontis longae sunt. 10. Filii principum Romae educabuntur. 11. Galli agros aestate peragrabant. 12. Milites, civitatem virtute conservavistis. 13. Pedites a Crasso in hibernis collocati sunt. 14. Aestate multae ranae in paludibus erunt. 15. Equites, equos calcaribus incitate.

B.—1. The storms of winter shattered the fleet. The foxes wander about the woods in winter and summer. 3. We placed the booty in the marsh. 4. The chiefs of the state were treacherous. 5. The cavalry will be recalled by Crassus. 6. In winter the soldiers praised winter quarters. 7. Citizens, obey the chief.

^{*} Use the imperfect tense: e.g. I used to live at Rome, Romae habitabam.

8. The city has been strengthened by marshes and mountains. 9. The infantry were wandering in the woods. 10. The soldiers' valour was being praised by the chiefs. 11. The fleet will be shattered by the violence of the storms. 12. The swords of the infantry were sharp. 13. Sailor, you will not praise the sea in winter. 14. The deeds of the cavalry will be praised by Crassus. 15. In winter we dance, in summer we walk.

EXERCISE 18.

A.—I. Puellae flores amant. 2. Crasse, sermonem oratoris laudavisti. 3. Athenis sermonibus oratorum delectatus sum. 4. Passeres in ramis arborum specto. 5. Leones silvas et montes insulae habitabant. 6. Romae consules legibus non semper obtemperabant. 7. Dei virtutem viris, feminis pulchritudinem donaverunt. 8. Leones gregem pastoris in montibus vorabant. 9. Viri et feminae sunt homines. 10. Regis filii Corinthi educantur. 11. Consul dentibus leonum vulneratus est. 12. Pueri, nidum passeris spoliavistis. 13. Consul agros regis perfidi vastabat. 14. Aestate pulchritudine florum delectaberis. 15. Leones a pastoribus retibus superati sunt.

B.—I. I love my mother. 2. You do not always obey your father and mother. 3. Soldiers, you blamed the cowardice of the leaders. 4. In summer the flocks will wander about the fields. 5. The king's fleet has been shattered by storms. 6. The woods abound with flowers. 7. Leaders, you have not obeyed the king. 8. We praised the beauty of the flowers. 9. The cowardice of the cavalry will be overcome by the consul's valour. 10. Sons are always loved by their mothers. 11. Treacherous shepherds, you will be punished by the judges. 12. The leaders placed the soldiers in winter quarters. 13. The lairs of the lions were in the mountains. 14. Cavalry, you are being recalled by the consul. 15. The orator's conversation excited the king's valour.

EXERCISE 19.

A.—1. Dux foedera violabat. 2. Nautae litora insulae peragrabant. 3. Pater scelera filii laudavit. 4. Carmina poetae oratorem non delectaverunt. 5. Virtutem consulum carminibus celebrabimus. 6. Milites periculis itineris perturbati sunt. 7. Multa cadavera post proelium spectavimus. 8. Puellae, capita coronis ornavistis. 9. Agricolae rus, nautae mare laudant. 10.

Foedus a rege perfido violatum est. 11. Dedecus est praemium scelerum. 12. Frigus hiemis greges teneros excruciavit. 13. Milites, oneribus et longo itinere excruciati estis. 14. Aestate puellae in litore curvo saltant. 15. Regina perfida scelerum praemiis delectata est.

B.—1. The king praised the poet's songs. 2. Judges, you did not blame the consul's crime. 3. The leaders of the Gauls are violating the treaties. 4. The flashes of lightning were frightening the flocks. 5. The flocks will be frightened by the flashes of lightning. 6. Poets, celebrate the king's deeds by your songs. 7. We beheld the dead bodies of the lions on the shore. 8. I shall not praise the rewards of crimes. 9. Poet, you are always praising past times. 10. The consuls were tortured by their wounds. 11. The dangers of the march frightened the soldiers. 12. The slaves were carrying burdens on their heads. 13. The soldiers will be overcome by cold and wounds. 14. Sailors, behold the beauty of the winding shore. 15. The soldiers will relate to the citizens the dangers of their past marches.

EXERCISE 20.

A.—I. Servi onera gravia in capitibus portabant. 2. Agricola frigus hiemis acris culpabat. 3. Filiae agricolarum aestate alacres sunt. 4. Carthagini vita servorum tristis erat. 5. Fulgura milites fortes non perturbavere. 6. Horatii carmina dulcia et brevia sunt. 7. Pulchritudinem equorum celerium laudavimus. 8. Miles fortis vulneribus gravibus exanimatus est. 9. Equi aurigarum alacrium certamine incitati sunt. 10. Aestate fontis aqua dulcis gregibus grata erat. 11. Omnes cives oratione acri Ciceronis hodie incitabuntur. 12. Amici fideles tristi feminae dona utilia donabunt. 13. Omnes virtute ducis alacris conservati sumus. 14. Veiis omnes cives facta fortia fidelis servi laudant. 15. Cicero orationibus acribus, Horatius carminibus dulcibus Romanos delectabat.

B.—1. The winter was keen. 2. There will be a fierce contest at Veii to-day. 3. The horse is keen and swift. 4. The sad woman was weeping in the street. 5. Poets, you have sung sad songs. 6. We urge forward swift horses with spurs. 7. Queen, to-day you are cheerful, yesterday you were sad. 8. The eager soldier is tormented by the pain of his severe wounds. 9. Farmer, you praise long summers and short winters. 10. All the citizens praised the sweet songs of Horace.

11. The eager boys will overcome the fox with their swift arrows.

12. The gifts of faithful friends are always

welcome. 13. Crassus, you will overcome all the dangers of the march with your swift horses. 14. All the citizens will be sad at Carthage to-day. 15. Horace celebrated the joys of country life by his sweet songs.

EXERCISE 21.

- A.—1. Reginam infelicem catenis onerabimus. 2. Leo rapax sagitta celeri superabitur. 3. Omnes Caesarem felicem appellabant. 4. Patres filiorum sapientium felices sunt. 5. Patrem fili sapientis felicem appello. 6. Caesar Gallos vectigalibus ingentibus onerabit. 7. Rex infelix, scelera reginae catenis digna sunt. 8. Dux audax hostes rapaces fugavit. 9. Cives prudentes, oratori sapienti obtemperate. 10. Omnes pulchritudinem praestantem reginae laudabant. 11. Cadaver leonis ingentis in litore spectavimus. 12. Crasse, copias ingentes hostium fugavisti. 13. Caesar principes fideles praemiis ingentibus oneravit. 14. Filios patrum sapientium felices puto. 15. Scelera turpia militum praemiis indigna putavimus.
- B.—1. A wise king will praise a wise plan. 2. Wise leaders do not blame wise plans. 3. The wise plan of the leaders are worthy of praise. 4. We thought the wise plan of the leaders worthy of praise. 5. The forces of the Gauls were immense. 6. All Caesar's plans will be bold. 7. The prudent leaders were blaming Caesar's bold plans. 8. The rapacious enemy (pl.) will be overcome by the bold soldiers. 9. Cicero's speech will be worthy of the praise of wise men. 10. You (pl.) loaded the unhappy leader with chains. 11. You (pl.) will be delighted by the words of the prudent orators. 12. All men think Cicero wise. 13. The unhappy woman gave an immense sum of money to the rapacious leader. 14. All men call an unfaithful friend base. 15. The songs of the greedy poet are unworthy of the queen's praise.

EXERCISE 22.

A. I. Divites sed infelices sumus. 2. Caesaris scelerum immemor es. 3. Post proelium Galli consulem superstitem gladiis exanimaverunt. 4. Cur luna sole minor est? 5. Urbem maiorem in monte acdificabimus. 6. Lacrimae reginae inopis regem excruciant. 7. Virtus ducum vigilum a Caesare laudabatur. 8. Caesar milites superstites praemiis ingentibus oneravit. 9. Clamores Gallorum feminam inopem perturbant. 10. Amici divitum non semper fideles sunt. 11. Divites amicorum pauperum interdum immemores sunt. 12. Maiorem laudem poetis quam militibus donamus. 13. Agri agricolarum inopum a Crasso vastabuntur.

- 14. Cur nautae maiora dona Neptuno quam Marti dedicant?
 15. Matris laus duci dulcior erit quam reginae praemia.
- B.—I. Soldiers, be watchful. 2. The sun is larger than the moon. 3. Why do you give rewards to the rich? 4. Why did you give greater rewards to the rich than to the poor? 5. I will give better gifts to the boy than to the girl. 6. The leaders of the Gauls put to flight the surviving infantry. 7. The poor are sometimes happier than the rich. 8. The watchful leaders were preparing greater forces. 9. Give money to the helpless sailor. 10. We are not unmindful of the queen's kindness. 11. I beheld a watchful soldier on the tower. 12. Nothing is sweeter in summer than woods and fountains. 13. We do not always think the life of rich men happy. 14. The mother of the surviving leader will dedicate the arms of her son to Mars. 15. The soldiers were overcome by the tears of the helpless women.

EXERCISE 23.

- A.—1. Gradus turris numeravi. 2. Exploratores currus hostium numerabunt. 3. Pericula itineris exercitui noxia erunt. 4. Dux currus in cornu dextro collocavit. 5. Galli multos milites arcubus vulneraverunt. 6. Umbra quercuum greges delectat. 7. Pastores, fructibus dulcibus horti recreabimini. 8. Nauta, portus insulac culpavisti. 9. Caesar fines Gallorum cum magno exercitu intravit. 10. Puer stultus folia quercus numerabat. 11. Genua valida taurorum agricolis utilia sunt. 12. Sagittae manum reginae et genu regis vulneraverunt. 13. Currus et arcus a ducibus Gallorum parabantur. 14. Carmina Horatii in manibus omnium civium sunt. 15. Hieme Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocabat, aestate agros hostium vastabat.
- B.—1. Farmers praise oaks in summer. 2. The ships were entering the harbour. 3. Horns are useful to bulls. 4. Rich women praise white hands. 5. The Roman army entered the territories of the Gauls. 6. Caesar will place the cavalry on the wings. 7. Boy, you will be delighted by the soldier's bow. 8. Spaes, why did you not count the enemy's chariots? 9. The consul is sacrificing a bull on the steps of the temple. 10. Boys, you will be delighted by the fruit of the trees. 11. The girls were praising needles, the boys were praising bows. 12. Nothing is more useful to men than sight. 13. Caesar will give immense rewards to the army. 14. The knees of the spy were wounded by an arrow. 15. The farmer's bull wounded the shepherd's son with its horn.

EXERCISE 24.

A.—I. Spes remedium est multorum dolorum. 2. Crassi filii in acie pugnabant. 3. Milites segnitiem ducem culpabant. 4. Fide amicorum delectamur. 5. Omnes res in insula abundant. 6. Dierum praeteritorum immemor es. 7. Speciem virtutis non laudamus. 8. Exercitus in magna planitie pugnabant. 9. Multos dies agros Gallorum vastabamus. 10. Dies aestate longi, hieme breves sunt. 11. Mater faciem filiae pulchram putavit. 12. Cras planitiem intrabimus et turres urbis spectabimus. 13. Caesar animos militum spe praedae confirmavit. 14. Facie pulchra puellae delectaberis, Marce. 15. Rerum multarum immemor sum, sed non fidei militum.

B.—I. The farmer praised the long days of summer. 2. Farmers, you will be delighted by the long days of summer. 3. The king is lord of all things. 4. We have inhabited the plain for many years. 5. The spies beheld the enemy's line of battle. 6. The soldiers were being delighted by the hope of booty. 7. You (pl.) will never be unmindful of the loyalty of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers will blame the apathy of the leader for many days. 9. The consul was wounded in battle (accies) by the leader of the enemy. 10. Soldiers, you were praising the queen's beautiful face. 11. The treacherous citizens did not praise Cicero's loyalty. 12. The general will overcome the apathy of the soldiers by the hope of rewards. 13. The treacherous queen was delighting the citizens by a semblance of benevolence. 14. The leaders will place the cavalry on the right wing of the line. 15. We are forgetful of many things, but not of the apathy of the consuls.

EXERCISE 25.

A.—I. Alii alia clamant. 2. Mors nemini grata est. 3. Reditum alterius exploratoris exspectamus. 4. Utri consulum frumentum suppeditavistis? Neutri. 5. Boni soli felices sunt. 6. Totam noctem in turri vigilavi. 7. Alios culpamus, alios laudamus. 8. Dux duas naves longas in portu spectavit. 9. Uno solo proelio Gallos superabimus. 10. Uter foedus violavit? Neuter. 11. Caesar praemia alia aliis donabit. 12. Amicus perfidus a nullo amatur. 13. Altera puellarum pulchra, altera sapiens est. 14. Puer tria cadavera in litore spectavit. 15. Alter fratrum alterum necavit.

B.—1. Two consuls were created at Rome. 2. The leader related the disaster to the whole army. 3. Some things delight some men, others delight others. 4. Only one man-of-war is in the

harbour. 5. The sight of other captives dismayed the soldiers. 6. No one saw any traces of the contest. 7. One of the two chiefs was providing corn, the other wine. 8. I was walking for three hours in the woods. 9. In which wing shall we place the cavalry? 10. The deeds of one of the two are worthy of praise, those of the other are worthy of blame. 11. To which of the two shall I give the reward? To neither. 12. We overcame the enemy in two battles. 13. I see the tracks of one horse only. 14. The Romans with one ship overcame two ships of the enemy. 15. Three spies were counting the enemy's forces.

EXERCISE 26.

A.—1. Milites pericula itineris longissimi culpabant. 2. Cur verba oratoris eloquentissimi culpas? 3. Cur verba prudentissimi oratorum culpavisti? 4. Cras feliciores erimus, hodie tristissimi sumus. 5. Dona splendidiora poetae dona. 6. Animi militum spe rerum feliciorum confirmabuntur. 7. Milites consilia audacissima Caesaris laudabant. 8. Ferrum auro utilius est. 9. Pueri fructibus dulcissimis delectabantur. 10. Marcus, dux fortissimus, fines Gallorum vastabat. 11. Ciceronem, oratorem eloquentissimum, laudavimus. 12. Patres pueris prudentissimi, laudabant. 13. Cives omnes facta Ciceronis, consulis prudentissimi, laudabant. 14. Aestate dies longissimi, noctes brevissimae sunt. 15. Cives, dona splendidissima Crasso, viro fortissimo, donate.

B.—1. The teeth of the lions are very sharp. 2. The learned king praised the poems of Horace. 3. The beeches were higher than the oaks. 4. The cruel queen will torture the slaves. 5. Give (pl.) more useful gifts to the poor woman. 6. The horse is a very strong animal. 7. The boughs of the oaks were very long. 8. We praised the very prudent words of Cicero. 9. The dangers of the march will be very welcome to the brave leader. 10. Gold is sometimes a very dangerous gift. 11. The learned master will chastise the very foolish boys. 12. The brave leader Caesar was blaming the soldiers' apathy. 13. The shrewd spies were worthy of more splendid gifts. 14. Prosperity is sometimes more dangerous than adversity. 15. We will lay waste the territories of the Gauls, our cruel enemies.

EXERCISE 27.

A.—1. Milites verbis benevolentissimis reginac delectantur. 2. Galli agros agricolarum miserrimorum vastant. 3. Greges regis pinguissimi sunt. 4. Montes Helvetiae asperrimi et maxime ardui sunt. 5. Puella magis pia est quam trater. 6. Veterrima inimicitia inter Gallos et Romanos est. 7. Omnes viri puellas pulcherrimas laudant. 8. Aestas gratior est pauperrimis quam hiems. 9. Nihil est pulchrius rosa. 10. Fabulas maledicentissimas saepe narras. 11. Feminis egentissimis vestes donate. 12. Rex benevolentior regina erat. 13. Milites ducem, hominem miserrimum, catenis oneraverunt. 14. Vinum veterrimum amamus. 15. Dominus, vir benevolentissimus, servo aegerrimo multa donavit.

B.—I. Lilies are more beautiful than roses. 2. The stag is a very beautiful animal. 3. The Roman laws are very ancient. 4. The boy was very dutiful. 5. A very scandalous story is told about Balbus. 6. Women are more delicate than men. 7. Nothing is more beautiful than a lion. 8. The very foreseeing will never be very poor. 9. The eloquent orator was exciting the soldiers by his very eager words. 10. Farmers' daughters are more energetic in summer than in winter. 11. Give money to the needy sailor. 12. The rivers of Switzerland are very swift. 13. We think the life of slaves very wretched. 14. The dangers of the very rough way fatigue the infantry. 15. The very distinguished exploits of the leader will be related to the queen.

EXERCISE 28.

A.—T. Catilina nequissimus hominum fuit. 2. Soror fratris simillima est. 3. Nihil est difficilius virtute. 4. Minima saepe optima sunt. 5. Oppidum maximum in insula ditissima habitamus. 6. Iuniores senioribus obtemperant. 7. Agricola, vir pauperrimus, agros maiores optavit. 3. Adulatio semper pessima est. 9. Plurimi poetae senectutem laudaverunt. 10. Spes rerum meliorum pauperrimos confirmat. 11. Vinum veterrimum optimum putamus. 12. Amicus perfidus peior hoste est. 13. Caesar urbem turribus plurimis firmavit. 14. Columbae aquilarum dissimillimae sunt. 15. Nautae dona plura Neptuno quam Marti dedicaverunt.

B.—1. The fox is more slender than the stag. 2. The largest things are not always the best. 3. Nothing is baser than flattery, 4. Mothers and daughters are sometimes very unlike. 5. Queen, give more things to the very poor (pl.) than to the very rich (pl.). 6. The fox is smaller than the lion. 7. Nothing is better than the love of friends. 8. The poet recited very many songs. 9. The elders are wiser than the younger men. 10. The joys of old age are very small. 11. The soldiers are dismayed by the fear of worse things. 12. A faithful friend is the best gift of the gods. 13. The

infantry are excited by the hope of very great booty. 14. The base Catilina prepared very many forces. 15. The life of a very rich person is full of fears.

EXERCISE 29.

- A.—1. Proximo anno plurima oppida oppugnata sunt. 2. Cato ad extremam senectutem in horto cottodie ambulabat. 3. Postumus filius patris sum. 4. Superioribus proeliis hostes semper superavistis, milites. 5. Dux Romanus in Hispania citeriore maximas copias comparat. 6. Britannia ultima provincia est. 7. Maximae silvae in Hispania ulteriore sunt. 8. Dux ultimo die belli vulneratus est. 9. Oppidum in summo colle aedificamus. 10. Milites in inferiore parte vallis pugnant. 11. Primo vere agricolae tauros in agris immolant. 12. Postrema verba ducis recita, poeta. 13. Virtus est summum bonum. 14. Inferiores partes insulae mari propiores sunt. 15. Primus inter primos sum.
- B.—1. On the first day of the year I shall sacrifice a bull to Neptune. 2. In the previous year we overcame the Gauls. 3. I see woods on the tops of the mountains. 4. The remotest territories of the Gauls are near Britain. 5. In former years I used to long for very many things. 6. The soldiers are fighting in the lowest part of the valley. 7. In the beginning of spring there will be very many frogs in the marshes. 8. The leader laid waste Hither Gaul. 9. The last (pl.) will be killed by the enemy's (pl.) horsemen. 10. Until extreme old age the king used to swim (impf.) daily. 11. There are great crowds in the higher part of the town. 12. You will never be unmindful of very rich friends. 13. The citizens chastised the priest on the lowest step of the temple. 14. A worse generation wishes for riches. 15. Citizens, strengthen the outermost wall with towers.

EXERCISE 30.

A.—1. Caesaris consilia nobis nota erant. 2. Cives me laudant, te culpant. 3. Cur mihi pecuniam donavistis? 4. Homo improbus numquam sui immemor est. 5. Duces numquam vestri immemores erunt, milites. 6. Multi nostrum Athonis educati sumus. 7. Me equi, libri te delectant. 8. Mihi patria, tibi vita cara est. 9. Galli sumus, regina, ego et tu. 10. Seelera Catilinae a vobis condemnata sunt. 11. Amicitia mihi carior est argento. 12. Tu mei numquam

immemor eris. 13. Multi vestrum Ciceronem stultum putatis. 14. Oppida Gallorum a nobis expugnata sunt. 15. Balbus, homo stultissimus, semper se laudat.

B.—I. We were walking, you were swimming. 2. Girls, adorn yourselves with roses. 3. All men love themselves. 4. I will never be unmindful of you (pl.). 5. Many of us have fought in Gaul. 6. Queen, the words of the wise poet were pleasing to you. 7. Marcus, the judges will condemn you. 8. My son and I have always been very friendly to you. 9. Catilina's crimes will never be praised by me. 10. Master, why do you chastise me? 11. The dishonourable Crassus will never give you money. 12. The praise of the brave general was very pleasing to me. 13. Cicero was praised by you (pl.) and blamed by me. 14. Many of you beheld the dead body of Caesar. 15. You praise yourself and are blamed by your friends.

EXERCISE 31.

A.—I. Nostri urbi appropinquant. 2. Caesar fines Gallorum cum exercitu suo intravit. 3. Carminibus tuis, poeta, delector.
4. Totum diem in silvis tuis ambulavi. 5. Virtus vestra, milites, patriam nostram conservavit. 6. Vita mea in manibus tuis est. 7. Filiae meae totam noctem saltaverunt. 8. Regina maritum sua manu necavit. 9. Res prosperae patriae nostrae perniciosissimae erunt. 10. Cur filios meos castigavisti, magister? 11. Amici mei aere alieno me liberaverunt. 12. Studia tua cive bono indigna sunt. 13. Oculi tui glauci, mei nigri sunt. 14. Nostri Poenorum fines intraverunt et oppida spoliaverunt. 15. Amicis nostris, Caesar, nimicissimus es.

B.—I. Verginius sacrificed his own daughter. 2. My plans are known to you. 3. Our men will lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. The praise of my friends is very pleasing to me. 5. Caesar placed his men in winter quarters. 6. Your very prudent words cheered the minds of our men. 7. My children are dearer to me than life. 8. All men praise your wisdom. 9. Soldiers, I shall never be unmindful of your valour. 10. All men love their own children. 11. Your wisdom is known to us by fame. 12. Our friends will give you very splendid gifts. 13. The treacherous leader slew the queen with his own sword. 14. My son, I am delighted by your deeds. 15. Gauls, our men will storm your towns.

EXERCISE 32.

A.—1. Cur illos pueros castigas? 2. Hae puellae eximia pulchritudine erunt. 3. Fama huius cladis animos militum pertur-

bavit. 4. Cur pecuniam huic servo donavisti? 5. Multos passeres in ramis illarum arborum specto. 6. Illo die pater tuus mihi hos libros donavit. 7. Haec classis a rege comparatur. 8. Huic uxorem eximia virtute donabimus. 9. Hos libros puellae, illos puero dona. 10. Studia ista cive Romano indigna puto. 11. Haec mox consuli nuntiabuntur. 12. Spes harum rerum me confirmavit. 13. Illa pocula in hac mensa colloca. 14. Agri illius agricolae a nostris vastati sunt. 15. Haec oppida, Caesar, ab istis militibus oppugnabantur.

B.—I. The spies reported these *things* to the leader. 2. In that year this town was stormed. 3. Caesar will be greatly delighted by these things. 4. This king was a man of extraordinary valour. 5. I never liked that friend of yours. 6. I praise this, I blame that. 7. Give me those books of yours. 8. This island is inhabited by Greeks. 9. This poet's son was reading aloud his father's poems. 10. We are praised by these and blamed by those. 11. The daughters of those women were of extraordinary beauty. 12. After this victory we shall soon overcome those enemies of yours. 13. By these words the general encouraged the minds of his man. 14. The pursuits of that young man are unworthy of such great abilities (sing.). 15. The inhabitants of this island have always been of a corrupt disposition.

EXERCISE 33.

A.—I. Id oppidum flumini finitimum est. 2. Poeta ea facta multis carminibus celebravit. 3. Agricola et servi eius summa diligentia agros arabant. 4. Id donum tibi ipsi donabo. 5. Ipse Cicero ea non laudabit. 6. Poeta idem carmen semper recitat. 7. Eodem die Galli a Caesare proelio equestri superati sunt. 8. Eo tempore Caesar cum equitibus urbi appropinquabat. 9. Numquam eius diei immemor fui. 10. Maiores nostri ipsi eo modo pugnabant. 11. Puellae fessae sunt: vinum eis dona. 12. Amici nostri nobis cariores sunt quam ipsa vita. 13. Cur semper carmina eorundem poetarum recitas? 14. Avus meus cadem semper narrat. 15. Marcus et uxor eius filiam suam necaverunt.

B.—1. That woman does not love her own daughter. 2. The slaves slew the cruel master and his son. 3. The king himself is approaching the city with speed. 4. At that time our ancestors used to inhabit those regions. 5. We are the sons of the same father. 6. Their territories border (say are bordering) on Gaul. 7. The same things will not always be dear to the same men. 8. On the same day Caesar overcame the enemy (pl.) in a cavalry engagement. 9. That is the dead body of a lion. 10. A brave man will

never tell his own exploits himself. 11. We ourselves beheld those things. 12. The Germans themselves and their wives were fighting with the greatest valour. 13. The queen and her son are getting together forces with the greatest diligence. 14. I love my friends and am dear to them. 15. The same woman slew her sister and her sister's daughter.

EXERCISE 34.

A.—1. Quid exploratores duci nuntiaverunt? 2. Quod donum optas? 3. Cur hodie eos culpas quos heri laudabas? 4. Exploratores ea quae spectaverunt Caesari nuntiaverunt. 5. Quis umquam scelera tanta laudabit? 6. Is est cui pecuniam donavisti. 7. Poeta cuius carmina laudas pauperrimus est. 8. Urbes quarum turres spectavimus a Graecis habitantur. 9. A quo vulneratus est? Ab amico quem semper amavit. 10. Is qui doctus est dives est. 11. Carmina quae poeta recitavit non laudavimus. 12. Oppidum quod habitamus a Caesare oppugnabitur. 13. Nos qui hodie superati sumus cras proelium redintegrabimus. 14. Ea quae viris grata sunt molesta feminis saepe sunt. 15. Classis quam rex summa diligentia comparavit eodem anno tempestatibus quassata est.

B.—1. What animal is immortal? 2. What has dismayed you? 3. Who ever thought Cicero foolish? 4. We love those who love us. 5. To whom (pl.) are the dangers of the march pleasing? 6. What is more useful than iron? 7. The Gauls laid waste the lands which were near the river. 8. The girls were praising the poet whose songs they were singing. 9. We inhabit an island which abounds with all things. 10. By what words, soldiers, shall I overcome your apathy? 11. You are blaming to-day those whom you were praising yesterday. 12. Those things which you have related to us are false. 13. The soldiers whom Caesar placed in winter quarters are laying waste our fields. 14. What shall I give to the woman whose husband is ill? 15. The enemy (pl.) whom we overcame yesterday are besieging the town to-day.

EXERCISE 35.

A.—I. Aliquod carmen recita, poeta. 2. Quidlibet, milites, quisque* rogate. 3. Si a quibus civibus culpor, omnia bona mea consulibus donabo. 4. Aliqui numquam felices sunt. 5. Milites si quos spectavit, spe pradeae incitavit. 6. In hoc bello quidam milites se immolaverunt. 7. Hic poeta quaevis facta carminibus

^{*}Quisque may be used with a plural verb.

celebrat. 8. Haec puella sapientior est quam quisquam vestrum. 9. Si cui condiciones pacis molestae sunt, cives, bellum redintegrate. 10. Aliquod vos, milites, perturbavit. 11. Carmina cuiusdam poetae semper pulchra sunt. 12. Catilina amicos non amavit nec cuiquam carus fuit. 13. Milites, si qui superstites erunt, in hibernis collocabo. 14. Si qui nautae huc errant, suam quisque patriam laudant. 15. Cives aliquos spectavi qui servum, hominem miserrimum, excruciabant.

B.—I. A certain spy brought false tidings (say reported false things) to Caesar. 2. Give me something. I will give you nothing. 3. Poet, read aloud any poem you like. 4. If Caesar besieges any town, he takes it. 5. The dangers of the way are very great and not pleasing to any one. 6. Certain things we shall never tell you. 7. The farmers were ploughing each his own fields. 8. If any slave relates (fut.) these things to the lord, he will be tortured. 9. I gave roses to each girl. 10. Tullia is more beautiful than any of her sisters. 11. The king has got together some ships. 12. Nor will Cicero tell these things to any one. 13. The words of a certain woman dismayed the king. 14. We are praised by all and not blamed by any one. 15. I walked all day in certain woods and did not see any one.

EXERCISE 36.

A.—I. Utinam Lutetiae hodie essem! 2. Utinam ne temerarii fuissetis! 3. Patre nostro, viro fortissimo, digni simus. 4. Ne milites ignavi sint. 5. Noli, regina, patria tua esse indigna. 6. Utinam verba vatis falsa sint! 7. Boni cives semper fuimus; ne hodie perfidi simus. 8. Utinam ne tiliae talis patris essemus! 9. Utinam exploratores mendaces sint! 10. Nolite, poetae, laudis cupidi esse. 11. Utinam, filii mei, in acie Romana heri fuissetis! 12. Miles quondam agricola fuerat. 13. Noli filius stultior patris stulti esse. 14. Utinam, puellae, sapientiores essetis! 15. Ne duces proditores patriae nostrae sint.

B.—1. The boys had been very foolish. 2. Would that we were Roman citizens! 3. Soldiers, do not be boastful. 4. Let not poets be greedy of money. 5. Would that I had not been consul! 6. Women, would that you were men and soldiers! 7. O that the words of the spies might be true! 8. Queen, do not be unmindful of past times. 9. Sailors, do not be rash. 10. Let not friends be treacherous. 11. Would that my sons had been at Paris yesterday! 12. Let us not be unworthy of Caesar's praise. 13. O that the men-of-war might be in the harbour! 14. Boy, do not be talkative. 15. Would that you were not false prophets!

EXERCISE 37.

- A.—1. Nonne Caesar urbi appropinquabat? 2. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 3. Vinumne desideras? 4. Quales libros puero donabo? 5. Emendavitne puer mores? 6. Nonne principes frumentum suppeditaverant? 7. Num feminae regnabunt? 8. Qualem orationem laudaveratis, cives? 9. Cur magister filios medici castigaverat? 10. Nonne rex, homo crudelissimus, legationem nostram repudiabit?
- B.—1. Had not our men always overcome the Greeks? 2. Shall Romans supply corn to the enemies of the Roman people? 3. Do you praise Cicero's orations? 4. By what sort of words had the general stirred up the soldiers? 5. You did not praise treacherous friends, did you? 6. Does not a country life delight farmers and a town life merchants? 7. Why did Caesar reject the embassy of the Gauls? 8. Will you not amend your characters, boys? 9. Shall a king reign at Rome? 10. Did not the gods create all things?

EXERCISE 38.

- A.— 1. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 2. Non ignorabamus cur Romani cum Gallis pugnarent. 3. Rogavi cur cives templum Neptuno aedificarent. 4. Dubitamus quales amicculaudetis. 5. Pueri rogabunt nonne mater aegrotet. 6. Quando consules templa hostium spoliabunt? 7. Duces rogant cur frumentum Gallis suppeditemus. 8. Carmina vestra semper recitatis, poetae. 9. Agricolae rogaverunt num exercitus Gallorum appropinquaret. 10. Agricolae ignorabant quantam praedam ex agris nostri portarent.
- B.—I. The hostages are asking if Caesar is approaching. 2. The captives were asking whether the Roman cavalry were approaching. 3. O queen, the king has asked whether you are sick. 4. The physician asked whether the merchant was sick. 5. The master is not aware what kind of books delight boys. 6. Let us ask what kind of rewards delight soldiers. 7. Tell your mother why I am chastising you. 8. The spies were not unaware how great forces were in our town. 9. Do you not know why the generals are preparing forces? 10. We do not know why the sailors adorn the prows of the ships with garlands.

EXERCISE 39.

A.—I. Mercatores ignorabant quo milites praedam portavissent.
2. Orator narravit cur Catilina coniuravisset.
3. Roga cur pueri lapides iactaverint.
4. Nonne in Italia hiemavistis, milites?

5. Cur mortem filiae non deploravisti? 6. Milites ignorabant quando Galli certamen redintegraturi essent. 7. Agricola rogaverat num servi ararent. 8. Nolite, pueri, lapides iactare. 9. Narra nobis, explorator, ubi sint hostium equites. 10. Utinam signa recuperavissemus!

B.—I. The consul asked why the slaves had conspired. 2. Did you ask why the father did not lament the death of his son? 3. Did not our men fight bravely to-day? 4. We were unaware why the citizens had shouted. 5. The soldiers had asked whether Caesar would winter in Gaul. 6. Would that the spies had counted the forces of the enemy! 7. Generals, you have not recovered the standards, have you? 8. Do you doubt, consuls, why we shouted? 9. Show us what kind of a temple you (pl.) have built. 10. Let us ask whether the tempest has shattered the ships.

EXERCISE 40.

In the case of sentences 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, write down both in Latin and in English the direct form of the dependent statement.

A.—1. Consul negat hostes agros nostros vastavisse. 2. Difficile est vitia superare. 3. Exploratores nuntiaverunt Gallos appropinquare. 4. Verisimile est Caesarem oppidum oppugnaturum esse. 5. Notum omnibus est reginam copias comparaturam esse. 6. Non credibile est Ciceronem erravisse. 7. Certum erat nostros audacissime pugnavisse. 8. Non credibile est magistrum talia laudaturum esse. 9. Facile est amicos amare. 10. Rex negavit reginam aegrotare.

Before translating the following sentences into Latin state with regard to each whether it does or does not contain a dependent statement.

B.—1. Do you ask why it is pleasant to walk in woods? 2. Do you deny, spies, that Caesar has placed his *men* in winter quarters? 3. It is not credible that the girls will blame *their* mother. 4. Announce (pl.) to the citizens that Catilina is preparing forces. 5. You think (do you not?) that the gods created the world? 6. It is probable the boys are mistaken. 7. It is known to all that Caesar will overcome the Gauls. 8. It is not credible that the Gauls will overcome Caesar. 9. Do not deny, sailor, that the storm has shattered the ships. 10. The poet used frequently to say (imperf.) his own poems were worthy of the highest praise.

EXERCISE 41.

A.—I. Omnibus laborandum est. 2. Dux dictitabat laborandum esse omnibus. 3. Spes pugnandi milites confirmavit. 4. Exploratores ducem incitandi causa falsa nuntiaverunt. 5. Vobis, exploratores, vigilandum est. 6. Hodie pugnando hostes superabimus. 7. Cicero cupidinem regnandi saepe culpavit. 8. Hostes appropinquant, milites; nobis festinandum est. 9. Poeta cives delectandi causa carmina recitavit. 10. Signa reciperandi causa bellum redintegremus.

B.—1. Soldiers, you must fight. 2. The desire of reigning has been hurtful to many. 3. Boys, you must work. 4. By watching we shall overcome our vices. 5. Who will deny that spies must keep watch? 6. Caesar prepared forces for the sake of besieging the town. 7. Boys must obey. 8. The pursuit of walking is salutary. 9. The art of educating is difficult. 10. We entered the territories of the Gauls for the sake of renewing the war.

EXERCISE 42.

A.—I. Sacerdotes templum intraverunt taurum Marti immolandi causa. 2. Vita regnantium plena sollicitudinis est. 3. Otium dulce est aegrotantibus. 4. Vinum pugnantibus apportate, ministri. 5. Dux, vir fortissimus, suos in proelium incitabat. 6. Non ignoramus Gallos Romam oppugnaturos esse. 7. Hodie iterum Gallos, homines perfidissimos, superaturi sumus. 8. Noli mortem ducis pugnantibus nuntiare. 9. Saepe mihi in silvis ambulanti de vita humana multa narrabat. 10. Vigilandum est nobis omnibus; Gallos enim nuntiant urbi appropinguare.

B.—1. Our men are destined to overcome the attack of the enemy. 2. Caesar was attacking the town with all his forces. 3. The citizens are about to fight in the market-place. 4. I never give money to those who ask. 5. The anger of lovers (participle) is not always the renewal of love. 6. The shouts of those who were fighting dismayed the citizens. 7. I did not know when the carpenters would strengthen the towers. 8. Caesar is destined to reign. 9. The heat of the sun is annoying to those who are fighting. 10. All are asking whether the king will sacrifice his daughter.

EXERCISE 43.

A.—I. Homines, si valent, felices esse debent. 2. Filios monete, patres. 3. Dux milites in hibernis collocare debebat. 4. Amicos si habemus, omnia habemus. 5. Nisi paremus parentibus, deis non

placemus. 6. Si ille orator orationem habebat, magna turba in foro erat. 7. Patri placere debetis, pueri. 8. Ego taceo, tu loquax es. 9. Si vales, laborare debes. 10. Linguam, puer, coerceto; corpus exerceto.

B.—I. If we do not obey our parents, we are worthy of blame.
2. You ought to have brought true tidings to the leader.
3. Boy, control your tongue.
4. If the soldiers* were frightening the girls, they were worthy of punishment.
5. Cicero was making a speech in the market place.
6. If we injure our friends, we injure them unwittingly.
7. Why used you never to admonish the boy?
8. The boy used never to obey me.
9. Ask this man if he is ill.
10. Boys, be silent.

EXERCISE 44.

A.—r. Minae nautarum puellas terruerant. 2. Nisi ducis mortem omnes celaveritis, cives in officio non retinebitis. 3. Milites impetum hostium multos dies sustinuerant. 4. Cur magister te pecuniam rogavit? Filium meum linguam Latinam docuerat. 5. Virtute vestra, milites, dignitatem rei publicae sustinuistis. 6. Si reginae placuerimus, pecunia numquam egebimus. 7. Num poeta umquam linguam coercuit? 8. Minas Catalinae numquam timueramus. 9. Quomodo legati milites in fide retinuerant? 10. Cives poetam trucidabunt, nisi interdum tacebit.

B.—I. If you did not obey the master, you were very foolish. 2. Cicero himself had taught the boy eloquence. 3. If the farmer exercises his body, he will be well. 4. If you kept the general in ignorance concerning the disaster, you deserved punishment. 5. I had always feared the queen's anger. 6. Consul, unless you control your tongue, you will not please the citizens. 7. If you were in need of all things, why did you not ask me for money? 8. Caesar had with difficulty kept the soldiers in the camp. 9. We had taught the boys the Latin language. 10. How will the consul retain the citizens in their duty?

^{*} Say: "The soldiers, if they were frightening the girls, were worthy of punishment." In a Latin complex sentence the dependent clause is often placed between the subject of the principal sentence and its verb; and if the subject of the clause is the same as that of the principal sentence, it is not expressed, but is understood from the principal sentence. Compare the first sentence in the Latin above (43, A. I).

EXERCISE 45.

A.—1. Ego, si pater essem, filiis bonum exemplum praeberem. 2. Pompeius, si dimicet, praedones superet. 3. Utinam hodie valeremus! 4. Si taceatis, rei publicae noceatis. 5. Dux rogavit num nostri impetum Gallorum sustinerent. 6. Utinam Cicero cives in officio retineat! 7. Legati, si exercitum in castris continerent, consuli non parerent. 8. Si pallerem, cives me ignavum putarent. 9. Cives rogaverunt, poetae, cur numquam taceretis. 10. Si corpus cottidie exerceamus, valeamus.

B.—I. If I were well, I should be fighting in the Roman line to-day. 2. If the men-of-war were to hold on their course, Pompeius would overcome the pirates. 3. Would that Catilina were not injuring the state! 4. Captives, if you were not foolish, you would be silent. 5. The mother asked why the girl was blushing. 6. Your parents would blame you (pl.) if you were to set a bad example to your brothers. 7. If the lieutenants were expecting a rising, they would not be keeping their men in winter quarters. 8. Soldiers, let us obey Caesar's commands. 9. The queen asks where the dead bodies of the leaders are lying. 10. Our men ought not to have robbed the dead bodies of the enemy.

EXERCISE 46.

A.—1. Utinam patres filios litteras docerent! 2. Si corpus exercuissem, non aegrotarem. 3. Utinam dux milites in hibernis continuisset! 4. Caesar rogabit num iussis parueris. 5. Si cladem statim nuntiavissemus, milites stupuissent. 6. Utinam gubernator cursum tenuisset! 7. Utinam tanta praemia meruissemus! 8. Omnes rogant ubi sicarii latuerint. 9. Utinam, poeta, numquam litteris studuisses! 10. Nostri impetum sustinuissent, nisi clamores hostium iumenta perterruissent.

B.—I. If this man had devoted himself to literature, he would have been a very famous poet. 2. If our men had sustained the enemy's charge, the Gauls would not have besieged the camp. 3. Would that I had not displeased my wise father! 4. Would that you (pl.) were not setting a bad example to the citizens' 5. If we had needed money, we should have taught the citizens' sons Latin. 6. If the spies had been silent, our men would have been safe and sound to-day. 7. If you had not blushed, I should have thought you innocent. 8. Soldiers, the general is asking whether you deserved rewards. 9. If we had abstained from acts of violence, we should not have injured the state. 10. The consuls asked if the lieutenant had kept the soldiers in allegiance.

EXERCISE 47.

A.—I. Regina sperat filios suos praemia merituros esse. 2. Militibus notum erat cadaver ducis in ripa laeva fluminis iacere. 3. Omnibus amore monendi displicetis. 4. Dux sperat se hostes perterriturum. 5. Coercendo linguam molestias sacpe vitabis. 6. Fama est anguem nigram duci apparuisse. 7. Caesar negavit suos frumento egere. 8. Consul in foro erat orationem habendi causa. 9. Magister negat se poetam litteras docuisse. 10. Oratores dictitant Gracciam omnibus artibus florere.

B.—1. All must grieve sometimes. 2. The master devoted himself to the art of teaching. 3. The leader announced to the senate that our men had not sustained the charge of the cavalry. 4. The consul denied that he would hold a levy. 5. The desire of having is baneful. 6. The hostages announce that such great calamities have thrown the enemy into a panic. 7. Boys must be silent. 8. We shall give splendid gifts to those who deserve them. 9. Were not the spies hiding on the bank of the river? 10. I shall walk in the woods for the sake of exercising my body.

EXERCISE 48.

A.—1. Intelleximus te in urbe Lutetia esse. 2. Legatos ad Caesarem Athenas mittemus. 3. Ariovistus suos trans flumen Rhenum ducebat. 4. Multi numquam bene scribunt. 5. Bellum in Germanos gerimus. 6. Duces dicebant milites laude dignos esse. 7. Rex fretum ponte iunxit. 8. Nos et fortunas civitatis fidei Caesaris permittimus. 9. Princeps ab urbe Cathagine domum discedebat. 10. Multi fortes ante te vixerunt.

B.—1. I was writing a letter to you yesterday. 2. We shall send hostages to the king in the camp. 3. The general understood that the spies' words were false. 4. There are many very wise men in the city of Corinth. 5. I shall send messengers to my father at Paris. 6. The ambassadors were saying that they were in need of lands. 7. Caesar was bridging (say was joining with a bridge) the river Rhine. 8. Do you not say that our men have sustained the enemy's charge? 9. Tell me, boys, why you do not obey your father. 10. Hostages, you will depart home to-morrow.

EXERCISE 49.

A.—1. Feminis et liberis parcite. 2. Ab Italia ad te scribam. 3. Nonne greges ad montes agitis, pastores? 4. Numquam pueris mendacibus credimus. 5. In ripis fluminis Rheni constitimus. 6. Roma in Galliam contende. 7. Praedones magnam partem

praedae in paludibus reliquerant. 8. Nostri in castra hostium irrumpebant. 9. Vincemus, si copias trans Rhenum duxerimus. 10. Orator domum ab urbe Athenis contendebat.

B.—I. The consuls were hastening from Rome to Carthage.
2. We had halted on the hills. 3. Our men drove the enemy headlong. 4. The cavalry will gradually retire from the battle. 5. Caesar, we did not believe the spies. 6. The leaders send messengers from the camp to the city. 7. Soldiers, leave the baggage and fight.
8. The enemy were breaking into our camp. 9. I shall depart from Italy to-morrow. 10. We fell upon the enemy in the woods.

EXERCISE 50.

A.—1. Dux militibus imperavit ut e portis castrorum erumperent.
2. Utinam nostri vicissent! 3. Dux principes monebit ne Germanos trans Rhenum ducant. 4. Dicite mihi, milites, cur e castris eruperitis. 5. Vos monemus, pueri, ne tanta pericula contemnatis. 6. Utinam mihi crederes! 7. Servis pecuniam donabo ut vinum emant. 8. Si epistolam legissem, Athenas ex Italia contendissem. 9. Iussis meis parete, milites, ut hostes vincatis. 10. Dux suis imperavit ut inermibus parcerent.

B.—I. The senate ordered the consuls to wage war against the Germans. 2. Caesar is holding a levy in order to send an army into Switzerland. 3. Beware lest the spies invent false tidings. 4. Would that the storms had not dashed the ships of war on the shore! 5. Cicero asks why we believed the slave. 6. I ordered my son to send a letter to Caesar at Marseilles. 7. If we had led our men across the river, we should have conquered the enemy. 8. I begged Catilina not to hasten to Rome. 9. The spies advise us not to bridge the river. 10. The Gauls prepared forces in order to drive us out of Gaul.

EXERCISE 51.

A.--1. Castra muro et turribus dextra laevaque munient. 2. Caesar ex captivis comperit magnas copias hostium convenisse. 3. Omnes sciunt reginam cras Romam venturam esse. 4. Parentes filios puniunt ut mores emendent. 5. Cupido dormiendi milites superavit. 6. Clamores magni exercitus audiveramus. 7. Captivos vinximus, milites, ne portas castrorum clauderent. 8. Nostri totis castris custodicbant. 9. Scitis Gallos Massiliam, urbem opulentissimam, terra marique munire. 10. Castra munientibus ardor solis molestus est.

B.—I. The exiles had come from the flourishing city of Marseilles. 2. We found a suitable place in order to pitch a camp. 3. We know that the Gauls are fortifying the towns by land and sea. 4. Cicero's speech was pleasing to those who heard. 5. Tomorrow we shall come to the renowned city of Athens. 6. The Gauls denied that they had come to an understanding with the enemies of the Roman people. 7. They buried the dead body of the leader in the middle of the wood. 8. We opened the gates of the camp that our men might not fight a pitched battle in an unfavourable place. 9. Bind the captives, soldiers; bury the dead bodies. 10. Boy, have you slept all night (say the whole night)?

EXERCISE 52.

A.—r. Tam perfidi sunt principes Gallorum ut cum hostibus suorum consenserint. 2. Adeo stulti erant milites ut portas castrorum aperuissent. 3. Tantus fuit pavor militum ut legatos catenis vincirent. 4. Caesar Massiliam advenit ut proditores puniat. 5. Nolite cadavera hostium sepelire. 6. Milites tam fessi erant ut in stationibus dormirent. 7. Utinam vera ex exploratoribus comperisses! 8. Caesaris oratio tam diserta fuit ut animos militum molliret. 9. Tantus pavor tota urbe est ut cives portas aperiant. 10. Accidit ut Cicero verba proditorum audivisset.

B.—I. The ambassadors were so eloquent that they mitigated the anger of the multitude. 2. The soldiers are so tired that they have slept all day. 3. The attack of the cavalry was so sudden that our men had not yet fortified the camp. 4. It happens that we have got the start of the enemy by a shorter way. 5. The leader had halted in order to bury the dead bodies. 6. Would that you had arrived yesterday, my friends! 7. So great was the uproar that the soldiers did not hear the leader's voice. 8. I have come to Rome to find a friend. 9. So great was the panic at Athens that no one slept. 10. Would that my father had punished me when I was a boy!

EXERCISE 53.

A.—1. Effecimus ut nemo fugere cuperet. 2. Quid cupitis? Cupimus proditorem interficere. 3. Senatus Caesarem legionibus praeficiet. 4. Pavor tam repentinus erat ut nostri ad unum fugerent. 5. Milites arma corripiebant et ad portas currebant.

- 6. Nostri tela in fugientes iaciebant. 7. Vix fuga salutem nobis pariemus. 8. Caesar legatos rogabit num pacem cupiant. 9. Hostes incolas oppidi interficiebant nec inermibus parcebant. 10. Caesar conventum Massiliae egit ut consilium de motu Gallorum caperet.
- B.—I. Caesar had set lieutenants over the legions. 2. The enemy, shaking their shields and throwing javelins, were falling upon our men. 3. Our men immediately snatch up arms. 4. We shall do everything (say all things) to satisfy you. 5. We were killing the captives lest they should flee. 6. The queen besought the gods that she might bring forth a son. 7. Bind (pl.) the slaves lest they kill their lord. 8. Soldiers, I command you to snatch up your arms. 9. Caesar was taking council concerning the safety of the state. 10. We know that Catilina desires riches before all things.

EXERCISE 54.

- A.—1. Utrum a rege an a regina culpabare? 2. Utrum consilio an casu mundus creatus est? 3. Utrum minis an praemiis superabamini, consules? 4. Utrum factis an verbis delectaris, regina? 5. Utrum gladio an sagitta vulneratus es, imperator? 6. Utrum ab hostibus an a nostris agri agricolarum vastabantur? 7. Utrum aestate an hieme vita rustica delectamur? 8. Utrum terra a. mari urbs oppugnabitur? 9. Utrum Romae an Massiliae consules exspectantur? 10. Utrum retibus an sagittis apri superati sunt?
- B.—1. Had true or false *tidings* been brought by the spies? 2. Shall we be loved by friends or by enemies? 3. Soldiers, will the fame of the Roman legions be extended by valour or by cowardice? 4. Had cavalry or infantry been got together by the consul? 5. Was the flourishing city of Marseilles built by Greeks or by Romans? 6. Boys, are you being educated at Athens or at Rome? 7. Slaves, were you being overcome by soldiers or by sailors? 8. Will the Gallic war be carried on by Caesar or by the consuls? 9. Shall we be assaulted by the friends or by the enemies of the Roman people? 10. Had the camp been strengthened by a wall or by an earthwork?

EXERCISE 55.

A.—1. Rogamus utrum factis an verbis regina delectetur. 2. Dubito, consules, utrum minis an praemiis superati sitis. 3. Non dubitabamus quin Romani superaturi essent. 4. Cicero rogat

utrum consilio an casu mundus factus sit. 5. Non dubitamus quin omnia a deis creata sint. 6. Roga utrum Romae an Massiliae consules exspectentur. 7. Dubium erat utrum retibus an sagitis apri superati essent. 8. Non dubium erat quin castra fossa firmarentur. 9. Agricolae rogant utrum a nostris an a Gallis agri vastentur. 10. Nemo est quin aestate vita rustica delectetur.

B.—1. It was doubtful whether true or false tidings had been brought by the spies. 2. Tell me, boys, whether you are being educated at Athens or at Rome. 3. Poet, Cicero is asking whether you were educated at Marseilles or at Carthage. 4. There was no doubt but that the walls were being shattered by the battering-ram. 5. Catilina, I ask whether you are loved by the friends or by the enemies of the Roman people. 6. We asked whether kings or consuls had been elected (creo) at Rome. 7. There was no one who was not dismayed by so great a disaster. 8. No one knew whether we had been overcome by force or by guile. 9. Caesar asked whether the war was being managed by himself or by his men. 10. There was no doubt but that the merchant-vessels had been fastened at (ad) anchor.

EXERCISE 56.

A.—1. Ariovistus magnis copiis comparatis suos trans flumen Rhenum duxit. 2. Speramus urbem mox expugnatum iri. 3. Donis splendidis a regina honorabere, poeta. 4. Muro ariete quassato nostri in urbem irruperunt. 5. Caesar Germanis superatis in Galliam contendit. 6. Nostri arce expugnata urbem ceperunt. 7. Exploratoribus in silvis collocatis numerum hostium comperiemus. 8. Obsides negaverunt suos clade perturbari. 9. Vastatis Gallorum agris Caesar copias in Italiam reduxit. 10. Legatis convocatis Caesar consilia aperuit.

B.—1. The ships having been fastened at anchor, Caesar landed his men. 2. The body of the general having been burned, the lieutenant delivered a short speech in the presence of the soldiers. 3. A council having been summoned, Caesar narrates the disaster to his men. 4. You believe, do you not, that the world was created by the gods? 5. They shall (use imperative) be praised by the good and blamed by the bad. 6. This opinion having been approved by all, the general made it known that the citadel would be besieged. 7. The men-of-war having been shattered by the storm, our men are vainly awaiting reinforcements. 8. The city having been

stormed, our men slew the citizens. 9. Having cheered the minds of the soldiers, Caesar hastens against the enemy. 10. The disaster having been announced, panic seized our *men*.

EXERCISE 57.

- A.—I. Animi civium verbis gratis confirmandi sunt. 2. Duces pronuntiaverunt praedam pugnantibus reservandam csse. 3. Habetis, milites, occasionem pristinae famae reciperandae. 4. Virtutem ante omnia cupiendam esse putamus. 5. Caesar nuntios Romam misit ad cladem nuntiandam. 6. Dux suos confirmavit spe belli redintegrandi. 7. In litore cottidie ambulo causa valetudinis conservandae. 8. Principes sollicitandis et perturbandis Gallorum animis motum universum comparabant. 9. Omnes dicunt Pompeium in Italiam contendisse causa classis comparandae. 10. Putamus fortunam belli hodie non iterum tentandam esse.
- B.—1. Soldiers, the citadel must be stormed to-day. 2. Ariovistus was instigating his subjects to (ad) reject the rule of the Roman people. 3. He said he had a plan for (say of) liberating the state. 4. He hastens into Gaul for the sake of summoning a council. 5. In the Gallic war the valour of the soldiers was greatly to be praised. 6. The Carthaginians entrusted to Hannibal the chief responsibility of carrying on the war. 7. The spies hid in the woods for the sake of numbering the enemy. 8. Our men greatly injured the enemy by laying waste their fields. 9. The words of the lieutenant were adapted to (ad) cheer the soldiers' minds. 10. Let us send a ship to Carthage to (ad) bring back Hannibal.

EXERCISE 58.

- A.—1. Cum auxilia ad castra pervenerint, nostri magno clamore in hostes irrumpent. 2. Nuntii dicunt naves in portu tempestate retentas esse. 3. Cum dux cladem nuntiaverit, milites perterrebuntur. 4. Crassi auctoritas divitiis magnis augebatur. 5. Cives obsessa urbe pacem oraverunt. 6. Caesar pronuntiavit praedam deletum iri. 7. Cum comitia habita erunt, Caesar in Galliam contendet. 8. Magister multa dixit causa pueri monendi. 9. Insula mari undique continetur. 10. A stultis sapientes habemini.
- B.—1. When he dies he will be praised by all. 2. They say the earth moves (pass.) round the sun. 3. My sons shall be taught (imperative) by the wisest masters. 4. The elections having been held, Caesar departed from Rome. 5. When the city is stormed, it will be destroyed. o. I used to swim in the sea daily for the

sake of exercising my body. 7. When he is at Rome, he is taught by Cicero. 8. We know that the minds of all will be stirred by the words of the ambassadors. 9. All the hills were being held by the enemy. 10. When you have beheld the dead body of the leader, you will be deeply moved.

EXERCISE 59.

- A.—1. Cum eloquentiam doceremur, orationem cottidie apud magistrum habebamus. 2. Milites rogaverunt cur praeda deleta esset. 3. Utinam ab amicis amemur, ab hostibus timeamur! 4. Cum milites coerciti et in officio contenti essent, Caesar Romam discessit. 5. Utinam linguam Latinam doctus esses! 6. Rogemus, commilitones, cur in castris a duce ignavo retineamur. 7. Cum ab omnibus timerer, infelicissimus hominum eram. 8. Si sapiens esses, iram cohiberes. 9. Hostes impetum repentinum facient, ut perterreamini. 10. Cum oppidum terra marique obsideretur, cives Caesarem auxilium oraverunt.
- B.—1. When the city had been destroyed, the general distributed the booty among his men. 2. Tell me, leaders, whether you are loved or feared. 3. When the elections had been held, the consuls sent reinforcements to Caesar. 4. I sent my sons to Rome to be taught eloquence by Cicero. 5. The soldiers ask why the merchant-vessels are kept in harbour. 6. When the enemy had been thrown into a panic, our men charged. 7. If the ships had not been kept in the harbour, we should have overcome the pirates. 8. As soon as the enemy had been put to flight, the general called his men back. 9. He gave orders to the soldiers that the camp should be moved. 10. Would that you might be advised to obey your father!

EXERCISE 60

- A.—1. Urbes a Gallis incendebantur, ne a nostris oppugnarentur.
 2. Catilina intellexit se ab omnibus deseri.
 3. Non opus est verbis : tibi nec creditur nec credendum est.
 4. Hodie victi sumus; crasvincemus.
 5. Tibi ab omnibus fautum est, quia ab omnibus diligeris.
 6. Legati ad Caesarem mittentur, quod militibus frumento opus est.
 7. Naves subducuntur, quod hiems appropinquat.
 8. Caesar obsidibus adductis suos trans flumen reduxit.
 9. Dux pronuntiavit praedam omnem incensum iri.
 10. Exploratoribus creditum est, quod falsa numquam nuntiaverant.
- B.—1. The ships having been beached, the camp is pitched on the shore. 2. The leader led back his men into Italy, because a

great part of the summer had been spent. 3. You (pl.) are esteemed by many, but you are envied by Catilina. 4. Our men will be conquered, since the line of battle is being drawn up in an unfavour able place. They say that the river Rhine will be bridged by Caesar. 6. Cavalry, you will be left in Gaul, because there is need of a garrison. 7. The gates are being shut because the enemy are approaching. 8. They say that the camp has been pitched on a hill. 9. We were being driven out of Gaul because reinforcements had not arrived. 10. The corn having been consumed, our men are in need of supplies.

EXERCISE 61.

A.—1. Cum magna pars aestatis in bello gerendo consumpta esset, Galli pacem orabant. 2. Caesar intellexit cur talia dicerentur. 3. Naves, cum subductae essent, tempestate non quassatae sunt. 4. Exploratores dixerunt se falsa nuntiavisse quod numquam sibi crederetur. 5. Vincite, milites, ne vincamini. 6. Nostri dixerunt se victos esse quod acies loco iniquo instructa esset. 7. Cum vici undique incenderentur, intelleximus hostes agros suos vastare. 8. Caesar imperavit ut naves longae postero die deducerentur. 9. Captivos laudavi quod amicos non tradidissent. 10. Utinam a bono rege regeremur!

B.—I. As the Roman legions have been disbanded, you have an opportunity, Gauls, of recovering your liberty. 2. We destroyed the bridge in order that the leader might be cut off from the army. 3. As the towns were being burned on all sides by the enemy, our men were in need of provisions. 4. O that we may always be esteemed by the citizens! 5. Tell me, citizens, why you believed the traitors. 6. There is no doubt that the towns are being burned by the Gauls. 7. When a great part of the day had now been spent, the general led back his forces into the camp. 8. Caesar asked whether the hostages had been brought. 9. He ordered that the hostages should be led into Italy. 10. There is no doubt that you are being deserted by all.

EXERCISE 62.

A.—I. Artibus liberalibus, Marce, Athenis erudiere. 2. Etsi artibus liberalibus eruditus es, mores tui non emolliti sunt. 3. Quamquam insontes sumus, in carcere custodimur. 4. Cives speraverunt legatos non auditum iri. 5. Quamquam portae apertae erant, nemo ex urbe excessit. 6. Etsi scelera multa admisimus, a iudicibus iniustis non puniemur. 7. Castra fossa

et vallo munientur. 8. Hostes intellexerunt castra a nostris egregie munita esse. 9. Custodiemini, sicarii; opus est testibus. 10. Loco idoneo reperto castra posita sunt.

B.—I. Although the citadel had been admirably fortified, nevertheless it will be stormed by Caesar. 2. On hearing their leader's words (§ 212, Obs.), our men shouted. 3. The captives escaped, although they had been bound and were being guarded by soldiers. 4. They say that the character is refined by the liberal arts. 5. The dead body of the traitor was never found. 6. Although we are not heard by you to-day, we shall nevertheless be heard to-morrow. 7. Leaders, send reinforcements to us for the sake of guarding the citadel. 8. The boys were being punished, although they said that they were innocent. 9. Having disclosed his plan (§ 212), Caesar gave orders that all should quit the camp. 10. I believe that the camp will be fortified to-morrow.

EXERCISE 63.

A.—r. Quamvis erraverit, fratris sui minas non timet. 2. Puer, quamvis saepissime peccavisset, rogavit cur puniretur. 3. Num rogas, puer, cur puniare? 4. Si filius meus esses, saepius punitus esses. 5. Cum milites fessi sint, dux imperat ut castra muniantur. 6. Etsi vita nostra omnino morte finiatur, tamen bene vivamus. 7. Quamvis a iudicibus iniustis non puniti sitis, tamen aliquando puniemini. 8. Regina inperavit, puellae, ut vestibus albis vestiremini. 9. Barbari cadaver ducis abripuerunt, ne sepeliretur. 10. Utinam obsidibus nostris a rege parcatur!

B.—1. If the ship holds on her course, we shall come safe into harbour to-morrow. 2. Ambassadors, Caesar commands you to depart. 3. Even if you had been innocent, you would have been punished. 4. May our life not be wholly ended by death! 5. Although the king had ordered the dead bodies to be buried, nevertheless they were burnt. 6. Tell me, consuls, why the elections have not yet been held. 7. Even if you had devoted yourself to the liberal arts, your character would not have been refined. 8. If the boys had been punished oftener, they would be wiser. 9. Although the camp has not been fortified, it will not be stormed by a cowardly leader. 10. The Britons are so uncivilised that they are clothed with skins.

EXERCISE 64.

A.—1. Cum incendia undique conspicerentur, timebamus ne hostes agros nostros vastarent. 2. Timemus ut bellum mox conficiatur. 3. Obsides timebant ne tela in castra iacerentur. 4. Cives

capta urbe ad unum interfecti sunt. 5. Vates dixerat urbem postero die captum iri. 6. Nonne timebas ne civium bona diriperentur? 7. Timebamus, legati, ut incolumes perveniretis. 8. Caesar consilium urbis capiendae aperuit. 9. Pater tuus timet ne sapientia deficiaris. 10. Cives timent ne a duce hostium interficiantur.

B.—1. Caesar having been slain by the traitors, we have need of a leader. 2. We fear that the enemy's camp will not be pillaged by our men. 3. We feared that we should be killed by the assassins. 4. Riches are desired by all. 5. Caesar commanded that the menof-war should be repaired. 6. He feared lest we should be seriously affected by the leader's words. 7. Do you fear, leaders, that we are lacking in valour? 8. They say the infantry have been slain to a man. 9. I fear that women will always be lacking in judgment and reason. 10. There is no doubt that our camp was pillaged by the enemy.

EXERCISE 65.

A.—1. Milites cohortare, Caesar, ut virtutem pristinam retineant.
2. Dux, haec ita eventura esse suspicatus, omnia antea comparaverat.
3. Tu vereris ne puer haec conetur, ego vereor ut conetur.
4. Femina gavisa est quod filius haec facere ausus erat.
5. Rex pollicetur se in itinere non commoraturum esse.
6. Verebar ne illis pecuniam pollicerere.
7. Dux nos cohortabatur ne pabulandi causa longius vagaremur.
8. Nonne tu haec conari ausus es quae ego saepissime feci?
9. Tibi pecuniam magnam pollicitus te vera nuntiaturum arbitratus sum.
10. Hic casus dextram eius gladium educere conantis moratus est.

B.—I. The leader was promising money to the soldiers. 2. Our men did not dare to quit the standards. 3. Caesar led his men across the river for the sake of foraging. 4. Spies, reconnoitre the enemy's camp. 5. He left Crassus in Gaul to defend the harbours. 6. The Britons promise to surrender the town to him. 7. Fearing lest through their initiative the whole state should fall away, he bade the legions winter there. 8. The Gauls, thinking that Caesar had departed, promised that they would attack the Roman camp. 9. A few, who had escaped from the battle, were attempting to reach the camp by uncertain routes. 10. Will you not admit, citizens, that you owe all things to him?

EXERCISE 66.

A.—I. Pedites se sequi iussit. 2. Rogo, puer, cur donis deorum abutaris. 3. Dux verebatur ne sui Gallos longius insequerentur.

4. Haec regi dicite, filii mei, ne irascatur. 5. Galli, Caesarem in

Italiam profectum esse arbitrati, liberatem reciperare conantur. 6. Suspicor, exploratores, vos ducem vestrum prodere. 7. Non dubium erat quin nostri Gallos longius persecuti essent. 8. Pater me monuit ut pecunia bene utar. 9. Dicite nobis, equites, cur hostes fugatos non persecuti sitis. 10. Num officio functus es quo te functurum esse pollicitus es?

B.—1. Why do you use Greek characters? 2. The Britons fed on milk and flesh. 3. Having discharged this duty, we shall enjoy ease. 4. Certain men, having escaped from the battle, reached the camp on the same day. 5. Caesar will set out to-morrow with a light-armed legion into the enemy's territories. 6. We did not dare to pursue the Gauls further. 7. Let us use the gifts of the gods well. 8. The leader sent certain men to the enemy for the sake of parleying. 9. When he had said this (say these things), he set out for Rome. 10. When he had put the enemy to flight, our men burnt the neighbouring towns.

EXERCISE 67.

A.—1. Romae natus est, Carthagini mortuus est. 2. Vereor ne hostes equitibus nostris fugatis castra adoriantur. 3. Nonne omnibus aliquando moriendum est? nonne pro patria moriturus sum? 4. Commilitones, ibi opperimini ut Britannos adoriamini. 5. Spero hostes castris non potituros. 6. Mater non patietur filiam e complexu suo eripi. 7. Milites veriti sunt ne dux fortunam belli iterum eodem die experiretur. 8. Bellum quod in Gallia ortum est a Caesare administrabitur. 9. Rex, cum se moriturum esse intellexisset, omnia sua inter filios partitus est. 10. Cur tam exiguam manum adoriri non audemus?

B.—I. The brave die once, the cowardly very often. 2. Will not Caesar try the fortune of war a second time? 3. There is no doubt that the queen is dead. 4. Comrades, let us not advance further, let us wait here. 5. Would that the enemy had not gained possession of the standards! 6. We shall die for our native land. 7. The leader was angry because his men were advancing too far. 8. Will you (pl.) suffer the enemy to set foot in your camp? 9. The lieutenants were daily measuring out corn to the soldiers, fearing it would fail altogether. 10. Caesar orders the lieutenants to collect all their forces (use abl. abs.) and attack the camp unexpectedly.

EXERCISE 68.

A.—1. Nonne saltare potestis, puellae? Possumus. 2. Impetum hostium sustinere non poteramus. 3. Verba ducis prae clamoribus

militum audire non potuimus. 4. Epistolam, si potero, cras ad te mittam. 5. Exploratores negaverunt se castra hostium speculari potuisse. 6. Nostri retineri non potuerunt quin pontem dirimerent. 7. Dux rogat num sui signa reciperare potuerint. 8. Nihil obstat quin naves cras deducantur. 9. Spero me duci persuasurum ut civibus parcat. 10. Dubitari non potest quin dei animos hominum flectere possint.

B.—1. Will you be able to accompany me to-morrow? I shall. 2. Were you able to persuade the boy to learn these verses by heart? I was not. 3. We cannot give you what you ask. 4. I was not able to understand many things which I learned by heart as a boy. 5. The lieutenant wrote to Caesar that he could not without great danger lead the legion out of winter quarters. 6. The soldiers could not be restrained from charging the enemy. 7. What prevents our being able to set out to-morrow? 8. We should have done this if we had been able. 9. I have no doubt that Caesar can bridge the river. 10. What hindered you from being able to send me a letter?

EXERCISE 69.

A.—I. Vos afuistis, nos autem affuimus. 2. Si poterimus, patriae proderimus. 3. Dicunt Catilinam illo die vel consilio vel casu afuisse. 4. Opperiemur dum custodes discedant. 5. Dum adsumus, non audet loqui. 6. Utinam heri in senatu affuisses! 7. Sapiens omnibus vel amicis vel hostibus prodesse debet. 8. Dicite mihi, milites, utrum Crassus an Labienus legioni praesit. 9. Multis rebus interfui quibus deesse non potui. 10. Caesar, dum naves exspectat, aedificia quae supererant diremit.

B.—1. I have always benefited the state, but you have injured it. 2. Were you present or absent, Catilina? 3. As long as he lives, he will never do good to the state. 4. So many ships had been sent to Britain that few were left in the harbour. 5. I hope Labienus will be at the head of the legion. 6. As long as Caesar is present in Gaul, the states will not dare to fall away. 7. The Gauls were begging for peace on the ground that a very small part of the summer was left. 8. I shall do nothing until you are present. 9. But we are in the midst of so many dangers that nothing can benefit either you or me. 10. Unless Caesat himself had been at the head of the legions, no one of us would have been living to-day.

EXERCISE 70.

- A.—1. Postquam istam epistolam accepi, domum statim proficisci quam Romae manere malui. 2. Si regredi vis, statim discede. 3. Nemo est quin rei publicae obesse nolit. 4. Vultisne, pueri, carmina huius poetae ediscere? Nolumus. 5. Nolite, cives, vobis magis quam rei publicae consulere. 6. Postquam intellexi eum proficisci nolle, rogavi cur domi manere mallet. 7. Postquam exploratores haec nuntiaverunt, ducem rogavimus num in castra hostium nocturnum impetum facere vellet. 8. Utinam Caesar voluisset me legionibus praeficere! 9. Postquam intellexit se mortiferum vulnus accepisse, dixit se mori malle quam vivere. 10. Utinam, cives, semper nolitis rei publicae obesse!
- B.—1. Tell us, boys, what you prefer to do. 2. On perceiving this, he was unwilling to advance further. 3. We wish to do all that we can. 4. He prefers to consult his own interest rather than that of the state. 5. Would that Catilina had preferred to benefit his country! 6. After Caesar had gone away, the soldiers were unwilling to winter in Gaul. 7. Do not attack the enemy's towns while Caesar is absent. 8. The leader asked whether the soldiers were willing to follow him. 9. They answered that they were willing and had always been willing. 10. Who doubts that we are willing and have always been willing to follow you?

EXERCISE 71.

- A.—1. Peditibus auxilium afferte, equites. 2. Bellum populo Romano sine causa intulistis. 3. Naves onerariae longius aestu delata erant. 4. Legati se ad suos haec relaturos esse dixerunt. 5. Rogemus cur Gallis bellum intulerint. 6. Barbari ante pedem rettulerunt quam nostri impetum facerent. 7. Signa conferte, pedem referre nolite. 8. Ferunt Caesarem frumentum ex agris contulisse. 9. Non prius bellum inferemus quam haec ad hostes deferantur. 10. Tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut naves eodem unde erant profectae referrentur.
- B.—1. Why do you put off your journey? 2. Every one is asking why you are putting off your journey. 3. The master took those books of yours away because (as he thought) they were harmful to boys. 4. I bade the slave take away the things he had brought. 5. Let water be brought for extinguishing the fire (ad with gerundive construction). 6. Caesar will make war upon the Gauls before the Germans can bring aid. 7. Having weighed anchor (abl. abs.), he set sail. 8. Caesar ordered his lieutenants to bring him aid. 9.

Caesar briefly harangued his men before he ordered the standards to be borne against the enemy. 10. Hostilities must not be begun before these things can be reported to the senate.

EXERCISE 72.

A.—r. Quid faciamus? Hostes coeunt, nostri pereunt. 2. Utinam legati redeant! Utinam ne abiissent! 3. Utrum casu an consilio haec fiunt? 4. Poeta Romam ibat filium visum. 5. Abeamus ne peiora fiant. 6. Omnia parata sunt ad flumen transeundum. 7. Dic nobis quae Romae hodie fiant. 8. Athenas ivissem, nisi consul factus essem. 9. Redite, legati, eo unde profecti estis. 10. Nonne scis te eo abiturum unde nemo umquam rediit?

B.—I. What were we to do? Whither were we to go? 2. The boy has gone out to play. When will he return? 3. Will Catilina become consul? I hope he will never become consul. 4. Caesar is reported to have crossed the river Rhine with large forces. 5. He said he would not go away before the ambassadors returned. 6. Who will go to ask Caesar for pardon? 7. I will show you what I am willing to do. 8. You will cross the river, my sons, when you return home. 9. If you had returned earlier, you would have become consul. 10. My sons had gone to Rome in order to become Cicero's pupils.

EXERCISE 73.

A.—1. Stultum iuvat de se loqui. 2. Oportet omnes tempore bene uti. 3. Avaritiae tuae patrem tuum taeduit. 4. Oportuit te cum hostium duce colloqui. 5. Nonne reginae, mulieris miserrimae, te miseret? 6. Quid dicam ut te stultitiae tuae vel pudeat vel poeniteat? 7. Accidit ut illo die in senatu adessem. 8. Licet stulto semper loqui, sapientem autem oportet cogitare quae sibi sint dicenda. 9. Utinam mihi contigisset filium sapientem habere! 10. Legati rogaverunt num sibi discedere liceret.

B.—1. Is it not your good luck to have many friends? 2. You ought to have consulted the interest of the state rather than that of your friends. 3. You will be permitted to do such things, but a Roman citizen will not. 4. Your father is disgusted at your crimes. 5. If it rains to-morrow, I shall remain at home. 6. Why do you ask if it is seemly for women to fight in line of battle? 7. He said he pitied the captives. 8. It is thundering to-day, yesterday it was snowing. 9. May you some day be ashamed of such pursuits! 10. I fear I shall not be allowed to go away from Rome.

EXERCISE 74.

- A.—1. Nostra interest hanc navem cras deduci. 2. Militum maximi interest ducem peritum esse. 3. Quid mea refert utrum me ames an oderis? 4. Catilinae magni intererat ut Cicero interficeretur. 5. Nostra parvi refert te haec meminisse. 6. Num tua interest quot naves comparatae sint? 7. Mea, inquit, maximi refert Ciceronem fieri consulem. 8. Quid nostra plurimi referat nobis solum notum est. 9. Caesaris maximi interest ut facultas pugnandi hostibus detur. 10. Dixit bellum producere hostium maximi interesse.
- B.—I. It is of very little consequence to me that all will hate me. 2. Was it not of importance to you to remember this? 3. We think it of the greatest importance to sailors to know how to swim. 4. It is of more consequence to everybody (omnes) to blame their own vices than to blame those of others. 5. What is of more importance to us than so to live that we can die without fear? 6. "It is of the greatest consequence," said he, "both to you and to the state that these things should happen (say be done) thus." 7. Do not remember how important it is to you that these things should happen thus: remember only of how much consequence it is to the state. 8. Of what consequence is it to a wise man whether death is the end or the beginning of all things? 9. Doctors say that it is not to their interest that their friends should always be well. 10. Was it of more consequence to me or to Caesar that the Gallic war should be protracted?

EXERCISE 75.

- A.—1. Hic longe nobilissimus et ditissimus omnium Gallorum est. 2. Ne pessimi quidem hominum omnino mali sunt. 3. Vix credibile est te hac sententia stare malle. 4. Legati contra dixerunt se frustra conatos esse de his rebus certiores fieri. 5. Unde venisti? Inde veni unde tu nuper regressus es. 6. Tum repente conclamatum est, et strepitus quasi magnae multitudinis auditus est. 7. Nusquam tam difficulter agri coluntur. 8. Me iuvabit laboribus parumper vacare. 9. Omnia quibus ad proximum diem opus est noctu comparentur. 10. Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam approbabas.
- B.—1. Then at length our men, thrown into panic by the novel kind of fighting, turned their backs. 2. I acknowledge those things to be true, but these are not to be believed. 3. The enemy, having delayed a little while, charged our men a second time. 4. Not even

Caesar will persist in this plan, when he had been informed about these things. 5. When the din was heard, the cavalry, who were not far distant, hastened thither. 6. Not even savages would have done such things on purpose. 7. There was severe fighting on both sides. 8. I fear that the matter will turn out badly. 9. There was running hither and thither. 10. I will now say openly what I have thought secretly.

EXERCISE 76.

- A.—I. Saepius tibi indulsisti. 2. Patrem tuum Carthagini nuperrime vidi. 3. Scelerum multorum saepissime accusatus numquam condemnatus est. 4. Cave ne amici tui hoc postea aegerrime ferant. 5. Num diutius manere nos oportet? 6. Magis factis quam verbis delector. 7. Caesar rogavit quis apud Germanos plurimum auctoritatis haberet. 8. Quid morte minus timendum est fortibus? 9. Me avaritiac arguunt: minime qualis homo sim sciunt. 10. De his rebus copiosissime, de illis brevissime, de omnibus optime locutus est.
- B.—I. The fight was very fierce and very long. 2. I am greatly delighted that (say because) that friend of yours has been condemned for bribery. 3. Caesar ordered his men not to remain longer in the camp. 4. Cicero has said all these things excellently. 5. This man had the greatest influence among (apuā) the Gauls. 6. Have you forgotten those things which you promised very recently? 7. No one can always indulge himself with impunity. 8. You dance better than your brother. 9. I go to Rome more frequently than to Athens. 10. The wolf bit the hunter very fiercely.

EXERCISE 77.

A.—I. Decem milia peditum et mille equites in Gallia conscripsit. 2. Milites tertiae decimae legionis fossam quingentos quadraginta pedes longam perduxerunt. 3. Emi hodie libros tres, primum magno, secundum pluris, tertium minoris. 4. Legionem quartam decimam praesidio impedimentis reliquit. 5. Aggerem pedes trecentos triginta longum, pedes octoginta altum exstruxit. 6. Cum iam triginta milia passum ab urbe abesset, castra posuit. 7. Tredecim milia peditum et equites octingentos comparavit. 8. Duas fossas quindecim pedes latas, undecim altas, centum quadraginta duos longas perducebat. 9. Castra turribus circumdedit, quae pedes centum septuaginta inter se distabant. 10. Militum milibus quinquaginta et principibus ducentis uno proelio interfectis diutius resistere non possumus.

B.—I. There were a thousand cavalry and three thousand infantry in the army of the Gauls. 2. He lingered twenty-five days in that place, waiting for (say until he should get) suitable weather. 3. Having himself advanced by night nine miles (say nine thousand paces), he came in sight of the enemy's camp. 4. He bestowed praise especially on the soldiers of the seventeenth legion. 5. Caesar said that the island of Britain was eight hundred miles long. 6. On the fifth day he raised an earthwork sixteen feet high, two hundred and twenty-one feet long. 7. At what price do you sell a dozen eggs? At a small price, but at more than yesterday. 8. He surrounds the winter quarters by a rampart nine feet high and a trench fifteen feet wide. 9. Having quitted the camp at the third hour, they advanced on that day thirty miles. 10. The first said he valued the sword at a very high price, the second at less, the third at very little.

EXERCISE 78.

A.—1. Copiae hostium prope castra iam constiterant. 2. Propter inopiam frumenti et ob alias causas legiones inter plures civitates distribuit. 3. Nihil praeter spem nobis relictum est. 4. Dixit se et suos penes Caesarem esse. 5. Intra fossam murum aedificaverunt, in quo saxa magni ponderis collocabant. 6. Benevolentiae tuae erga nos non obliviscemur. 7. Pauci nostrorum qui extra munitiones pabulandi causa progressi erant hostes effugerunt. 8. Caesar auxilia pone castra in silvis collocavit. 9. Ipse intermi aciem legionum quattuor veteranarum in colle instruxerat, ita ut supra se duas legiones quas nuperrime cis Rhodanum conscripserat collocaret. 10. Obsides eorum penes nos mox crunt.

B.—1. The Gauls who dwell on the other side of the Rhine differ among themselves in language, customs, and laws. 2. The soldiers being excited because of that circumstance (res), there was very fierce fighting all day. 3. The Germans attempted to march through our province. 4 Construct (pl.) a trench of sixteen feet around the winter quarters. 5. There was left one way through Gaul, by which (qua) on account of its narrowness they could not go, if the Gauls were unwilling (use abl. abs.). 6. These people are outside the province on the other side of the Rhone. 7. The ambassadors show that nothing beyond the soil of the ground (ager) has been left to them. 8. After this victory Caesar accomplished a twenty days' march across the river. 9. He left two legions on this side of the river to construct a trench eighteen feet wide and of very great depth. 10. He placed all the cavalry to the number of three thousand near the camp.

EXERCISE 79.

- A.-I. Num ea coram populo affirmare ausus es? 2. Hostes haud procul porta Collina castra posuerunt. 3. Curate, cives, ut illis praemium propter virtutem detur. 4. Non sine magna spe gloriae adipiscendae illuc profecti sumus. 5. Ex urbe clam egressi, haud procul castris hostium proditores convenerunt. 6. De summo monte despicientes viginti urbes et oppida conspeximus. 7. Unus e captivis respondisse dicitur se malle liberum mori quam vivere servum. 8. Nonne videtis igitur unius viri consilio ortum esse novum populum? 9. Ego tecum vixi: nonne tu mecum vis mori? 10. Multa pro te coram judicibus de rebus gestis, de virtute tua dixi.
- B.—I. I will go with you as far as the gates of the city. 2. The camp was not far distant from the river Rhone. 3. He paid the money to the creditor in the presence of the people. 4. O that the state may never be without citizens like you! 5. You, Marcus, are worthy of praise beyond all your fellow-soldiers. 6. The general was drawing up the line before the camp. 7. Will you not slip out of the camp with me by night? 8. The rivers flow down from the mountains. 9. Not even for a friend am I willing to die. 10. The lieutenants were informed about these things through spies.

EXERCISE 80.

A.—1. Nostri testudine facta sub moenia accesserunt. 2. Supra caput montes imminentes, sub pedibus flumen profundum conspeximus. 3. Multi terga verterunt et sese in proximas silvas abdiderunt. 4. Post proelium captivi sub iugum missi sunt. 5. Super cadavera hominum et equorum ruimus. 6. In insula mons altissimus et subter monte spelunca est. 7. Turres sub moenia admoveri iussit. 8. Nasus subter oculos situs est. 9. Omnis Gallia in tres partes divisa est. 10. Nova legio conscribenda est, militum enim supra decem milia illo die ceciderunt.

B.—I. The maiden recognised her lover's shield over her brother's shoulders. 2. The line having been drawn up, he placed the cavalry on the right wing. 3. With a great shout all rush upon* the enemy. 4. All whom our men captured under arms they slew. 5. Let us not remain on the hill; let us descend into the plain. 6. Towardst night the enemy turned their backs. 7. The boy drank the wine without the knowledge of his father. 8. Stretched beneath yonder oak let us talk of past times. 9. I love this man much, for there is in him the greatest virtue and the greatest kindness towards all. 10. Therefore I ask from you that you should receive him into your friendship.

^{* &}quot;To rush upon" = ruere in with acc. \dagger Sub with acc.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES TO THE EXERCISES.

N.B.—For numerals see the table on p. 153. For words irregularly inflected, and for the construction of conjunctions, etc., see also Index II. at the end of the book.

I.—LATIN-ENGLISH.

ā, ab, prep. (with abl.), from, (of agent) by. abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditum. hide. abripiō, -ere, abripuī, abreptum, seize, carry off. abstineō, -ēre, abstinuī, abstentum, abstain. absum, abesse, āfui, be absent. abundo, -āre, abound. abūtor, abūsus sum. abuse (with abl.). accēdo, -ere, accessi, accessum, approach. accidit, -ere, accidit, it happens. accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum, receive. accūso -āre, accuse. ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, ardent. fierce. aciës, -ēī, f., line of battle. acus, - $\ddot{\mathbf{u}}$ s, f., needle. acūtus, -a, -um, sharp. ad, prep. (with acc.), to, until; ad unum, to a man. addūcō, -ere, adduxī, adductum, bring. adeō, adv., so. adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum, obtain.

minister, carry on. admittō, -ere, admīsī, admissum, commit (crime). admoveō, -ēre, admōvī, admōtum, move up (trans.). adorior, -iri, adortus sum, attack adsum, adesse, adfui, be present. adūlātio, adūlātionis, f., flattery. adveniō, -īre, advēnī, adventum, advento, -are, be on the point of arriving. adversus, -a, -um, adverse; rēs adversae, adversity; adversus. adversum, prep., opposite, towards. aedificium, -ī, n., building. aedifico. -are, to build. aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill. aegrē ferō, resent bitterly. aegrötö, -āre, be ill. aerārium, -ī, n., treasury. aes, aeris, n., bronze, money. aestās, aestātis, f., summer. aestus, -ūs, m., tide. aetās, aetātis, f., age, generation. affero, afferre, attuli, allatum, bring.

administro, -āre, manage,

affició, -ere, affeci, affectum, affect. affirmo, -are, affirm. affligö, -ere, afflixi, afflictum, dash. ager, agrī, m., field. agger, aggeris, m., earthwork. agnus, -i, m., lamb. ago, -ere, egi, actum, drive. agricola, -ae, m., husbandman. āiō, defect., say. alacer, alacris, alacre, cheerful, energetic, active. albus, -a, -um, white. alias, adv., at another time. alibī, adv., elsewhere. aliënus, -a, -um, belonging to another, of others; aes alienum, n., debt. aliquando, adv., some day. aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, and adj. aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, some one, some. aliter, adv., otherwise. alius, -a, -ud, one (of several). another (of several). alter, altera, alterum, the one (of two), the other (of two), the second (of two). altitūdo, altitūdinis, f., height, depth. altus, -a, -um, high. ambitus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, m., bribery. **ambō, -ae, -ō,** both. **ambulō, -āre,** walk. amīcitia, -ae, f, friendship. amicus, -a, -um, friendly; amicus, -i, m., friend. amo, -āre, love. amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant. amor, amoris, m., love. amplector, -ī, amplexus sum, embrace. amplifico, -are, extend, amplify. an, conj., or (in double questions) ancora, -ae, f., anchor. anguis, -is, m., snake. angustiae, -ārum, $f. \not pl.$, narrowness.

animal, animālis, n., animal. animus, -ī, m., mind. annus, -i, m., year. anser, anseris, m., goose. ante, adv., before; prep. (with acc.), before. anteā, adv., beforehand. antequam, conj., before. antiquus, -a, -um, ancient. aper, apri, m., wild boar. aperio, -ire, aperui, apertum, open (trans.). appāreō, -ēre, appear. appellö, -äre, call. apportō, -āre, carry (to). approbo, -āre, approve. appropinquo, -are, approach. aptus, -a, -um, fit, adapted. apud, prep. (with acc.), in the presence of, among. aqua, -ae, f., water.aquila, -ae, f., eagle. āra, -ae, f., altar. arbitror, -ārī, think. arbor, arboris, $f_{\cdot,\cdot}$ tree. arcus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, m., bow. **ardor, ardōris, m**., heat. arduus, -a, -um, lofty. argentum, -ī, n., silver, money. arguð, -ere, argui, argūtum, accuse. aries, arietis, m., ram, battering-**Ariōvistus, -ī,** m., Ariovistus (a German chief). arma, - \bar{o} rum, n.pl., arms. armiger, armigera, armigerum, bearing arms. arō, -āre, to plough. ars, artis, f., art; pl., the arts. arx, arcis, f., citadel. asper, aspera, asperum, rough, harsh. at, conj., but. Athēnae, -ārum, f.pl., Athens. auctoritas, auctoritatis, f., in-

fluence, authority. audācia, -ae, f., boldness.

audacter, adv., boldly.

audax, audācis, bold. audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare. **audiō, -īre,** hear. aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablātum, bear away. augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase (trans.). auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. aurum, -i, n., gold. aut, conj., or; aut...aut, either . . . or. autem, conj. (to be placed after the first word), but, however. **auxilium, -ī,** n., help, aid; pl. auxilia, -orum, reinforcements. avāritia, -ae, f., avarice. avidus, -a, -um, greedy. avis, -is, f., bird. avus, -ī, m., grandfather. barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous, uncivilised. bellum, -i, n., war; bellum infero, make war upon. bene, adv., well. benevolentia, -ae, f., goodwill. benevolus, -a, -um, benevolent. bibō, -ere, bibī, ---, drink. bonus, -a, -um, good. bonum, - \bar{i} , n., good; n.pl. bona, -ōrum, goods, property. brevis, -e, short, brief. breviter, adv., briefly. Britanni, örum, m., Britons. Britannia, -ae, f., Britain. cadāveris, n., dead cadāver, body, corpse. cado, -ere, cecidi, casum, fall. **caelum, -i,** n., heaven. Caesar, Caesaris, m., Caesar. calamitās, calamitātis, f., calamcalcar, calcaris, n., spur. canis, -is, c., dog. canto, -are, sing. capiò, -ere, cepi, captum, take. captīvus, -ī, m., captive. caput, capitis, n., head. carcer, carceris, m., prison. carmen, carminis, n., song, poem.

carō, carnis, f., flesh. Carthago, Carthaginis, f., Carthage (a city of Africa). cārus, -a, -um, dear. **castīgō, -āre**, chastise. castra, -ōrum, n.pl. camp. cāsus, -ūs, m., chance. catēna, -ae, f., chain. Catilina, -ae, m., Catilina (a Roman who conspired against the state). Catō, Catōnis, m., Cato (a celebrated Roman). causa, -ae, f., cause; causa (with gen.), for the sake of, on account of. caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum, beware. celebro, -are, celebrate. celer, celeris, celere, swift. celeritās, celeritātis, f., speed. cēlō, -āre, keep in ignorance concerning. certamen, certaminis, n., contest. certior fio, get information. certus, -a, -um, certain. cervus, -ī, m., stag. ceu, adv., like as. cibus, $-\bar{i}$, m., food. Cicero, Ciceronis, m., Cicero (a Roman orator). circā, adv., prep. (w. around. circiter, prep. (with acc.), about (of number). circum, adv., prep. (with acc.), around. circumdō, -are, circumdedī, circumdatum, surround. cis, prep. (w. acc.), on this side of. citerior, citerius, hither, nearer. citrā, adv., on this side; prep. (with acc.), on this side of. cīvis, -is, c., citizen. cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., state. clādēs, -is, f., disaster. clam, adv., secretly; prep. (with acc.), without the knowledge of.

clāmō, -āre, shout. clāmor, clāmōris, m., shout, cheer. clārus, -a, -um, illustrious, renowned, famous. classis, -is, f., fleet. claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum, shut. clāvis, -is, f., key. coepi, coeptum, began. coerceo, -ere, control, curb. cogito, -are, meditate. cognosco,-ere, cognovi, cognitum, get to know, recognise. coactum, cōgō,, -ere, coēgī, collect. cohibeo, -ere, restrain. cohortor, -ārī, exhort. collaudo, -āre, bestow praise on. Collinus, -a, -um, Colline (the name of one of the gates of Rome). collis, -is, m., hill. colloco, -are, place, put. colloquor, -ī, collocūtus parley. colo, -ere, colui, cultum, cultivate. columba, -ae, f., dove. combūro, -ere, combussi, combustum, burn (trans.). **comitia, -ōrum,** $n. \not pl.$, election; comitia habeo, hold an eleccomitor, -ārī, accompany. commeātus, -ūs, m., supplies. commīlito, commīlitonis, m., a fellow-soldier, comrade. commoror, -ārī, linger. commoveō, -ēre, commōvi, commotum, stir, move (trans.). comparo, -are, prepare, get together. comperio, -ire, comperi, compertum, ascertain. complexus, -ūs, m., embrace. concēdō, -ere, concessī, concessum, yield, consent. concido, -ere, concidi, ---, fall. concilium, -I, n., council.

condemno, -are, condemn. condicio, condicionis, f., condition; pl., terms. confero, conferre, contuli, collatum, bring together. conficio, -ere, confeci, confectum, confido, -ere, confisus sum, be confident. confirmo, -are, strengthen, cheer. confiteor, -ērī, confessus sum, confess, admit. coniūro, -are, conspire. conor, -arī, attempt. conscribo, -ere, conscripsi, conscriptum, enrol. consentio, -īre, consensī, consensum, come to an understanding (with). conservo, -āre, preserve. consilium, -I, n., counsel, plan, purpose, design. consistō, -ere, constitī. stitum, take up a position, settle, halt. conspectus, -ūs, m., sight, ap-

conclāmō, -āre, shout (together).

conspectus, -ūs, m., sight, appearance.
conspiciō, -ere, conspexi, con-

spectum, behold, observe. conspicor, -ārī, come in sight of. constituō, -ere, constituī, con-

stitūtum, appoint. consul, consulis, m., consul (a Roman magistrate).

consulō, -ere, consuluī, consultum, consult the interests of (with dat.).

consultō, adv., on purpose.

consūmo, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum, spend, consume.

contemnō, -ere, contempsī, contemptum, despise.

contendo, -ere, contendo, contentum, hasten.

contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentum, contain, keep (in a place).
contingit, -ere, contigit, it happens.

contră, adv., opposite; prep. (with acc.), against. convenio, -ire, conveni, conventum, assemble. conventus, $-\ddot{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, m., assembly, council; conventum ago, hold a council. convoco, -are, call together, summon. coorior, -īrī, coortus sum, arise. **copiae, -arum,** f. pl., forces, troops. cōpiōsē, adv., plentifully, fully. cor, cordis, n., heart. coram, adv., face to face; prep. (with abl.), in the presence of. Corinthus, $-\bar{i}$, f., Corinth. cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of army). corona, -ae, f., garland. corpus, corporis, n., body. corripio, -ere, corripui, correptum, snatch up. cottīdiē, adv., daily. crās, adv., to-morrow. **Crassus, -ī, m.**, Crassus (a Roman general). crēdibilis, -e, credible. crēditor, crēditoris, m., a creditor. crēdo, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe (with dat.). cremo, -are, burn, cremate. creō, -āre, create, appoint. crūdēlis, -e, cruel. crūs, crūris, n., leg. cubile, -is, n., bed, lair. culpa, -ae, f., blame. culpō, -āre, blame. cum, prep. (with abl.), with. accompanied by. cum, conj., when, since, although. cum . . . tum, both . . . and. cupīdō, cupīdinis, f., desire. -um, cupidus, -a, desirous, greedy. cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum, desire. cūr, adv., why? cūrō, -āre, take care.

curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run. currus, -ūs, m., chariot. curso, -are, run to and fro. cursus, -ūs, m., course; cursum tenere, hold on one's course. curvus, -a, -um, curved, winding. custodio, -ire, guard, keep. custos, custodis, m., guard. de, prep. (with abl.), down from, concerning; dē improvīso, unexpectedly. dea, -ae, f., a goddess. dēbeō, -ēre, owe, ought. decet, -ēre, it beseems. **dēclārō, -āre,** declare. dēdecet, -ēre, it misbeseems. **dēdecus, -coris** n., disgrace, infamy. **dēdicō, -āre,** dedicate. dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, surdēdūcō, -ere, dēduxī, dēductum, lead down, launch. dēfatīgō, -āre, fatigue. dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātum, bear down. dēficiō, -ere, dēfēcī, dēfectum, fall away, fail; passive (with abl.), be lacking in. dēfluō, -ere, dēfluxī, dēfluxum, flow down. **dēlectō, -āre,** to delight; impers. dēlectat, it pleases. dēlectus, -ūs, m., levy. dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy. dēlīberō, -āre, deliberate. dēligō, -āre, fasten. **dēmum,** adv., at length. dens, dentis, m., tooth. dēploro, -are, lament, deplore. descendō, -ere, descendī, descensum, descend. dēsero, -ere, dēserui, dēsertum, desert. dēsīderō, -āre, long for, desire. dēspiciō, -ere, dēspexī, dēspectum, look down on.

dēsum, dēfui, dēesse, be absent, be neglectful. dēterior, dēterius, worse; dēterrimus, -a, -um, worst. deus, -i, m., a god. dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, on the right hand; dextra, -ae, f. (sc. manus), right hand. dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say. dictito, are, say frequently. dies, -ei, m. or (in sing.) f., day. differo, differre, distuli, dilatum, separate. difficilis, -e, difficult. dignitās, dignitātis, f., dignity. dignor, -ārī, deem worthy (with abl.). dignus, -a, -um, worthy (with abl.). **dīligentia, -ae,** f., diligence. dīligō, -ere, dīlexī, dīlectum, esdīmico, -are, fight a pitched battle. dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmissum, disband. dirimo, -ere, diremi, diremptum, break down, destroy. dīripiō, -ere, dīripuī, dīreptum, pillage. discēdo, -ere, discessi, discessum, depart. **discipulus, -ī,** m., pupil, disciple. discurro, -ere, discurri and discucurri, discursum, run in different directions. disertus, -a, -um, eloquent. displiceo, -ere, displease (with dat.). dissimilis, -e, unlike. distö, -āre, —, —, be distant. distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtum, distribute. dītior, dītius, richer; dītissimus, -a, -um, richest. diū, adv., long. dives, divitis, rich. dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide.

dīvitiae, -ārum, f.pl., riches. **dō, dare, dedī, datum,** give. doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, teach. doctus, -a, -um, learned, skilled. doleō, -ēre, grieve. dolor, doloris, m., pain, grief, indignation. dominus, -ī, m., master, lord. domus, -ūs, (abl. sing. domō), f., house; domi, at home; domum, home, homewards. donec, conj., until. dono, -are, give (as a present). donum, -ī, n., gift. dormiō, -īre, sleep. dubito, -are, doubt, hesitate. dubius, -a, -um, doubtful. dūcō, -ere, duxi, ductum, lead. dulcior, dulcioris, sweeter. dulcis, -e, sweet. dum, conj., while, as long as, unduo, -ae, -o, two. dux, ducis, m., leader, general. $\bar{\mathbf{e}}$, \mathbf{ex} , prep. (with abl.), out of, from. ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī, —, learn by heart. ēduco, -āre, educate. ēdūcō, -ere, ēduxī, ēductum. lead out, draw out. effēcī, effectum, efficiō, -ere, bring about. effugiō, -ere, effūgī, —, escape. egēnus, -a, -um, needy. egeō, -ēre, eguī, -, be needy, be in need of (with abl. or gen.). ego, I. ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, quit. ēgregiē, adv., admirably. ēlābor, -ī, ēlapsus sum, slip out, escape. ēloquens, ēloquentis, eloquent. **ēloquentia**, -ae, f., eloquence. ěmendő, -āre, correct, amend. emő, -ere, ēmī, emptum, buy. **ēmolliō, -īre,** soften, refine.

eō, îre, īvī or iī, itum, go

eo, adv., thither, to that place. eodem, adv., to the same place. epistola, -ae, f., letter. eques, equitis, m., horse-soldier; pl., cavalry. equester, equestris, equestre, equestrian, cavalry (adj.). equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry. equus, -i, m., horse. ergā, prep. (with acc.), towards (a person). ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptum, snatch, tear out or away. errō, -āre, go astray, be mistaken. ērudiō, -īre, train, polish. ērudītiō, ērudītiōnis, f., learning. ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptum, break out, sally forth. et, conj., and. etiam, conj., also. etiamsi, conj., although, even if. etsi, conj., although, even if. ēvenio, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventum, turn out, happen. $ex, \bar{e}, prep$. (with abl.), out of, from. exanimo, -āre, kill. excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessum, retire ; **ë vitā excēdo,** die. excrucio, -are, torment, distress. exemplum, -i, n., example. exerceo, -ere, exercise. exercitus, -ūs, m., army. exhauriō, -īre, exhausī, exhaustum, exhaust. exiguus, -a, -um, scanty. eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, remarkable. **exinde**, adv., thenceforth. expeditus, -a, -um, light-armed. expello, -ere, expuli, expulsum, drive out. experior, -iri, expertus sum, try, put to the trial. explorator, exploratoris, m., spv. expono, -ere, exposui, expositum, put out, land (trans.). expugno, -are, take by storm. exspecto, -are, await.

stinctum, extinguish. exstruč, -ere, exstruxī, exstructum, raise, construct. exterus, -a, -um, outside; exterior, exterius, outer; extrēmus, -a, -um, and extimus, -a, -um, last. extrā, adv., outside; prep. (with acc.), outside of. exul, exulis, m., exile. faber, fabrī, m., carpenter. $f\bar{a}bula$, -ae, f., tale, story. faciës, ëī, f., face. facilis, -e, easy. facio, -ere, feci, factum, make, do, value, esteem. factum, -i, n., deed. facultās, facultātis, f., opportunity. fāgus, -i, f., beech. falsus, -a, -um, false. $f\bar{a}ma$, -ae, f., report, rumour, fame. familia, -ae, f., household. fātur, fārī, defect., speak. faveo, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, be favourable. fēlīcior, fēlīcioris, happier, more fortunate. fēlix, fēlīcis, happy, fortunate. $f\bar{e}mina$, -ae, f., woman. **fera, -ae,** f., wild beast. fero, ferre, tuli, latum, bear. **ferociter**, adv., fiercely. **ferrum, -ī,** n., iron. fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired. festīnō, -āre, hasten. **fidēlis, -e,** faithful. fides, -ei, f., faith, loyalty, allegiance. fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, trust. **fīlia, -ae,** f., daughter. **fīlius, -ī,** m., son. fingo, -ere, finxī, fictum, feign. fīniō, -īre, end, finish. **finis, -is, m.**, end; pl., territories. finitimus, -a, -um, bordering on, near.

exstinguō, -ere, exstinxī, ex-

fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, be made. firmō, -āre, strengthen. flamma, -ae, f., flame.flecto, -ere, flexi, flexum, bend, floreo, -ere, florui, ---, flourish. flos, floris, m., flower. flümen, flüminis, n., river. fluvius, -ī, m., river. foedus, foederis, n., treaty. folium, -i, n., leaf. fons, fontis, m., fountain. foris, -is, f., gate. fortis, -e, brave. fortiter, adv., bravely. fortuna, -ae, f., fortune. forum, -ī, n., market-place. fossa, -ae, f., trench. frater, fratris, m., brother. fraus, fraudis, f., fraud, guile, fretum, -ī, n., strait. frigidus, -a, -um, cold. frigus, frigoris, n., cold. fructus, -ūs, m., fruit. frūgī, indecl. adj., of worth. frügifer, frügifera, frügiferum, fruit-bearing. frümentum, -I, n., corn. fruor, -ī, fructus sum, enjoy (with abl.). frustrā, adv., in vain. fuga, -ae, f., flight. fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, take to flight. fugō, -āre, put to flight. fulgur, fulguris, n., flash of lightning. fundo, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; perf. part. pass., stretched. funestus, -a, -um, baneful. fungor, -ī, functus sum, discharge (with abl.). Gabii, -ōrum, m.pl., Gabii (a town). Gādēs, -ium, f.pl., Gades (now Cadiz). Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul (now France)

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic. Gallus, -i, m. a Gaul. gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice. gaudium, -i, n., joy. gener, generi, m., son-in-law. genū, -ūs, n., knec. Germānus, -a, -um, German. gerő, -ere, gessi, gestum, wagc. gladius, -i, m., sword. glans, glandis, f., acorn. glaucus, -a, -um, grey. glörior, -ārī, boast. **glöriösus, -a, -um,** boastful. gracilis, -e, slender. gradior, -i, gressus sum, step. gradus, -ūs, m., step. **Graecia, -ae,** f., Greece. **Graecus, -a, -um,** Greek. grandinat, -āre, it hails. grātia, -ae, f., favour; grātiā (with gen.), on account of, for the sake of. grātus, -a, -um, pleasing. gravis, -e, heavy, severe. graviter, adv., heavily, deeply. grex, gregis, m., flock. gubernātor, gubernātoris, pilot. habeo, -ere, have, hold, consider; **ō**rati**ō**nem habeō, make a speech. **habitō, -āre,** inhabit. Hannibal, Hannibalis, (a Carthaginian Hannibal general). \mathbf{hasta} , $\mathbf{-ae}$, f., \mathbf{spear} . Helvētia, -ae, f., Switzerland. hērēs, hērēdis, c., heir, heiress. **herī (here),** adv., yesterday. **h**īberna, -**o**rum, n.pl., winter quarters. hīc (hic), haec, hōc, this. **hīc,** adv., here. hiemō, -āre, pass the winter, winter. hiems, hiemis, f., winter. Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain. **hodië,** adv., to-day.

homo, hominis, c., man, person. honoro, -are, honour. **hōra, -ae,** f., hour. Horātius, -ī, m., Horace (a Roman poet). hortor, -ārī, exhort. hortus, -ī, m., garden. hostis, -is, c., enemy, foe; pl.. enemy (collective). **hūc,** adv., hither. hūmānus, -a, -um, human. humilis, -e, low. idem, eadem, idem, the same. idoneus, -a, -um, suitable. **ignāvia, -ae,** f., cowardice. ignāvus, -a, -um. indolent. cowardly. ignis, -is, m., fire. **ignōrō, -āre, not** to know, be unaware. ille, illa, illud, that (yonder). imber, imbris, m., shower. immemor, immemoris, unmindimmineo, -ere, ---, overhang. immolō, -āre, sacrifice. immortālis, -e, immortal. impedimenta, -ōrum, ħ1., baggage. imperium, -i, n., rule, empire. impero, -are, command, give orders (with dat.). impetus, -ūs, m., attack; impetum facio, charge (military phrase). impiger, impigra, impigrum, acimprobus, -a, -um, dishonourable. improviso, see de improviso. impulsus, -ūs, m., impulse, initiimpune, adv., with impunity. in, prep. (with abl.), in, on; (with acc.) into, upon, against. incendium, -i, n., fire. incendo, -ere, incendi, incensum, burn (trans.).

cite. incola, -ae, c., inhabitant. incolō, -ere, incoluī, incultum, incolumis, -e, unhurt, safe and sound. indico, -are, to point out. indignus, -a, -um, unworthy. indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī, indultum, be indulgent, indulge (with dat.). **inermis, -e,** unarmed. **infēlix, infēlīcis,** unfortunate, unhappy. inferior, inferius, lower; infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest. infero, inferre, intuli, illatum, bring in; bellum infero, make war upon. **infidēlis, -e,** unfaithful. infrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), below. **ingenium, -ī,** n., ability, disposition, genius. ingens, ingentis, immense. ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum, set foot in. inimicitia, -ae, f., hostility, enmity. inimīcus, -a, -um, hostile; inimīcus, -ī, m., enemy. **inīquus, -a, -um,** unequal, unfair, disadvantageunfavourable, ous. **initium, -\bar{i},** n., beginning. iniūria, -ae, f., injury, act of violence. inopia, -ae, f., scarcity. inops, inopis, helpless. inquam, inquii, defect., say. insciens, inscientis, unwitting, unknowing. insecūtus sum, insequor, -ī, follow, pursue. insons, insontis, innocent. instruō, -ere, instruxī, instructum, draw up.

incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.

incitō, -āre, drive forward, ex-

insula, -ae, f., island. insum, inesse, infui, be in. integrātio, integrātionis, f., renewal. intellegö, -ere, intellexī, intellectum, understand. inter, prep. (with acc.), between, among; inter sē, among themselves, one from another. intercludo, -ere, interclūsī, interclūsum, cut off. interdum, adv., sometimes. interea, interim, adv., meanwhile. interficio, -ere, interfeci, interfectum, kill. interim, adv., meanwhile. interior, interius, inner; intimus, -a, -um, inmost. interrogo, -are, question, interrogate. intersum, interfui, interesse, be in the midst; **interest,** impers., it is the business (of), it is of importance (to). intrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), within. intro, -are, enter. intus, adv., within. inütilis, -e, unserviceable. invādō, -ere, invāsī, invāsum, invade, seize. invenio, -īre, invēnī, inventum, find. invideō, -ēre, invidi, invisum, to envy, be envious (with dat.). invitus, -a, -um, unwilling. ipse, -a, -um, self. **ira, -ae,** f., anger. irascor, -ī, irātus sum, be angry. irrumpō, -ere, irrūpī, irruptum, break into. is, ea, id, that; he, she, it. iste, -a, -ud, that (of yours). ita, adv., so. Italia, -ae, $f_{\cdot,\cdot}$ Italy. iter, itineris, $n_{\cdot \cdot}$, journey, march. iterum, adv., again, a second

time.

iaceo, -ere, lie, lie dead. iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw. i**actō, -āre,** throw, hurl. iam, adv., now, by this time. iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, bid. iūdex, iūdicis, m., judge (properly, juryman). iugum, $-\bar{\imath}$, n., yoke. iumentum, -i, n., baggage-animal. iungō, -ere, iunxī iunctum, join. iussum, -i, n., order, command. i**ūnior, iūniōris,** younger. iuvat, -āre, iūvit, it delights. iuvenis, -is, m., young man. iuxtā, adv., close; prep. (with acc.), close by. Labienus, -i, m., Labienus (a Roman commander). labor, laböris, m., labour. laboro, -are, to labour, take pains. lac, lactis, n., milk. lacer, lacera, lacerum, torn. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. laevus, -a, -um, left, on the left hand; laeva, -ae, f. manus), left hand. lapis, lapidis, m., stone. lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, hide. Latinus, -a, -um, Latin. **lātus, -a, -um,** broad, wide. laudō, -āre, praise: laus, làudis, f., praise. lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., embassy. lēgātus, -ī, m., ambassador, lieutenant. **legiō, legiōnis,** f., legion. legő, -ere, lēgī, lectum, read. leō, leōnis, m., lion. lex, lēgis, f., law. liber, librī, m., book. līber, lībera, līberum, free. līberālis, -e, liberal. **liberi, -örum,** m.pl., children. līberō, -āre, free. libertās, libertātis, f., liberty. libet, -ēre, it pleases.

licet, -ēre, it is permitted; licet, conj., although. **lilium, -i,** n., lily. lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. littera, -ae, f., letter, character; pl., literature, letters. litus, litoris, n., shore. locus, -i, m., place. longē, adv., far ; longius, farther, further, too far. longus, -a, -um, long; nāvis longa, man-of-war. loquax, loquācis, talkative, loquacious. loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, speak, lūdo, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play. lūna, -ae, f., moon. lustro, -āre, visit. **lūsus, -ūs, m**., game. Lutētia, -ae, f., a town, now Paris. magis, adv., rather. magister, magistri, m., master. magnificus, -a, -um, distinguished, magnificent. magnopere, adv., greatly. magnus, -a, -um, great, large. māior, māioris, greater. **māiōrēs, -um,** m.pl., ancestors. male, adv., badly. maledicus, -a, -um, slanderous. mālō, malle, māluī, —, prefer. malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked. maneo, -ēre, mansī, mansum, remain. manus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$, f., hand. Marcus, -ī, m., Marcus (a Roman name). mare, -is, n., sea. marītus, -ī, m., husband. Mars, Martis, m., Mars (the Roman god of war). $m\bar{a}s$, maris, m., male. Massilia, -ae, f., a town, now Marseilles. māter, mātris, f., mother. mātūrius, adv., earlier. maxime, adv., very greatly.

medicus, -ī, m., doctor, physician. surgeon. medius, -a, -um, middle. melior, melioris, better. meminī, defect., remember. memor, memoris, mindful. mendax, mendācis, mendacious, untruthful. **mensa, -ae,** f., table. mercator, mercatoris, m., merchant. mereo, -ere, deserve, merit. **messis, -is,** f., harvest. mētior, -īrī, mensus sum, measure out. mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier. minae, -ārum, $f. \not pl$. threats. minimus, -a, -um, least, small est; nātū minimus, youngest. minister, ministri, m., servant. minor, minoris, less, smaller. miser, misera, miserum, wretched, unhappy. miseret, -ēre, it moves to pity. mitto, -ere, misi, missum, send. modus, -ī, m., manner. **moenia,-ium,**n.pl., walls(of acity). molestiae, -ārum, f. pl., annovances. molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, burdensome, annoying. mollio, -īre, mitigate, soothe. moneō, -ēre, admonish, warn. mons, montis, m., mountain. monstro, -are, show. **morbus, -\bar{i},** m., disease. mordeo, -ere, momordi, morsum, morior, -ī, mortuus sum, die. moror, -ārī, delay (trans. and intrans.). mors, mortis, f., death. mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum, fatal, mortal. **mos, moris,** m., manner, custom : pl., mores, manners, morals,

character.

maximus, -a, -um, greatest;

nātū maximus, eldest.

motus, -us, m., movement, revolt. moveo, -ēre, movī, motum, move (trans.); moveor, move (intrans.). mox, adv., soon. mulier, mulieris, f., woman. multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.. multitude. multus, -a, -um, many, much. mundus, $-\bar{i}$, m., world. mūnio, -ire, fortify. mūrus, -ī, m., wall. nanciscor, -i, nactus sum, get. narro, -are, relate, narrate, tell. nascor, -ī, nātus sum, be born. nāsus, -ī, m., nose. natō, -āre, swim. nauta, -ae, m., sailor. nāvis, -is, f., ship; nāvis longa, battle - ship, man - of - war; nāvēs solvō, set sail. $\mathbf{n\bar{e}}$, conj., that . . . not, lest; adv., not (in commands, etc.); nē . . . quidem, not even. -ne, interrogative enclitic particle. nec, conj., and . . . not, nor; nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor, or. necnon, conj., also. neco, -āre, kill, slay. negō, -āre, deny, say . . . not. nēmō, acc. nēminem, dat. nēminī, (gen. and abl. supplied by **nullus),** no one. Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune. nēquam, indecl., worthless. neque . . . neque, conj., neither . . . nor. neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither. nīdus, -ī, m., nest. niger, nigra, nigrum, black. **nihil**, indecl. n., nothing. ningit, -ere, ninxit, it snows. nisi, conj., unless. nix, nivis, f., snow. no, nare, swim. nobilis, -e, nobly born. noceo, -ere, to do harm, injure (with dat.).

noctū, adv., by night. nocturnus, -a, -um, nightly, by nolo, nolle, nolui, -, be unwilling. nomen, nominis, n., name. **nōn**, adv., not. **nondum**, adv., not yet. **nonne**, interrogative, not? nonnullus, -a, -um, some. nos, we. noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours. **nōtus, -a, -um,** known, wellknown. novus, -a, -um, new. **nox, noctis,** f., night. noxius, -a, -um, hurtful. $n\bar{u}b\bar{e}s$, -is, f., cloud. nullus, -a, -um, none, no. num, interrogative particle, in questions to which a negative answer is expected. numero, -are, count. numerus, -i, m., number. **numquam**, adv., never. **nunc,** adv., now. nuntio, -are, announce. nuntius, -ī, m., messenger. nuper, adv.. recently. **nūperrimē**, adv., very recently. ob, prep. (with acc.), because of. obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum, traverse, die. obicio, -ere, obieci, obiectum, set in the way. obliviscor, -ī, oblitus sum (with gen. or acc.), forget. obses, obsidis, c., hostage. obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessum, besiege. obstō, -āre, obstitī, obstātum, prevent. obsum, obesse, obfui, be harmful, harm. obtempero, -are, obev (with dat.). occāsio, occāsionis, f., oppor-

tunity.

occurro, -ere, occurri, occursum, fall in with, fall upon (with dat.). **ōcior**, **ōciōris**, *adj*., swifter. öcissimus, -a, -um, swiftest. oculus, -ī, m., eye. odi, odisse, hate. offero, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, offer. officium, -i, n., duty. omnīnō, adv., altogether, wholly. omnis, -e, every, all; m.pl.. omnēs, -ium, everyone, everybody. onerārius, -a, -um, burden-bearing; nāvis onerāria, f., merchant-vessel. onero, -are, load. onus, oneris, n., burden. oportet, -ēre, it behoves. opperior, -iri, oppertus sum, wait. oppidānus, -ī, m., townsman. **oppidum, -f,** n., town. opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressum, overwhelm. oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f., siege. oppugno, -āre, attack, besiege. optimē, adv., very well, excellentoptō, -āre, wish for. opulentus, -a, -um, opulent, flourishing. opus, operis, n., work; opus est, there is need (with abl. of the thing needed). \bar{o} ra, -ae, f., shore. **ōrātiō**, **ōrātiōnis**, f., speech, oration. **ōrātor, -ōris,** m., orator. orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise. ornō, -āre, adorn. ōrō, -āre, beg, beseech. os, ossis, n., bone. ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, show. **ōtium, -ī,** n., ease, rest. **ōvum, -ī,** n., egg. pābulor, -ārī, forage.

paene, adv., almost. paenitet, -ëre, it repents. palam, adv., openly; prep. (with abl.), in the presence of. palleo, -ere, pallui, —, be pale. palūs, palūdis, f_{\cdot} , marsh. parco, -ere, peperci, parsum, be sparing, spare (with dat.). parens, parentis, c., parent. pāreō, -ēre, obey, be obedient (with dat.). pario, -ere, peperi, partum, bring forth, gain. parō, -āre, prepare. pars, partis, f., part. partior, -iri, divide. parumper, adv., for a little while. parvus, -a, -um, little, small. passer, passeris, m., sparrow. passus, -ūs, m., pace. pastor, pastoris, m., shepherd. pater, patris, m., father. patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer. patria, -ae, f., native land, country. pauci, -ae, -a, few. paulātim, adv., gradually. pauper, pauperis, poor. **pavor, pavoris,** m., panic. pax, pācis, f., peace.pecco, -are, sin. **pecunia, -ae,** f., money, sum of money. pedes, peditis, m., foot-soldier; pl., infantry. pēior, pēioris, worse. peliis, -is, f., skin. pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, drive. penes, prep. (with acc.), in the power of. per, prep. (with acc.), through. peragrō, -āre, wander about. perduco, -ere, perduxi, perductum, lead through, construct (a trench). pereo, perire, perii, peritum, perish. perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous, perfidious.

periculum, -i, n., danger. peritus, -a, -um, experienced, skilful. permagnus, -a, -um, very great. permittō, -ere, permīsī, permissum, entrust. perniciosus, -a, -um, pernicious, dangerous. persequor, -ī, persecūtus sum, follow up, pursue. persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade. perterreo, -ere, strike with panic. perturbo, -are, dismay, frighten. pervenio, -īre, pervēnī, perventum, arrive. pēs, pedis, foot; pedem m., referō, retreat. peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum, ask, seek. piget, -ëre, it pains. pinguis, -e, fat. pius, -a, -um, dutiful. placeo, -ere, please, be pleasing (with dat.). **plānities**, -ēī, f., plain. plēnus, -a, -um, full. ploro, -are, bewail. pluit, -ere, pluit, it rains. plūrēs, -a, more. plūs, plūris, n., more; plūs, adv., more. poculum, -i, n., cup, goblet. Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian. poëta, -ae, m., poet. polliceor, -ērī, promise. Pompēius, -ī, m., Pompeius (a celebrated Roman general). pondus, ponderis, n., weight. pone, adv., behind; prep. (with acc.), behind. pono, -ere, posui, positum, place, pitch. pons, pontis, m., bridge. populus, -i, m, people. porta, ae, f., gate. portō, -are, carry. portus, -ūs, m., harbour. possum, posse, potui, —, be able.

afterwards; prep. post, adv., (with acc.), behind. posteā, adv., afterwards. posterior, posterioris, later. posterus, -a, -um, following. postquam, conj., after. postrēmus, -a, -um, last. potens, potentis, powerful. potior, -iri, get possession of, possess (with abl.). **prae**, prep. (with abl.), for, by reason of (after a negative). praebeo, -ere, show, furnish, praeceps, praecipitis, headlong. praecipito, -are, throw. praeda, -ae, f., booty. praedo, praedonis, m., robber, pirate. praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectum, set over (with dat.). **praemium, -\bar{i}, n.**, reward. **praesertim**, adv., especially. praesidium, -ī, n., garrison. praestans, praestantis, excellent. praesum, praeesse, praefui, be in command of. praeter, prep. (with acc.), beyond. praetereō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritum, go past. praeteritus, -a, -um, past. praevenio, -īre, praevēnī, praeventum, get the start of. prāvus, -a, -um, corrupt. prior, prioris, former. prīmus, -a, -um, first. princeps, principis, c., chief. pristinus, -a, -um, former. priusquam, conj., before. **probō, -āre,** approve. **probrum, -I,** n., reproach. procella, -ae, f., storm. procul, adv., far; prep. (with abl.), far from. prodeo, prodire, prodii, proditum, go forth. proditor, proditoris, m., betrayer, traitor

produco, -ere, produxi, productum, protract. proelium, -i, n., battle. proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, set out. profundus, -a, -um, deep. progredior, -ī, progressus sum, advance. prohibeo, -ere, hinder, forbid. pronuntio, -are, proclaim. prope, adv., and prep. (w. acc.), near. propior, propioris, nearer. propter, prep. (with acc.), near, on account of. $pr\bar{o}ra, -ae, f., prow.$ prosperus, -a, -um, prosperous; res prosperae, prosperity. prosum, prodesse, profui, be beneficial, do good. providens, providentis, foreseeprovidus, -a, -um, foreseeing. provincia, -ae, f., province. proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next. prūdens, prūdentis, prudent, wise. pudet, -ëre, it shames. puella, -ae, f., girl. puer, pueri, m., boy. pugna, -ae, f., battle. pugno, -āre, to fight. pulchrum, pulcher, pulchra, beautiful. pulchritūdo, pulchritūdinis, f., beauty. pūnio, -īre, punish. puppis, -is, f., stern. puto, -are, consider, think. qualis, -e, of what kind, what sort of. quam, adv., than. quamquam, conj., although. quamvis, conj., although. quando, adv., when? quantus, -a, -um, how great? (as great) as. quārē, adv., why? quasi, conj. and adv., as if. quasso, -are, shatter.

quatio, -ere, —, quassum, shake. -que, enclitic conj., and. quercus, -ūs, f., oak. qui, quae, quod, rel., who, which. that; interrog. adj., what? qui, qua, quod, indef. adj., any. quia, conj., because. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever. quid, what? see quis. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and (adj.) quoddam, a certain (person or thing). quidem, see nē . . . quidem. quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (adj.)quodlibet, any please. quin, conj., that . . . not, (but) that, from $(\ldots ing)$; adv., why not? quis, quae, quid, interrog., who? what? quis, qua, quid, indef., any one. anything. quisquam, quidquam or (adi.)quodquam, any. quisque, quaeque, quidque and (adj.) quodque, each. quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid) and (adj.) quodquod whoever, whatever. quivis, quaevis, quidvis and (adj.) quodvis, any you will. quö, adv., whither? quod, conj., because. quominus, conj., that (thereby) . . . not; from (. . .-ing. quōmodo, adv., how? quondam, adv., formerly. quoniam, conj., since. quoque, adv., also. quot, indecl., how many? rāmus, -ī, m., branch. rāna, -ae, f., frog. rapax, rapacis, greedy, rapacious. ratio, rationis, f., reason. recipero, -are, recover. recipio, -ere, recepi, receptum. receive.

recito, -are, read aloud, recite. recreō, -āre, refresh. redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum, go back. redintegro, -are, renew. reditus, -ūs, m., return. redūcō, -ere, reduxī, reductum, lead back. refero, referre, rettuli, relatum, bear back. rēfert, rēferre, rettulit, —, it concerns. reficio, -ere, refeci, refectum, repair. rēgīna, -ae, f., queen. regiō, regionis, f., region. regnō, -āre, reign. regnum, $-\bar{i}$, n., kingdom. regō, -ere, rexi, rectum, rule, govern. -i, regressus regredier, sum, return. relinguō, -ere, reliqui, relictum, leave, relinquish. reliquus, -a, -um, remaining. remedium, -i, n., remedy. repente, adv., suddenly. repentinus, -a, -um, sudden. reperio, -īre, repperi, repertum, reporto, -are, bring back. repudio, -are, reject. $r\bar{e}s$, $-e\bar{i}$, f., thing, affair. rēs adversae, adversity. rēs gestae, exploits. rēs prosperae, prosperity. rēs publica, f., state, republic. reservo, -āre, reserve. respondeō, -ēre, respondī, responsum, reply. rēte, -is, n., net. retineo, -ere, retinui, retentum, revertor, -ï, revertī, reversum, return (intrans.). revocō, -āre, recall, call back. rex, rēgis, m., king. Rhēnus. -ī, m., the Rhine. Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone.

rīpa, -ae, f., bank. rogo, -are, ask. Romanus, -ī, m., a Roman. Römulus, -I, m., Romulus. rosa, -ae, f., rose.rubeō, -ēre, rubuī, ---, blush. ruber, rubra, rubrum, red. **ruč, -ere, ruï, rutum,** rush. rursus, adv., again, back again. rūs, rūris, n., country (opposed to town). rusticus, -a, -um, country (adj.). sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred. sacerdos, sacerdotis, c., priest, priestess. saepe, adv., often. saepissimē, adv., very often. saepius, adv., more often, oftener. sagax, sagācis, sagacious, shrewd. sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. saltō, -āre, dance. salūs, salūtis, f., safety. salūtāris, -e, salutary, beneficial. sapiens, sapientis, wise. sapientia -ae, f., wisdom. satis, enough; compar. satius. preferable. satisfacio, -ere, satisfeci, satisfactum, satisfy (with dat.). saxum, -i, n., stone, rock. scelus, sceleris, n., crime. sciō, -īre, know. scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write. scūtum, $-\bar{i}$, n., shield. sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves. sed, conj., but. sedile, -is, n., seat. segnitiës, -ëi, f., sloth, apathy. semel, adv., once. **semper,** adv., always. senātus, -ūs, m., senate. senectūs, senectūtis, f., old age. senex, senis, m., old man. senior, senioris, older. sententia, -ae, f., opinion. sepelio, -ire, sepelīvī, sepultum, bury.

sequor, -i, secutus sum, follow. sermō, sermōnis, m., discourse, conversation. servő, -äre, observe. servus, -I, m., slave. sēsē, see sē. seu . . . seu, conj., whether . . . or, if . . . or if. **sī,** conj., if. sic, adv., so, thus. sīcārius, -ī, m., assassin. siccus, -a, -um, dry. signum, -i, n., sign, standard. silva, -ae, f., a wood.similis, -e, like. sine, prep. (with abl.), without. sino, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow; perf. part. pass., situated. sitis, -is, f., thirst. sive . . . sive, conj., whether . . . or, if . . . or if. socer, soceri, m., father-in-law. söl, sölis, m., sun. soleo, -ere, solitus sum, be accustomed. sollicito, -are, work upon, instigate. sollicitūdinis, ſ., sollicitūdō, anxiety. solum, -I, n., soil. **sölum,** adv., only. sõlus, -a, -um, alone. solvo, -ere, solvi, solutum, loosen, pay. somnus, -i, m., sleep. **soror**, **sorōris**, *f*., sister. speciës, -ēī, f., semblance, pretence. specto, -are, to look at, behold, speculor, -ārī, reconnoitre. spēlunca, -ae, f., cave. spērō, -āre, hope. spēs, -ei, f., hope. splendidus, -a, -um, splendid. spolio, -are, pillage. spondeo, -ere, spopondi, sponsum, promise. **sponsus**, $-\mathbf{i}$, m., betrothed, lover.

ately. statio, stationis, f., post. stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, remain firm, persist in (with abl.). strepitus, -ūs, m., uproar, din. studeo, -ēre, studuī, —, devote oneself to (with dat.). studium, -I, n., pursuit, study. stultitia, -ae, f., folly. stultus, -a, -um, foolish. stupeo, -ēre, stupuī, aghast. sub, prep. (with abl.), under, beneath; (with acc.), to the foot of beneath. subdūcō, -ere, subduxī, subductum, haul up on shore, beach. subeō, subīre, subiī, subitum, go up to, endure. subsum, subesse, subfuī. **subter,** adv., and prep. (with acc.), beneath. sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sub**lätum,** endure. sum, esse, fui, be. summa, -ae, f., whole, chief responsibility. summus, -a, -um, highest, greatsuper, adv., and prep. (with acc.), above. superior, superioris, higher, previous. supero, -āre, overcome, excel. superstes, superstitis, surviving. supersum, superesse, superfui, be left. superus, -a, -um, upper. suppedito, -are, supply, provide. supplicium, -ī, n., punishment. suprā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), above. suprēmus, -a, -um, highest, suspicor, -ārī, suspect.

statim, adv., at once, immedi-

tristis, -e, sad.

sustineo, -ere, sustinui, sustentum, sustain. suus, -a, um, his, her, its, their (own). taceo, -ere, be silent. taedet, -ēre, it disgusts. tālis, -e, such, of such a kind. tam, adv., so.tamen, adv., nevertheless. tantus, -a, -um, so great. Tarentum, -I, n., Tarentum (a town, now Taranto). taurus, -i, m., bull. tellüs, tellüris, f., earth. tēlum, -ī, n., javelin, weapon. temerārius, -ā, -um, rash. tempestās, tempestātis, f., weather, storm. templum, -i, n., temple. tempus, temporis, $n_{\cdot,\cdot}$ time. teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum, hold. tener, tenera, tenerum, tender, delicate. tento, are, try, tempt. tenus, prep. (with abl. or gen.), as far as. tergum, -i, n., back. terra, -ae, f., earth. terreo, -ere, terrify. testis, -is, c., witness. testūdo, testūdinis, f., tortoise (a defence made by interlocking shields). timeo, -ere, timui, ---, fear. timidus, -a, -um, timid. timor, timoris, m., fear. tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise. tot, indecl., so many. tōtus, -a, -um, whole. trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber. tracto, -are, handle. trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, hand over, betray. trans, prep. (with acc.), across. transeō, transīre, transiī, transitum, go across. trēs, tria, three.

trucido, -are, butcher. tū, thou, you. tueor, -ērī, watch, defend. tum, adv., then. tum dēmum. adv., then at length. turba, -ae, f., crowd. turpis, -e, base. turris, -is, f., tower. tussis, -is, f., cough. tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine, your, yours. ubi (ubi), adv., where, when. ullus, -a, -um, any. ulterior, ulterioris, farther, remoter. ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last, remotest. ultrā, adv., beyond; prep. (with acc.), beyond. umbra, -ae, f., shade. umquam, adv., ever. unde, adv., whence. undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides. **ūniversus, -a, -um,** universal. **ūnus, -a, -um,** one. urbānus, -a, -um, city, town (adj.).**urbs, urbis,** f., city. ut, uti, adv. and conj., (so) that, (in order) that, when, as soon as. uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)? utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, whichever (of the two). uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, which (of the two) you please. uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of the two). utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs, whichever (of the two) you will. ūtilior, ūtilioris, more useful.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

that!

abl.).

utinam, adv., O that! would

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, use (with

utrimque, adv., on both sides. utrum, adv., whether (in direct questions not translated). uxor, uxoris, f., wife. vaco, -are, have leisure (with **vagor, -ārī,** wander. valeč, -ere, valui, ---, to be well or strong. valētūdō, valētūdinis, f., health. validus, -a, -um, strong. **vallis, -is,** f., valley. vallum, -ī, n., rampart. vastō, -āre, to lay waste. $v\bar{a}t\bar{e}s$, -is, c., prophet. -ve, enclitic conj., or. vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., tax, tribute. **Vēiī, -ōrum,** m.pl., Veii (an Italian town). vel, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . vēnātor, vēnātoris, m., hunter. vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditum, sell. venēnum, -ī, n., poison, drug. veneror, -ārī, worship. **venia, -ae,** f., pardon. venio, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come. ventus, -ī, m., wind. vēr, vēris, n., spring. verbum, -i, n, word. vereor, -ērī, fear. Verginius, -i, m., Verginius (a Roman). vērīsimilis, -e, probable. versus, -ūs, m., verse. vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn (trans.). vērus, -a, -um, true. vescor, -i, —, feed on (with abl.). vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours. vestīgium, -ī, n., footprint, track, trace.

vestio, -Ire, clothe. vestis, -is, f., garment. veterānus, -a, -um, veteran. vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid. vetus, veteris, old. via, -ae, f., way, street.vicinus, -a, -um, neighbouring. victoria, -ae, f., victory. vicus, -i, village. videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see; pass., seem. vigil, vigilis, vigilant, watchful. vigilō, -āre, to watch. -īre, vinxī, vinciō, vinctum, bind. vinco, -ere, vici, victum, conquer. **vinum, -i,** n., wine. violentia, -ae, f., violence. violo, -are, violate. vir, virī, m., man. vīrēs, see vīs. virtūs, virtūtis, f., virtue, valour. vis, acc. vim, no gen. or dat., abl. $\nabla \bar{i}, f.$, force, violence; $pl. \nabla \bar{i}r\bar{e}s$, vīrium, strength. vīsus, -ūs, m., sight. vīta, -ae, f., life. **vitium, -ī,** n., vice. vītō, -āre, avoid. vīvō, -ere, vixī, victum, live. vix, adv., with difficulty, scarcely. vocō, -āre, to call. volo, velle, volui, —, be willing, will. vorō, -āre, devour. \mathbf{vos} , ye, you (pl.). **vox, vocis,** f., voice. vulnerō, -āre, to wound. **vulnus, vulneris,** n., wound. vulpēs, -is, f., fox. Zēno, Zēnonis, m., Zeno (a philosopher).

II.—ENGLISH-LATIN.

ability, ingenium, -i, n. able, be, possum, potui, —, posse. abound, abundo, 1. about (of numbers), circiter (with acc.). above, super, supra (with acc.). absent, be, absum, afui, abesse; desum, defui, deesse. abstain, abstineo, abstinui, abstentum, 2. abuse, abutor, abusus sum, 3 (with abl.). accompanied by, cum (with abl.). accompany, comitor, 1. account, on - of, causā, gratiā (with gen.), propter (with acc.). accuse, accuso, 1; arguo, argui, argutum, 3. accustomed, be, soleo, solitus sum, 2. **acorn**, glans, glandis, f. across, go, transeo, transii, transitum, transire. —, trans (with acc.). act of violence, iniuria, -ae, f. active, alacer, alacris, alacre; impiger, impigra, impigrum. adapted, aptus, -a, -um. administer, administro, 1. admirably, egregie. admit, confiteor, confessus sum, 2. admonish, moneo, 2. adorn, orno, 1. advance, progredior, progressus sum, 3. adverse, adversus, -a, -um. adversity, res adversae. affair, res, -ei, f. affect, afficio, affeci, affectum, 3. affirm, affirmo, 1. after (conj.), postquam. afterwards, postea. again, iterum, rursus. against, contra, in (with acc.). age, aetas, aetatis, f. J. L. C.

aghast, be, stupeo, stupui, - , 2. aid, auxilium, -i, n. all, omnis, -e. **allegiance,** fides, -ei, f. allow, sino, sivi, situm, 3. almost, paene. **alone,** solus, -a, -um. also, etiam, necnon, quoque. altar, ara, -ae, f. although, conj., cum, etiamsi, etsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis. altogether, omnino. always, semper. ambassador, legatus, -i, m. amend, emendo, 1. among, apud, inter (with acc.). themselves, inter se. amplify, amplifico, 1. ancestors, maiores, -um, $m.\phi l$. anchor, ancora, -ae, f. ancient, antiquus, -a, -um. and, et, -que (enclitic). anger, ira, -ae, f. angry, be, irascor, iratus suni, 3. animal, animal, animalis, n. announce, nuntio, 1. annoyances, molestiae, -arum, f.pl. annoying, molestus, -a, -um. another (of several), alius, -a, -ud; —'s, alienus, -a, -um. - -- time, at, alias. anxiety, sollicitudo, sollicitudinis, f. any (adj.), ullus, -a, -um; qui, qua, quod. - - you please, quilibet, quaelibet quidlibet and (adj.) quodlibet. you will, quivis, quaevis, quidvis and (adj.) quodvis. anyone, anything, quis, quid. apathy, segnities, -ei, f. appear, appareo, 2. appearance, conspectus, -ūs, m. appoint, constituo, constitui, constitutum, 3; creo, 1.

approach, accedo, accessi, accessum, 3; appropinguo, 1. approve, approbo, 1; probo, 1. ardent, acer, acris, acre. Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, m. arise, coorior, coortus sum, 4; orior, ortus sum, 4. **arms,** arma, -orum, n.pl. army, exercitus, -ūs, m. around, circa, circum (with acc.). arrive, circa, circum (with acc.). arrive, advenio, advēni, adventum, 4; pervenio, pervēni, perventum, 4. arriving, be on the point of, advento, 1. arrow, sagitta, -ae, f. art, ars, artis, f. as, like, ceu. — far as, tenus (with abl. or gen.). - if, quasi. ascertain, comperio, comperi, compertum, 4. ask, peto, petivi or petii, petitum, 3; rogo, 1. assassin, sicarius, -i, m. assemble, convenio, convēni, conventum, 4. assembly, conventus, -ūs, m. astray, go, erro, 1. **Athens,** Athenae, -arum, $f.\phi l$. attack (verb), adorior, adortus sum, 4; (subst.) impetus, $-\bar{u}s$, m. attempt, conor, 1. authority, auctoritas, auctoritatis, f. avarice, avaritia, -ae, f. avoid, vito, 1. await, exspecto, 1. back, tergum, -i, n. —, go, redeo, redii, reditum, redire. — again, rursus. b**ad, m**alus, -a, -um. badly, male. baggage, impedimenta, -orum, n.pl. baggage-animal, immentum, -i, n. baneful, funestus, -a, -um,

bank, ripa, -ae, f. barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um. base, turpis, -e. battering-ram, aries, arietis, m. battle, pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, -i, n. —, line of, acies, -ei, f. — -ship, navis longa. be, sum, fui, esse. beach, subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3. beam, trabs, trabis, f. bear, fero, tuli, latum, ferre. --- away, aufero, abstuli, ablatum, auferre. - - back, refero, rettuli, relatum, referre. --- down, defero, detuli, delatum, deferre. bearing arms, armiger, armigera, armigerum. beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum. beauty, pulchritudo, pulchritudinis, f. **because, q**uia, quod. — of, ob (with acc.). become, fio, factus sum, fieri. **bed**, cubile, -is, n. **beech,** fagus, -i, f. before (prep.), ante (with acc.); (conj.) antequam, priusquam. before (adv.), beforehand, antea. beg, oro, 1. began, coepi, coeptum, coepisse. beginning, initium, -i, n. behind (adv.), pone; (prep.) pone, post (with acc.). behold, conspicio, conspexi, conspectum, 3; specto, 1. behoves, it, oportet, 2. believe, credo, credidi, creditum, 3 (with *dat*.). below (adv.), infra; (prep.) infra (with acc.). bend, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3. **beneath** (adv.), subter; (prep.)sub (with acc. or abl.), subter (with acc.).

beneficial, be, prosum, profui, prodesse. ---, salutaris, -e. benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um. beseech, oro, 1. beseems, it, decet, 2. besiege, obsideo, obsedi, obsessum, 2; oppugno, 1. bestow praise on, collaudo, 1. betray, trado, tradidi, traditum, 3. **betrayer**, proditor, proditoris, m. betrothed, sponsus, -i, m. better, melior, melioris. between, inter (with acc.). bewail, ploro, 1. beware, caveo, cāvi, cautum, 2. beyond, adv., ultra; prep. (except), praeter (with acc.); (situated beyond) ultra (with acc.). bid, iubeo, iussi, iussum, 2. bind, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4. **bird,** avis, -is, f. **bite,** mordeo, momordi, morsum, 2. bitterly resent, aegre fero. black, niger, nigra, nigrum. **blame** (subst.), culpa, -ae, f.; (verb) culpo, 1. blush, rubeo, rubui, —, 2. b**oar, wild,** aper, apri, *m*. boast, glorior, 1. **boastful,** gloriosus, -a, -um. **body,** corpus, corporis, n. **bold**, audax, audacis. **boldly**, audacter. **boldness,** audacia, -ae, f. bone, os, ossis, n. book, liber, libri, m. booty, praeda, -ae, f. bordering on, finitimus, -a, -um. born, be, nascor, natus sum, 3. both, ambo, -ae, -o; on-sides, utrimque. bow, arcus, -us, m. boy, puer, pueri, m. branch, ramus, -i, m. b**rave**, fortis, -e. bravely, fortiter.

diremptum, 3. —into, irrumpo, irrupi, irruptum, 3. — out, erumpo, erupi, eruptum, 3. bribery, ambitus, -ūs, m. bridge, pons, pontis, m. brief, brevis, -e. briefly, breviter. bring, adduco, adduxi, adductum, 3; affero, attuli, allatum, afferre. ---about, efficio, effeci, effectum, 3. ---back, reporto, 1. -in, infero, intuli, illatum, in-—forth, pario, peperi, partum, 3. -together, confero, contuli, collatum, conferre. **Britain**, Britannia, -ae, f. broad, lātus, -a, -um. bronze, aes, aeris, n. brother, frater, fratris, m. build, to, aedifico, 1. **building**, aedificium, -i, n. bull, taurus, -i, m. burden, onus, oneris, n. burdensome, molestus, -a, -um. burn (trans.), comburo, combussi, combustum, 3; cremo, i ; incendo, incendi, incensum, 3. bury, sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum, 4. but, at, autem (to be placed after the first word), sed. butcher, trucido, 1. **buy,** emo, ēmi, **empt**um, 3. by (of agent), a, ab (with abl.). Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, m. calamity, calamitas, calamitatis, call, voco, 1; appello, 1. --- back, revoco, 1. — together, convoco, I. camp, castra, -orum, n.pl. can, possum, potui, -, posse.

break down, dirimo,

captive, captivus, -i, m. care, take, curo, 1. carpenter, faber, fabri, m. carry, porto, 1. - off, abripio, abripui, abreptum, 3. - **on,** administro, 1. **Carthage**, Carthago, Carthaginis, f. Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um. Catilina, Catilina, -ae, m. Cato, Cato, Catonis, m. cause, causa, -ae, f. cavalry, equitatus, $-\bar{u}s$; pl. of eques, equitis, m.; (adj.) equester, equestris, equestre. cave, spelunca, -ae, f. celebrate, celebro, 1. certain (sure), certus, -a, -um. certain (person or thing), quidam, quaedam, quiddam and (adj.) quoddam. **chain**, catena, -ae, f. chance, casus, us, m. character (written), littera, -ae, f.; (personal) mores, morum, m.pl.charge (military phrase), impetum facio. chariot, currus, -ūs, m. charioteer, auriga, -ac, m. chastise, castigo, 1. **cheer** (verb), confirmo, 1; (subst.) clamor, clamoris, m. cheerful, alacer, alacris, alacre. **chief,** princeps, principis, c. children, liberi, -orum, m. Cicero, Cicero, Ciceronis, m. citadel, arx, arcis, f. citizen, civis, -is, c. city (subst.), urbs, urbis, f.; (adj.) urbanus, -a, -um. close (adv.), iuxta; close (prep.), iuxta (with acc.). clothe, vestio, 4. cloud, nubes, -is, f. cold (adj.), frigidus, -a, -um; (subst.) frigus, frigoris, n. collect, cogo, coegi, coactum, 3. Colline, Collinus, -a, -um.

come, venio, veni, ventum, 4. command (verb), impero, I (with dat.); (subst.) iussum, -i, n. — of, be in, praesum, praefui, pracesse (with dat.). commit (crime), admitto, admisi, admissum, 3. comrade, commilito, commilitonis, m. concerning, de (with abl.). concerns, it, refert, referre, rettucondemn, condemno, 1. condition, condicio, condicionis, confess, confiteor, confessus sum, 2. confident, be, confide, confisus sum, 3. conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3. consent, concedo, concessi, concessum, 3. consider, habeo, 2; puto, 1. conspire, conjuro, 1. construct, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, 3; (a trench) perduco, perduxi, perductum, 3. consul, consul, consulis, m. consult the interests of, consulo, consului, consultum, 3 (with dat.). consume, consumo, consumpsi, consumptum, 3. contain, contineo, continui, contentum, 2. contest, certamen, certaminis, n. control, coerceo, 2. conversation, sermo, sermonis, m. Corinth, Corinthus, -i, f. corn, frumentum, -i, n. corpse, cadaver, cadaveris, n. correct, emendo, 1. corrupt, pravus, -a, -um. cough, tussis, -is, f. council, concilium, -i, n.; conventus, -ūs, m.; hold a conventum ago. counsel, consilium, -i, n.

count, numero, 1.

country (native land), patria, -ae, f.; (opposed to town) rus, ruris, n.; (adj.)rusticus,-a,-um. course, cursus, -ūs, m.; hold on one's —, cursum tenēre. cowardice, ignavia, -ae, f. cowardly, ignavus, -a, -um. **craft,** fraus, fraudis, f. Crassus, Crassus, -i, m. create, creo, 1. credible, credibilis, -c. creditor, creditor, creditoris, m. cremate, cremo, 1. crime, scelus, sceleris, n.; commit a —, scelus admitto, admisi, admissum, 3. crowd, turba, -ae, f. cruel, crudelis, -e. cultivate, colo, colui, cultum, 3. cup, poculum, -i, n. curb, coerceo, 2. curved, curvus, -a, -um. custom, mos, moris, m. cut off, intercludo, interclusi, interclusum, 3. daily, cottidie. dance, salto, 1. danger, periculum, -i, n. dangerous, perniciosus, -a, -um. dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2. dash, affligo, afflixi, afflictum, 3. daughter, filia, -ae, f. day, dies, -ei, m. or (in sing.) f. **dead body**, cadaver, cadaveris, n. dear, carus, -a, -um. death, mors, mortis, f. debt, aes alienum, aeris alieni, n. declare, declaro, 1. dedicate, dedico, 1. **deed,** factum, -i, n. deep, profundus, -a, -um. deeply, graviter. defend, tueor, 2. delay, moror (trans. and intrans.), deliberate, delibero, 1. delicate, tener, tenera, tenerum. delight, delecto, 1. delights, it, iuvat, iūvit, 1.

deny, nego, 1. depart, discedo, discessi, discessum, 3. deplore, deploro, 1. **depth**, altitudo, altitudinis, f. descend, descendo, descendi, descensum, 3. desert, desero, deserui, desertum, 3. deserve, mereo, 2. **design**, consilium, -i, n. desire (subst.), cupido, cupidinis, f.; (verb) cupio, cupivi, cupitum, 3; desidero, 1. desirous, cupidus, -a, -um. despise, contemno, contempsi, contemptum, 3. destroy, dirimo, diremi, diremptum, 3; deleo, delevi, deletum, 2. devote oneself to, studeo, studui (with dat.). devour, voro, 1. die, morior, mortuus sum, 3 ; e vita excedo, excessi, excessum, 3; obeo, obii, obitum, obire. difficult, difficilis, -e. difficulty, with, vix. **dignity**, dignitas, dignitatis, f. **diligence**, diligentia, -ae, f. din, strepitus, -ūs, m. disadvantageous, iniquus, **disaster**, clades, -is, f. disband, dimitto, dimisi, dimissum, 3. discharge (an office), fungor, functus sum, 3 (with abl.). disciple, discipulus, -i, m. discourse, sermo, sermonis, m. disease, morbus, -i, m. disgrace, dedecus, dedecoris, n. disgusts, it, taedet, 2. dishonourable, improbus, -a, -um. dismay, perturbo, 1. **displease**, displiceo, 2 (with dat.). disposition, ingenium, -i, n. distant, be, disto, —, —, 1. distinguished, magnificus, -um.

```
distress, excrucio, 1.
distribute, distribuo, distribui,
   distributum, 3.
divide, divido, divisi, divisum, 3;
  partior, 4.
do, facio, feci, factum, 3.
doctor, medicus, -i, m.
\mathbf{dog}, canis, -is, c.
doubt, dubito, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, f.
down from, de (with abl.).
draw, educo, eduxi, eductum, 3.
--- up,
        instruo, instruxi,
  structum, 3.
drink, bibo, bibi, ---, 3.
drive, ago, egi, actum, 3; pello,
  pepuli, pulsum, 3.
— forward, incito, 1.
— out, expello, expuli, expul-
  sum, 3.
drug, venenum, -i, n.
dry, siccus, -a, -um.
dutiful, pius, -a, -um.
duty, officium, -i, n.
dwell, incolo, incolui, incultum,
each, quisque, quaeque, quidque
  and (adj.) quodque.
— (of the two), uterque, utra-
  que, utrumque.
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
earlier (adv.), maturius.
earth, tellus, telluris, f.; terra,
earthwork, agger, aggeris, m.
ease, otium, -i, n.
easy, facilis, -e.
egg, ovum, -i, n.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut, vel
  . . . vel.
eldest, natu maximus, -a, -um.
election, comitia, -orum, n. \not pl.;
  hold an -, comitia habeo, 2.
eloquence, eloquentia, -ae, f.
eloquent, disertus, -a, -um; elo-
  quens, eloquentis.
elsewhere, alibi.
embassy, legatio, legationis, f.
```

embrace (verb), amplector, aniplexus sum, 3; (subst.) complexus, -ūs, m. empire, imperium, -i, n. end (verb), finio, 4; (subst.) finis, endure, subeo, subii, subitum, subire; suffero, sustuli, sublatum, sufferre. **enemy** (public), hostis, -is, c.; (private) inimicus, -i, m. energetic, alacer, alacris, alacre. enjoy, fruor, fructus sum, 3 (with abl.). enmity, inimicitia, -ae, f. enough, satis. enrol, conscribo, conscripsi, conscriptum, 3. enter, intro, 1. entrust, permitto, permisi, permissum, 3. envious, be, see envy. envy, invideo, invīdi, invisum, 2 (with dat.). equestrian, equester, equestris, equestre. escape, effugio, effugi, —, 3; elabor, elapsus sum, 3. especially, praesertim. esteem, diligo, dilexi, dilectum, 3; facio, feci, factum, 3(with gen.). even if, etiamsi, etsi. ever, umquam. every, omnis, -e. everybody, see everyone. everyone, omnes, -ium. example, exemplum, -i, n. excel, supero, 1. **excellent**, praestans, praestantis. excellently, optime. excite, incito, 1. exercise, exerceo, 2. exhaust, exhaurio, exhausi, exhaustum, 4. exhort, cohortor, 1; hortor, 1. exile, exul, exulis, m. experienced, peritus, -a, -um. exploits, res gestae, rerum gestarum, f.

extend, amplifico, 1. extinguish, exstinguo, extinxi, exstinctum, 3. extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um. eye, oculus, -i, m. **face**, facies, -ei, f. — to face, coram (with abl.). fail, deficio, defeci, defectum, 3. **faith,** fides, -ei, f. faithful, fidelis, -e. fall, cado, cecidi, casum, 3; concido, concidi, ---, 3. --- away, deficio, defeci, defectum, 3. with, occurro, occurri, --- in occursum, 3 (with dat.). false, falsus, -a, -um. fame, fama, -ae, f. famous, clarus, -a, -um. far, longe, procul; too-, longius; — from, procul (with abl.). farther (adv.), longius; (adj.) ulterior, ulterioris. farthest, ultimus, -a, -um. fasten, deligo, 1. fat, pinguis, -e. fatal, mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum. father, pater, patris, m. father-in-law, socer, soceri, m. fatigue, defatigo, 1. **favour**, gratia, -ae, f. favourable, be, faveo, fāvi, fautum, 2. fear (verb), timeo, timui, ---, 2; vereor, 2; (subst.) timor, timoris, m. **feed on,** vescor, — (with abl.) feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3. few, pauci, -ae, -a. field, ager, agri, m. fierce, acer, acris, acre. fiercely, ferociter. fight, pugno, 1; — a pitched **battle**, dimico, 1. find, invenio, invēni, inventum, 4 ; reperio, repperi, repertum,4. finish, conficio, confeci, confectum, 3; finio, 4.

fire, ignis, -is, m.; incendium, -i, n. first, primus, -a, -um. fit, aptus, -a, -um. flame, flamma, -ae, f. flash of lightning, fulgur, fulguris, n. flattery, adulatio, adulationis, f. flee, fugio, fügi, fugitum, 3. **fleet,** classis, -is, f. **flesh**, caro, carnis, f. flight, fuga, -ae, f.; put to -fugo, 1; take to —, pedem refero, rettuli, relatum, referre. flock, grex, gregis, m. flourish, floreo, florui, —, 2. flourishing, opulentus, -a, -um. flow down, defluo, defluxi, defluxum, 3. flower, flos, floris, m. foe, hostis, -is, c. follow, sequor, secutus sum, 3; up, persequor, persecutus sum, 3; insequor, insecutus, sum, 3. following, posterus, -a, -um. folly, stultitia, -ae, f. food, cibus, -i, m. foolish, stultus, -a, -um. foot, pes, pedis, m.; to the — of, sub (with acc.). footprint, vestigium, -i, n. foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, m. forage, pabulor, 1. forbid, veto, vetui, vetitum, 1; prohibeo, 2. force, vis, acc. vim, no gen. or dat., abl. vi, f. forces, copiae, -arum, f. foreseeing, proviprovidens, dentis; providus, -a, -um. forget, obliviscor, oblitus sum, 3 (with gen. or acc.). former, prior, prioris; pristinus, -a, -um. formerly, quondam. fortify, munio, 4. fortunate, felix, felicis; more--, felicior, felicioris. fortune, fortuna, -ae, f.

fountain, fons, fontis, m. go past, praetereo, praeterii, **fox,** vulpes, -is, f. **fraud,** fraus, fraudis, f. free (adj.), liber, libera, liberum; subire. (verb) libero, 1. friend, amicus, -i, m. friendly, amicus, -a, -11m. **friendship**, amicitia, -ae, f. **frighten,** perturbo, 1. frog, rana, -ae, f. from, a, ab (with abl.); e, ex (with abl.). fruit, fructus, -ūs, m. frugiferum. full, plenus, -a, -um. fully, copiose. furnish, praebeo, 2. further, longius. Gabii, Gabii, -orum, m.pl. **Gades,** Gades, -ium, $f. \not pl$. **gain,** pario, peperi, partum, 3. Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um. game, lusus, -ūs, m. garden, hortus, -i, m. garland, corona, -ae, f. garment, vestis, -is, f. garrison, praesidium, -i, n. gate, porta, -ae, f.; foris, -is, Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, m. **Gaul,** Gallia, -ae, f. general, dux, ducis, m. generation, aetas, aetatis, f. **genius,** ingenium, -i, n. German, Germanus, -a, -um. get, nanciscor, nactus sum, 3. gift, donum, -i, n. girl, puella, -ae, f. give, do, dedi, datum, dare. um, 3. — (as a present), dono, 1. — orders, impero, I (with dat.). go, eo, ivi or ii, itum, ire. tum, 3. across, transeo, transii, transitum, transire. — back, redeo, redii, reditum, redire. --forth, prodeo, prodii, proditum, prodire.

praeteritum, praeterire. - **up to,** subeo, subii, **s**ubitum, goblet, poculum, -i, n. god, a, deus, -i, m. goddess, dea, -ae, f. gold, aurum, -i, 11. **good** (adj.), bonus, -a, -um; (subst.) bonum, -i, n.; goods, bona, -orum, n. ---, do, prosum, profui, prodesse. **goodwill,** benevolentia, -ae, f. goose, anser, anseris, m. govern, rego, rexi, rectum, 3. gradually, paulatim. grandfather, avus, -i, m. great, magnus, -a, -um; (as—) as, quantus, -a, -um; very---, permagnus, -a, -um; **how**—? quantus, -a, -um; so-, tantus, -a, -um. greater, maior, maioris. greatest, maximus, -a, -um; (with an abstract substantive) summus, -a, -um. greatly, magnopere. Greece, Graccia, -ae, f. greedy, avidus, -a, -um; cupidus, -a, -um; rapax, rapacis. Greek, Graecus, -a, -um. grey, glaucus, -a, -um. grief, dolor, doloris, m. grieve, dolco, 2. guard (subst.), custos, custodis, m.; (verb) custodio, 4. **guile,** fraus, fraudis, f. hails, it, grandinat, 1. halt, consisto, constiti, constit**hand,** manus, $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, f. – **over,** trado, tradidi, tradihandle, tracto, 1. Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalis, happen, evenio, evēni, eventum, 4. happens, it, accidit, accidit, 3; contingit, contigit, 3.

happier, felicior, felicioris. happy, felix, felicis. harbour, portus, -ūs, m. harm, be harmful, obsum, obfui. obesse. —, to do, noceo, 2 (with dat.). **harsh,** asper, aspera, asperum. **harvest**, messis, -is, f. hasten, contendo, contendi, contentum, 3; festino, 1. hate, odi, odisse. haul up on shore, subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3. have, habeo, 2. — leisure, vaco, 1. he, she, it, is, ea, id. **head**, caput, capitis, n. headlong, praeceps, praecipitis. **health**, valetudo, valetudinis, f. **hear,** audio, 4. heart, cor, cordis, n. **heat**, ardor, ardoris, m. heaven, caelum, -i, n. **heavily,** graviter. heavy, gravis, -e. **height,** altitudo, altitudinis, *f*. **heir,** heres, heredis, c. **help,** auxilium, -i, *n*. helpless, inops, inopis. here, hic. hesitate, dubito, 1. hide, abdo, abdidi, abditum, 3; lateo, latui, ---, 2. high, altus, -a, -um. higher, superior, superioris. highest, summus, -a, -um; supremus, -a, -um. hill, collis, -is, m. himself (reflexive), se or sese. hinder, prohibeo, 2. his (the possessor being the subject), suus, -a, -um; otherwise **hither** (adj.), citerior, citerioris: (adv.) huc. hold, teneo, tenui, tentum, 2. at, domi; home (i.e. homewards), domum. honour, honoro, 1.

hope (verb), spero, 1; (subst.) spes, -ei, f. Horace, Horatius, -i, m. **horn**, cornu, - $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, n. horse, equus, -i, m. — -soldier, eques, equitis, m. **hostage,** obses, obsidis, *c*. hostile, inimicus, -a, -um. hostility, inimicitia, -ae, f. **hour,** hora, -ae, f. house, domus, -ūs, f. (abl. sing. domo). household, familia, -ae, f. how? quomodo. - great? quantus, -a, -um. - many? quot, indecl. however (to be placed after the first word), autem. human, humanus, -a, -um. hunter, venator, venatoris, m. hurl, iacto, 1. hurtful, noxius, -a, -um. husband, maritus, -i, m. husbandman, agricola, -ae, m. I, ego. if, si. ignorance concerning, keep in, celo, 1. ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum —**, to be,** aegroto, 1. **illustrious,** clarus, -a, -um. immediately, statim. immense, ingens, ingentis. immortal, immortalis, -e. importance to, it is of, interest, interfuit, interesse. i**mpulse,** impulsus, -ūs, *m*. impunity, with, impune. in, in (with abl). -, be, insum, infui, inesse. — the midst, be, intersum, interfui, interesse. increase (trans.), augeo, auxi, auctum, 2. indignation, dolor, doloris, m. **indolent,** ignavus, -a, -um. indulge, be indulgent, indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, 2 (with dat.). **infamy,** dedecus, dedecoris, n.

infantry, pl. of pedes, peditis, m. influence, auctoritas, auctoritatis, f. information, get, certior fio. inhabit, habito, 1. **inhabitant**, incola, -ae, c. initiative, impulsus, -ūs, m. injure, noceo, 2 (with dat.). **injury, i**niuria, -ae, *f*. **inmost,** intimus, -a, -um. inner, interior, interioris. innocent, insons, insontis. instigate, sollicito, 1. interrogate, interrogo, 1. into, in (with acc.). invade,invado,invasi,invasum,3. **iron,** ferrum, -i, *n*. island, insula, -ae, ∫. Italy, Italia, -ae, f. **javelin,** telum, -i, n. **join, i**ungo, iunxi, iunctum, 3. **journey,** iter, itineris, *n*. **joy,** gaudium, -i, n. **judge,** iudex, iudicis, m. keen, acer, acris, acre. keep, custodio, 4;—in a place, contineo, continui, contentum, **key,** clavis, -is, f. kill, exanimo, 1; interficio, interfeci, interfectum, 3; neco, 1. kind, of such a, talis, -e. **-, of what**? qualis, -e. king, rex, regis, m. kingdom, regnum, -i, n. **knee,** genu, -ūs, *n*. know, scio, 4; not-, ignoro, 1; nescio, 4. ---, get to, cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, 3. knowledge of, without the, clam (with acc.). known, notus, -a, -um. Labienus, Labienus, -i, m. labour, labor, laboris, m.; laboro, t. lacking in, be, deficio, defeci, defectum, 3 (with abl.). lair, cubile, -is, n. lamb, agnus, -i, m.

lament, deploro, 1. **land, e**xpono, exposui, expositum, 3 (trans.). **language,** lingua, -ae, *f*. large, magnus, -a, -um. last, extremus, -a, -um; postremus, -a, -um ; ultimus, -a, later, posterior, posterioris. latest-born, postumus, -a, -um. **Latin,** Latinus, -a, -um. launch, deduco, deduxi, deductum, 3. law, lex, legis, f. lead, duco, duxi, ductum, 3. back, reduco, reduxi, reductum, 3. — out, educo, eduxi, eductum, 3. leader, dux, ducis, m. **leaf**, folium, -i, n. learn by heart, edisco, edidici, —, 3. learned, doctus, -a, -um. learning, eruditio, eruditionis, /. least, minimus, -a, -um. leave, relinquo, reliqui, relictum, 3. left, be, supersum, superfui, superesse. —, on the left hand, laevus, -a, -um; the left hand, laeva, -ae, f. (sc. manus). leg, crus, cruris, n. **legion,** legio, legionis, f. leisure, have, vaco, 1. length, at, demum, tum demum. less, minor, minoris. lest, ne. **letter** (character), littera, -ae, f.; (epistle) epistola, -ae, f.; litterae, -arum, $f. \not pl$. levy, delectus, -ūs, m. **liberal**, liberalis, -e. liberty, libertas, libertatis, f. lie, lie dead, iaceo, 2. lieutenant, legatus, -i, m. life, vita, -ae, f. light-armed, expeditus, -a, -um. lightning, flash of, fulgur, fulguris, n.

like, similis, -e. — **as,** ceu. lily, lilium, -i, n. line of battle, acies, -ei, f. linger, commoror, 1. lion, leo, leonis, m. **literature,** litterae, -arum, f.pl. little, parvus, -a, -um. — while, for a, parumper. live, vivo, vixi, victum, 3. load, onero, 1. lofty, arduus, -a, -um. long (adj.), longus, -a, -um; (*adv*.), diu. — as, as, dum. — for, desidero, 1. look at, specto, 1. --- down on, despicio, despexi, despectum, 3. loosen, solvo, solvi, solutum, 3. loquacious, loquax, loquacis. lord, dominus, -i, m. love (verb), amo, 1; (subst.) amor amoris, m. lover, sponsus, -i, m. low, humilis, -e. lower, inferior, inferioris. lowest, imus, -a, -um. **loyalty,** fides, -ei, f. made, be, fio, factus sum, fieri. magnificent, magnificus, -a, -um. make, facio, feci, factum, 3. - war upon, bellum infero, intuli, illatum, inferre. **male,** mas, maris, m. man, vir, viri, m.; (person) homo, hominis, c.; to a man, ad unum. manage, administro, 1. manner, modus, -i, m.; mos, moris, m. man-of-war, navis longa. many, multi, -ae, -a. -, how? quot, indecl. march, iter, itineris, n. Marcus, Marcus, -i, m. market-place, forum, -i, n. **Mars,** Mars, Martis, *m*. **Marseilles,** Massilia, -ae, f.

marsh, palus, -udis, f. master, dominus, -i, m.; magister, magistri, m. meanwhile, interea, interim. measure out, metior, mensus sum, 4. meditate, cogito, 1. mendacious, mendax, mendacis. merchant, mercator, mercatoris, — -vessel, navis oneraria. merit, mereo, 2. messenger, nuntius, -i, m. middle, medius, -a, -um. midst, be in the, intersum, interfui, interesse. milk, lac, lactis, n. mind, animus, -i, m. mindful, memor, memoris. mine, meus, -a, -um. misbeseems, it, dedecet, 2. mistaken, be, erro, 1. mitigate, mollio, 4. money, aes, aeris, n.; argentum, —, sum of money, pecunia, -ac. /. **moon**, luna, -ae, f. **morals,** mores, morum, m. more, plus, pluris (subst.); pl. plures, plura (adj. and subst.); adv., plus. mortal, mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum. **mother**, mater, matris, f. mountain, mons, montis, m. move (trans.), moveo, movi, motum, 2; admoveo, admovi, admotum, 2; commoveo, commovi, commotum, 2; (intrans.), moveor. much, multus, -a, -um. multimultitude, multitudo, tudinis, f. my, meus, -a, -um. **name**, nomen, nominis, n. narrate, narro, 1. narrowness, angustiae, -arum, f.pl. **native land,** patria, -ac, f.

near (adj.), finitimus, -a, -um; (adv.) prope; (prep.) prope, propter (with acc.). nearer, citerior, citerioris; propior, propioris. nearest, proximus, -a, -um. need, there is, opus est (with abl. of the thing needed); be in of, egeo, egui,—2 (with abl. or gen.). **needle**, acus, -us, f. needy, egenus, -a, -um; he ---, egeo, egui, — 2. neglectful, be, desum, deesse. neighbouring, vicinus, -a, -um. neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum; neither . . . nor, nec . . . nec, neque . . . neque. Neptune, Neptunus, -i, m. nest, nidus, -i, m. **net**, rete, -is, n. never, numquam. nevertheless, tamen. new, novus, -a, -um. next, proximus, -a, -um. night, nox, noctis f. - by, noctu. nightly, nocturnus, -a, -um. no, none, nullus, -a, -um. no one, nemo, acc. neminem, dat. nemimi (gen. and abl. supplied by nullus). nobly-born, nobilis, -e. nor, nec, neque. nose, nasus, -i, m. not, non, ne; (interrog.) nonne. —, and, nec. — even, ne . . . quidem. — yet, nondum. nothing, nihil, indecl., n. now, nunc, (by this time) iam. **number,** numerus, -i, *m*. O that! utinam. oak, quercus, -ūs, f. obey, obtempero, I (with dat.); pareo, 2 (with dat.). observe, conspicio, conspexi, conspectum, 3; servo, 1.

offer, offero, obtuli, oblatum, offerre. often, saepe; more —, saepius; **very** —, saepissime. old, vetus, veteris. — age, senectus, senectutis, f. — man, senex, senis, m. older, senior, senioris. once, semel. —, at, statim. one, unus, -a, -um. — **from another,** inter se. —, the (of two), alter, altera, alterum; (of several) alius, -a, -ud. only, solum. (trans.), aperio, aperui, apertum, 4. openly, palam. **opinion**, sententia, -ae, f. opportunity, facultas, facultatis, f.; occasio, occasionis, f. opposite (prep.), adversum, adversus, contra (with acc.). opulent, opulentus, -a, -um. or, aut, vel, -ve (enclitic); (in double questions) an; either ... or, aut ... aut, vel ... vel. **oration,** oratio, orationis, f. orator, orator, oratoris, m. order, iussum, -i, n. orders, to give, impero, 1. other, the (of two), alter, altera, alterum. otherwise, aliter. ought, deben, 2. our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum. out of, e, ex (with abl.). outer, exterior, exterioris. outside, exterus, -a, -um. --- of, extra (with acc.). overcome, supero, 1. overhang, immineo, —, —, 2. overwhelm, opprimo, oppressi, oppressum, 3. owe, debeo, 2. pace, passus, -ūs, m. pain, dolor, doloris, m.

obtain, adipiscor, adeptus sum, 3.

pains, it, piget, 2. pale, be, palleo, pallui, -, 2. panic, pavor, pavoris, m.; strike with —, perterreo, 2. pardon, venia, -ae, f. **parent**, parens, parentis, c. **Paris**, Lutetia, -ae, f. parley, colloquor, collocutus sum, part, pars, partis, f. past, praeteritus, -a, -um. go, praetereo, praeterii, praeteritum, praeterire. pay, solvo, solvi, solutum, 3. peace, pax, pacis, f. people, populus, -i, m. perfidious, perfidus, -a, -um. perish, pereo, perii, peritum, perire. permitted, it is, licet, 2. pernicious, perniciosus, -a, -um. persist in, sto, steti, statum, i (with abl.). person, homo, hominis, c. persuade, persuadeo, persuasi, persuasum, 2. physician, medicus, -i, m. pillage, diripio, diripui, direptum, 3; spolio, 1. pilot, gubernator, gubernatoris, m. pirate, praedo, praedonis, m. pitch, pono, posui, positum, 3. pity, it moves to, miseret, 2. place (subst.), locus, -i, m.; (verb) colloco, 1; pono, posui, positum, 3. **plain**, planities, -ei, f. plan, consilium, -1, n. play, ludo, lusi, lusum, 3. pleasant, amoenus, -a, -um. please, placeo, 2 (with dat.). __, any you, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (adj.) quodlibet. pleases, it, delectat, 1; libet, 2. pleasing, gratus, -a, -um. plentifully, copiose. plough, aro, 1. poem, carmen, carminis, n.

poet, poeta, -ae, m. point of arriving, be on the, advento, 1. – out, indico, 1. poison, venenum, -i, n. polish(in manners, etc.), erudio, 4. **Pompeius,** Pompeius, -i, m. poor, pauper, pauperis. position, take up a, consisto, constiti, constitum, 3. possession of, get, potior, 4 (with abl.). post, statio, stationis. f. **power of, in the,** penes (with acc.) powerful, potens, potentis. praise (verb), laudo, 1; (subst.) laus, laudis, f. prefer, malo, malui, -, malle. preferable, satius. prepare, paro, 1; comparo, 1. presence of, in the, apud (with acc.); coram (with abl.); palam (with abl.). present, be, adsum, adfui, adesse. preserve, conservo, 1. pretence, species, -ei, f. prevent,obsto,obstiti,obstatum,i. previous, superior, superioris. priest, sacerdos, sacerdotis, c. prison, carcer, carceris, m. probable, verisimilis, -e. proclaim, pronuntio, 1. promise, polliceor, 2; spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, 2. **property,** bona, -orum, n.pl. **prophet**, vates, -is, c. prosperity, res prosperae. prosperous, prosperus, -a, -um. protract, produco, produxi, productum, 3. provide, suppedito, 1. **province**, provincia, -ae, f. prow, prora, -ae, f. prudent, prudens, prudentis. punish, punio, 4. **punishment**, supplicium, -i, n. pupil, discipulus, -i, m. purpose, consilium, -i, n.; on --consulto.

pursue, insequor, insecutus sum, 3; persequor, persecutus sum, 3. pursuit, studium, -i, n. put, colloco, 1. out, expono, exposui, expositum, 3. queen, regina, -ae, f. question, interrogo, 1. quit, egredior, egressus sum, 3. rains, it, pluit, pluit, 3. raise, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, 3; tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3. rampart, vallum, -i, n. rapacious, rapax, rapacis. rash, temerarius, -a, -um. rather, magis. read, lego, lēgi, lectum, 3. — aloud, recito, 1. **reason**, ratio, rationis, f.; by of (after a negative), prae (with recall, revoco, 1. receive, accipio, accepi, acceptum, 3; recipio, recepi, receptum, 3. recently, nuper; very-, nuperrecite, recito, 1. recognise, cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, 3. reconnoitre, speculor, 1. recover, recipero, 1. **red,** ruber, rubra, rubrum. **refine,** emollio, 4. refresh, recreo, 1. **region,** regio, regionis, f. **reign,** regno, 1. reinforcements, auxilia, -orum, n. reject, repudio, 1. rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2. relate, narro, 1. relinquish, relinquo, reliqui, relictum, 3. remain, maneo, mansi, mansum, 2. — firm, sto, steti, statum, 1. remaining, reliquus, -a, -um. remarkable, eximius, -a, -um. remedy, remedium, -i, n.

remember, memini, meminisse. remoter, ulterior, ulterioris. remotest, ultimus, -a, -um. renew, redintegro, 1. renewal, integratio, integrationis, f. renowned, clarus, -a, -um. repair, reficio, refeci, refectum, 3. repents, it, paenitet, 2. reply, respondeo, respondi, responsum, 2. report, fama, -ae, f. reproach, probrum, -i, n. republic, res publica, rei publicae, f. resent bitterly, aegre fero, tuli, latum, ferre. reserve, reservo, 1. responsibility, chief, summa,-ae, f. rest, otium, -i, n. restrain, cohibeo, 2. retain, retineo, retinui, retentum, 2. retire, excedo, excessi, excessum, return (intrans.), regredior, regressus sum, 3; revertor, reverti, reversum, 3; (subst.) reditus, -ūs, m. revolt, motus, -ūs, m. reward, praemium, -i, n. Rhine, Rhenus, -i, m. **Rhone**, Rhodanus, -i, m. rich, dives, divitis. richer, ditior, ditioris. riches, divitiae, -arum, $f. \not pl$. richest, ditissimus, -a, -um. right, on the right hand, dexter, dextra, dextrum; the right **hand,** dextra, -ae, f. (sc. manus). river, flumen, fluminis, n.; fluvius, -i, m. **robber**, praedo, praedonis, m. rock, saxum, -i, n. Roman, a, Romanus, -i, m. Romulus, Romulus, -i, m. rose, rosa, -ae, f. rough, asper, aspera, asperum.

```
rule (subst.), imperium, -i, n.;
  (verb) rego, rexi, rectum, 3.
rumour, fama, -ae, f.
run, curro, cucurri, cursum, 3.
— in different directions, dis-
  curro, discurri or discucurri,
  discursum, 3.
— to and fro, curso, 1.
rush, ruo, rui, rutum, 3.
sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum.
sacrifice, immolo, 1.
sad, tristis, -e.
safe and sound, incolumis, -e.
safety, salus, salutis, f.
sagacious, sagax, sagacis.
sail, set, naves solvo, solvi, solu-
  tum, 3.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake of, for the, causā (with gen.);
  gratiā (with gen.).
sally forth, erumpo, erupi, erup-
  tum, 3.
salutary, salutaris, -e.
same place, to the, eodem.
—, the, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, satisfacio, satisfeci, sa-
  tisfactum, 3 (with dat.).
say, aio, defect.; inquam, inquii,
  defect.; dico, dixi, dictum, 3.
- frequently, dicito, 1.
--- . . . not, nego, 1.
scanty, exiguus, -a, -um.
scarcely, vix.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, J.
sea, mare, -is, n.
seat, sedile, -is, n.
second time, a, iterum.
-, the (of two), alter, altera,
  alterum.
secretly, clam.
see, specto, 1; video, vīdi, vi-
  sum, 2.
seek, peto, petivi or petii, peti-
  tum, 3.
seem, videor, visus sum, 2.
seize, invado, invasi, invasum,
  3; abripio, abripui, abreptum, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um.
sell, vendo, vendidi, venditum, 3
```

semblance, species, -ei, f. senate, senatus, -ūs, m. send, mitto, misi, missum, 3. separate, differo, distuli, dilatum differre. servant, minister, ministri, m. set, praebeo, 2. -- foot in, ingredior, ingressus sum, 3. -- in the way, obicio, obieci, obiectum, 3. --- out, proficiscor, profectus sum, 3. — over, praeficio, praefeci, praefectum, 3 (with dat.). settle, consisto, constiti, constitum, 3. severe, gravis, -e. shade, umbra, -ae, f. shake, quatio,—, quassum, 3. shames, it, pudet, 2. sharp, acutus, -a, -um. shatter, quasso, 1. **shepherd**, pastor, pastoris, m. shield, scutum, -i, n. **ship,** navis, -is, f. — of war, navis longa. **shore**, litus, litoris, n.; ora, -ae, f. short, brevis, -e. **shout** (subst.), clamor, clamoris, m.; (verb) clamo, 1. --- (together), conclamo, 1. show, monstro, 1; ostendo, ostendi, ostentum, 3; praebeo, 2. **shower**, imber, imbris, m. shrewd, sagax, sagacis. shut, claudo, clausi, clausum, 3. sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum. side, on this, citra — of, on this, cis, citra (with acc.). sides, from all, on all—, undique. -, from both, on both, utrimque. siege, oppugnatio, oppugnationis, sight, visus, -ūs, m.; conspectus, - of, come in, conspicor, 1. sign, signum, -i, n. silent, be, taceo, 2.

silver, argentum, -i, n. sin, pecco, 1. since, cum, quoniam. sing, canto, 1. sister, soror, sororis, f. situated, situs, -a, -um. **skilful,** peritus, -a, -um. skilled, doctus, -a, -um. **skin,** pellis, -is, f. slanderous, maledicus, -a, -um. slave, servus, -i, m. slay, neco, 1. sleep (verb), dormio, 4; (subst.), somnus, -i, m. slender, gracilis, -e. slip out, elabor, elapsus sum, 3. **sloth**, segnities, -ei, f. small, parvus, -a, -um. smaller, minor, minoris. smallest, minimus, -a, -um. snake, anguis, -is, m. snatch, eripio, eripui, ercptum, 3. — up, corripio, corripui, correptum, 3. **snow,** nix, nivis, f. snows, it, ningit, ninxit, 3. so, adeo, ita, sic, tam. - many, tot, indecl. soften, emollio, 4. **soil,** solum, -i, n. **soldier**. miles, militis, m. -, fellow-, commilito, commilitonis, m. some, nonnullus, -a, -um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, and (adj.) aliqui, aliquae, aliquod. -- day, aliquando. - one, see some. sometimes, interdum. son, filius, -i, m. son-in-law, gener, generi, m. song, carmen, carminis, n. soon, mox; as—as, ut, uti. soothe, mollio, 4. sort of, what? qualis, -e. **Spain,** Hispania, -ae, f. spare, be sparing, parco, peperci, parsum, 3 (with dat.). sparrow, passer, passeris, m.

speak, fatur, 1, defect.; loquor, locutus sum, 3. **spear,** hasta, -ae, f. **speech,** oratio, orationis, f.; make a—, orationem habeo. **speed**, celeritas, celeritatis, f. spend, consumo, consumpsi, consumptum, 3. **splendid,** splendidus, -a, -um. spring, ver, veris, n. **spur**, calcar, calcaris, n. **spy**, explorator, exploratoris, m. stag, cervus, -i, m. **stand,** sto, steti, statum, 1. **standard,** signum, -i, *n*. start of, get the, praevenio, praevēni, praeventum, 4. state, civitas, civitatis, f.; res publica, rei publicae, \hat{f} . step (verb), gradior, gressus sum, 3; (subst.) gradus, -ūs, m. **stern**, puppis, -is, f. stir (trans.), commoveo, commovi, commotum, 2. **stone**, lapis, lapidis, m.; saxum, -1, n. storm, take by storm, expugno, 1. **storm** (subst.), procella, -ae, f.; tempestas, tempestatis, f. story, fabula, -ae, f. strait, fretum, -i, n. **street,** via, -ae, f. **strength**, vires, -ium, f. (pl. of vis). strengthen, confirmo, 1; firmo, 1. stretched, fusus, -a, -um. strong, validus, -a, -um; be—; valeo, valui ---, 2. study, studium, -i, n. such, of—a kind, talis, -e. sudden, repentinus, -a, -um. suddenly, repente. suffer, patior, passus sum, 3. suitable, idoneus, -a, -um. sum of money, pecunia, -ae, f. **summer,** aestas, aestatis, f. summon, convoco, 1. sun, sol, solis, m. supplies, commeatus, -us, m.

```
supply, suppedito, 1.
surgeon, medicus, -i, m.
surrender, dedo, dedidi, deditum,
surround, circumdo, circumdedi,
  circumdatum, circumdare.
surviving, superstes, superstitis.
suspect, suspicor, 1.
sustain, sustineo, sustinui, sus-
  tentum, 2.
sway, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
sweeter, dulcior, dulcioris.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swifter, ocior, ocioris.
swiftest, ocissimus, -a, -uni.
swim, nato, 1; no, 1.
Switzerland, Helvetia, -ae, f.
sword, gladius, -i, m.
table, mensa, -ae, f.
take, capio, cepi, captum, 3.
--- care, curo, 1.
-- pains, laboro, 1.
tale, fabula, -ae, f.
talk, loquor, locutus sum, 3.
talkative, loquax, loquacis.
Tarentum, Tarentum, -i, n.
tax, vectigal, vectigalis, n.
teach, doceo, docui, doctum, 2.
tear, lacrima, -ac, f.
— away or out, eripio, eripui,
  ereptum, 3.
temple, templum, -i, n.
tempt, tento, 1.
tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
terms, condicio, condicionis, f.
terrify, terreo, 2.
territories, fines, -ium, m.
than, quam.
that, is, ea, id.
— (of yours), iste, -a, -ud.
--- (yonder), ille, illa, illud.
---. . . not, ne, quin.
 -, (so), (in order) —, ut, uti.
--- (thereby) . . . not, quominus.
then, tum; — at length, tum
  demum
thenceforth, exinde.
their (own), suus, -a, -um.
```

they, ei, eae, ea. thing, res, rei, f. think, arbitror, 1; puto, 1. **thirst,** sitis, -is, f. this, hic, haec, hoc. --- side of, on, cis, citra (with acc.). — side, on, citra. - time, by, iam. thither, eo. threats, minae, -arum, f. three, tres, tria. through, per (with acc.). throw, iacio, ieci, iactum, 3; iacto, 1; praecipito, 1. tide, aestus, -ūs, m. timber, trabs, trabis, f. time, tempus, temporis, n.; at another—, alias; for a long—, diu. timid, timidus, -a, -um. tired, fessus, -a, -um. to, ad (with acc.); to a man, ad unum. to-day, hodie. to-morrow, cras. together, get, comparo, 1. tongue, lingua, -ae, f. too far, longius. tooth, dens, dentis, m. torment, excrucio, 1. torn, lacer, lacera, lacerum. tortoise (defence made by interlocking shields), testudo, testudinis, f. towards, adversum, adversus (with acc.); (—a person) erga (with acc.). tower, turris, -is, f. **town** (subst.), oppidum, -i, n.; (adj.) urbanus, -a, -um. **townsman,** oppidanus, -i, m. trace, track, vestigium, -i, n. train, crudio, 4. traitor, proditor, proditoris, m. transport-ship, navis oneraria. traverse, obeo, obii, obitum, obire. treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um. treasury, aerarium, -i, n. **treaty,** foedus, foederis, n.

tree, arbor, arboris, f. **trench**, fossa, -ae, f. tribute, vectigal, vectigalis, n. **troops**, copiae, -arum, f. troublesome, molestus, -a, -um. **true, v**erus, -a, -um. trust, fido, fisus sum, 3. try, experior, expertus sum, 4; tento, 1. turn (trans.), verto, verti, versum, - out, evenio, evēni, eventum, two, duo, -ae, -o. unarmed, inermis, -e. unaware, be, ignoro, 1. uncertain, incertus, -a, -um. uncivilised, barbarus, -a, -um. under, sub (with abl.). under, be, subsum, subfui, subesse. understand, intellego, intellexi, intellectum, 3. understanding, come to an (with) consentio, consensi, consensum, 4. unequal, iniquus, -a, -um. unexpectedly, de improviso. unfair, iniquus, -a, -um. unfaithful, infidelis, -e. unfavourable, iniquus, -a, -um. unfortunate, infelix, infelicis. unhappy, infelix, infelicis; miser, misera, miserum. unhurt, incolumis, -e. universal, universus, -a, -um. unknowing, insciens, inscientis. unless, nisi. unlike, dissimilis, -e. unmindful, immemor, immemunserviceable, inutilis, -e. until (prep.), ad (with acc.); (conj.) donec, dum. untruthful, mendax, mendacis. unwilling, invitus, -a, -um. —, be, nolo, nolui, —, nolle. unwitting, insciens, inscientis. unworthy, indignus, -a, -um.

upper, superus (rarely super), -a, -um. uproar, strepitus, -ūs, m. **upon** (implying motion), in (with acc.). use, utor, usus sum, 3 (with abl.). **useful,** utilis, -e. —, more, utilior, utilioris. vain, in, frustra. **valley,** vallis, -is, f. valour, virtus, virtutis, f. value at, facio, feci, factum, 3 (with gen.). **Veii,** Veii, -orum, n. pl.**Verginius,** Verginius, -i, m. verse, versus, -ūs, m. veteran, veteranus, -a, -um. vice, vitium, -i, n. **victory**, victoria, -ae, f. vigilant, vigil, vigilis. **village,** vicus, -i, m. violate, violo, 1. **violence,** violentia, -ae, f.; vis, acc. vim, no gen. dat., abl. vi, f. act of—, iniuria, -ae, f. **virtue,** virtus, virtutis, f. visit, lustro, 1. **voice,** vox, vocis, f. wage, gero, gessi, gestum, 3. wait, opperior, oppertus sum, 4. walk, ambulo, 1. wall, murus, -i, m. walls (of a city), moenia, -ium, n. wander, vagor, 1. — about, peragro, 1. war, bellum, -i, n.; make—upon bellum infero. warn, moneo, 2. **waste, lay,** vasto, 1. watch, tueor, 2; vigilo, 1. watchful, vigil, vigilis. **water,** aqua, -ae, f. **way,** via, -ae, f. we, nos. weapon, telum, -i, n. weary, fessus, -a, -um. weather, tempestas, tempestatis, f. weight, pondus, ponderis, n. well, bene; very —, optime.

```
well, to be, valeo, valui, —, 2.
 well-known, notus, -a, -um.
what? quid; what, pray? quid-
whatever, see whoever.
when, cum, ubi, ut (uti); when?
   quando.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether . . . or,
                   sive . . . sive,
  seu . . . seu; (in double ques-
  tions) utrum . . . an.
which, qui, quae, quod; — (of
-two) ? uter, utra, utrum.
-(of the two) you please, uter-
  libet, utralibet, utrumlibet.
whichever (of the two) you will,
  utervis, utravis, utrumvis.
—(of the two), utercumque, utra-
  cumque, utrumcumque.
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quo.
who (interrog.), quis, quae, quid;
  (interrog. adj. and rel.), qui,
  quae, quod.
who, pray? quisnam.
whoever, quisquis, quaequae,
  quidquid (quicquid) and (adj.)
  quodquod; quicumque, quae-
  cumque, quodcumque.
whole (adj.), totus, -a, -um;
  (subst.), summa, -ae, f.
wholly, omnino.
why? cur, quare.
- not? quin.
wicked, malus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, uxoris, f.
wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
— boar, aper, apri, m.
will, be willing, volo, volui.
  velle.
wind, ventus, -i, m.
winding, curvus, -a, -um.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wing (of an army), cornu, -\bar{u}s, n.
```

winter, hiems, hiemis, f.; pass the —, hiemo, 1. **wisdom**, sapientia, -ae, f. wise, prudens, prudentis; sapiens, sapientis. wish for, opto, 1, with, cum (with abl.). intus; within (adv.)., intra, (prep.) intra (with acc.). without, sine (with abl.). witness, testis, -is, c. woman, femina, -ae, f.; mulier, mulieris, f. **wood,** silva, -ae, f. **word,** verbum, -i, n. work, opus, operis, n. — upon, sollicito, 1. world, mundus, -i, m. worse, deterior, deterioris; peior, peioris. worship, veneror, 1. worst, deterrimus, -a, -um. worth, of, frugi, indecl. worthless, nequam, indecl. worthy, dignus, -a, -um (with abl.). -, deem, dignor, I (with abl.). would that! utinam. wound (verb), vulnero, I; (subst.) vulnus, vulneris, n. wretched, miser, misera, miserwrite, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3. year, annus, -i, m. yesterday, here, heri. yield (trans.), concedo, concessi, concessum, 3. yoke, iugum, -i, n. **you** (sing.), tu; (pl.) vos. young man, iuvenis, -is, m. youngster, iunior, iunioris. youngest, natu minimus, -a, -um. your, yours (if one person is addressed), tuus, -a, -um; (if several are addressed) vester, vestra, vestrum. Zeno, Zeno, Zenonis, m.

APPENDIX.

SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES IN COMMON USE.

- 310. Filius, son, and some other second declension substantives ending in -ius have a vocative form in -i; e.g. fili. Sometimes the nominative of words ending in -ius is used instead of the vocative, but there is no form ending in -ie.
 - 311. Deus (m.), a god, is thus declined : -

Singular.

N. V. deus

Acc. deum

Gen. deī

deō deōrum or (in poetry) deum

Dat. deō

deō deis, diis, or dis

deō, diis, or dis

Obs.—The voc. sing. of deus is the same as the nominative.

312. The following are irregular:—

Bos (c.), ox or cow. Sus (c.), boar or sow.

Plural. Singular. Plural. Singular. N.V. sūs $N, V, \bar{b}\bar{o}s$ bovēs suēs Acc. suem Acc. bovem bovēs suēs Gen. bovis boum Gen. suis 81111m būbus or bobus Dat. suī suibus or sūbus Dat. bovi Abl. bove būbus or bobus Abl. sue suibus or sūbus

313. Domus (f.), house, belongs to the fourth declension, but has some second declension forms.

Rhyme—Domō for ablative we see, Domōs, domōrum commonly; Bear locative domī in mind; The rest like gradus is declined.

314. Rēs publica (f.), commonwealth, is sometimes written as one word (respublica), but each part is declined just as when the whole is written as two words: Acc. rempublicam, Gen. Dat. reipublicae, Abl. rēpublicā. The same applies to iūs iūrandum (n.), oath (Gen. iūrisiūrandī, etc.).

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF VERBS.

245

SHORTER FORMS OF TENSES FORMED FROM PERFECT BASES ENDING IN V.

315. Most verbs of which the perfect base end in \mathbf{v} have also shorter form of their perfect tenses without the \mathbf{v} ; e.g.—

	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.	Fourth Cor Longer Form.	Shorter Form.
Indic. Perf.	amāvistī	amastī	audīvistī	∫audiistī \audistī
,, ,,			audīvit	audiit
17 27	amāvistis	amastis	audīvistis	∫audiistis \audistis
., .,	amāvērunt	amārunt ——	audīvērunt audīvēre	audiērunt audiēre
Plupf. FutPerf.	amāveram amāverō	amāram amārō	audīveram audīverō	audieram audierō
Subj. Perf.	amāverim	amārim	audīverim	audierim
,, Plupf.	amāvissem	amassem	audīvissem	∫ audiissem \ audissem
Inf. Perf.	amāvisse	amasse	audīvisse	audiisse audisse

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF TENSES COMPOUNDED WITH SUM.

- 316. In the pluperfect subjunctive passive forem, fores, etc., may be substituted for essem, esses, etc.; e.g. amatus forem, I should be loued.
- 317. The tenses formed from the perfect base of sum (fuī, fueram, etc.) are sometimes used with the perfect participle passive; e.g. amātus fuī, I have been loved (but am so no longer); parātus fuī, I was ready (but am so no longer). In tenses other than the perfect indicative such forms of sum combined with the perfect participle may be respectively equivalent to the ordinary passive forms, viz. amātus fueram to amātus eram, amātus fuerō to amātus erō, etc.; or they may have a special meaning if the sense admits it (e.g. parātus fueram, I had been ready).
 - 318. VERBS WITH FORMS BELONGING TO TWO CONJUGATIONS.

Orior, I rise (4th conj.), has in pres. indic. oreris, oritur, orimur, and in imperf. subj. oreretur, orerentur, both in the simple verb and in the compounds, the fourth conjugation forms of these parts being rarely found.

Potior, I get possession (4th conj.), similarly has in pres. indic. potitur, and in imperf. subj. poterētur, poterēmur, poterentur.

COMPOUND VERBS.

319. The prefix to a compound verb is most often a preposition or one of the inseparable particles mentioned in § 320.

Sometimes composition causes no change either in the preposition or in the verb, e.g. contrā-dīcō, I gain-say; but the one or the other, or both, may undergo certain modifications. Thus—

(i) The final consonant in ad, ob, sub is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb; e.g. affero (= ad + fero),

oppono (= ob + pono), summoveo (= sub + moveo).

(ii) Com- (the usual form of cum in composition) and in are assimilated to 1 or r when the simple verb begins with either of those letters; e.g. corrumpō (= com- + rumpō), irrumpō (= in + rumpō). They are respectively written com- and im- before m, b, or p, e.g. impellō; com- becomes con- before most other letters, e.g. conferō, contult.

(iii) A, ab assumes several forms: ā-, ab-, au-, abs-, as-; e.g.

āmittō, abdō, auferō, abstrahō, asportō.

(iv) **E** is used in composition before consonants only, **ex** is used before consonants and vowels; *e.g.* **ēdō**, **expellō**, **exeō**.

(v) Ad, com-, and trans sometimes lose the consonants at the end,

as in aspīrō, coeō, trāiciō (see p. 257, footnote).

320. The chief inseparable particles prefixed to verbs are:—
dis-, asunder, as in dis-cutiō (= dis- + quatiō), shatter; dif-ferō
(dif-, di-), (= dis- + ferō), bear asunder; di-vellō, rend.
ne-not, ,, ne-sciō, know not.
red- (re-), back, ,, red-dō, give back; red-eō, go back; re-pōnō, replace.

TABLE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

- 321. As already explained (§ 137) verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, with certain exceptions, respectively follow amo, moneo and audio in the formation of their perfect and supine bases. The following list (pp. 247-260) contains all common verbs of these conjugations in which the perfect and supine bases are irregularly formed, and also all common verbs of the 3rd conjugation, except—
- (a) Inceptive verbs¹ formed from simple verbs which are in use, the perfect and supine of these (if they exist) being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;
- (b) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any, see foot-note on p. 247) in the perfect, as compounds usually do, e.g.—

 Simple verb: dūc-ō -ere dux-i duct-um lead Compound verb: abdūc-ō -ere abdux-i abduct-um lead away

 Simple verb: pell-ō -ere pepul-i puls-um drive

 Compound verb: impell-ō -ere impul-i impuls-um drive on

¹ Inceptive verbs denote the beginning or increase of action, and end in -asco, -esco, or -isco; e.g. labasco, I begin to totter; mitesco, I grow mild.

nőt-ő

§ 322.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.* Infin. Perfect. Supine. Present Indic. dat-um -are ded-ī qived-5 (§ 260) Compounds belong to 3rd conj. (§ 324, A.), except circumdat-um put round circumd-ō (§ 260) -are circumded-ï stand stat-um -āre stet-ī st-ō Compounds (few having sup.) as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{praestat.um} \\ \mathbf{praestit.um} \end{array} \right\} \ excel$ praest-ō -āre praestit-ī Except stand around -āre circumstet-ī circumst-ō B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening. āre iūv-ī iuv-ō (§ 333) -āre lāv-ī { lavāt-um lavāt-um laut-us laut-us } wash lav-ö

C.—Perfect formed by S: none.

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (A).

This is the way in which the perfect base of amo and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

-āre pōtāv-ī

fpot-um or drink

pou-o		pour. 2	(potat-um)
E.—Perf	ect formed	by U .	
crep-ō	-āre	crepu- ī	crepit-um rattle
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um lie down
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um tame
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu- ī	ënect-um wear to death
frie-ō	-āre	fricu- ī	$\left\{egin{aligned} ext{frict-um}or \ ext{fricāt-um} \end{array} ight\}rub$
plic-ō	-āre -	(plicāv-ī (plicu-ī	$\left\{ egin{aligned} extbf{plicat-um} \end{aligned} ight\} fold \end{aligned}$
sec-ō	-āre	secu-ī	sect-um cut

^{*} The syllable prefixed by reduplication consists of the initial consonant of the verb and a short vowel.

lūg-eö

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.			
son-ō (§ 333)	-āre	sonu-ī	sonit-um	sound		
ton-ŏ	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	thunder		
vet-ō	-āre	vetu-ī	vetit-um	forbid		
mie-δ	$-\bar{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{r}\mathbf{e}$	micu-ī	-	vibrate		
So comp., except						
dīmie-ō	-āre	dīmicāv-ī	dīmicāt-um	fight		
F.—Perfect base identical with present base: none.						
§ 323 .	SEC	cond Conji	JGATION.			
A.—Perfect for	rmed	by reduplic	eation.			
mord-eō	-ēre	momord-ī	mors-um	bite		
pend-eō	-ēre	pepend-ī		be suspended		
spond-eō	-ēre	spopond-ī	spons-um	promise		
tond-eō	-ēre	$totond-\bar{\imath}$	tons-um	clip		
B.—Perfect for	rmed	by vowel-le	engthening.			
cav-eō	-ēre	cāv-ī	caut-um	beware of		
fav-eö	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	$be\ favourable$		
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	cherish		
mov-eō	-ēre	mōv-ī	mõt-um	set in motion		
vov-eō	-ēre	vōv-ī	võt-um	vow		
sed-eō	-ēre	sēd-ī	sess-um	sit		
Compounds as						
possid-eō	-ĕre	possēd-ī	possess-um	possess		
Except						
$\operatorname{circumsed-e}$ ō	-ēre	circumsēd-ī	circumsess-um	U		
$\operatorname{supersed-e\delta}$	-ēre	supersēd-ī	supersess-um	for bear		
vid-eō	-ēre	vīd-ī	vīs-um	*ee		
pav-eō	-ēre	pāv-ī		tremble		
C.—Perfect for	\mathbf{med}	by S				
alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	-	feel cold		
fulg-eö	-ēre	fuls-ī		yleam		
indulg-eō	-ēre	induls-ī		be indulgent		
urg-eð	-ēre	urs-ī	-	press		
frīg-eō	-ēre	frix-ī		$be\ cold$		
l ūc -eō	-ēre	lux-ī	No. Charles on the	shine		
torqu-eō	-ēre	tors-ī	tort-um	twist		
aug-eō	-ēre	aux-ī	auct-um	augment		
1.5	-	1 -	1	C		

-ēre lux-ī luct-um

mourn for

Present Indic. ard-eō	Infin. - ĕre	Perfect. ars-ī	Supine. ars-um		be on fire
haer-eō	-ēre	haes-ī	haes-um		stick
iub-eō	-ēre	iuss-ī	iuss-um		command
man-eō	-ēre	mans-ī	mans-um		remain
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um		caress
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	(mulet-um (muls-um	}	milk
rīd-eō	-ēre	rīs-ī	rīs-um		laugh
su ād-eō (§ 5)	-ēre	suās-ī	suās-um		recommend
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ì	ters-um		wipe

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	abolish
ci-eō	-ēre	cīv-ī	cit-um	arouse
dēl-eō	-ēre	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	abolish
fl-eŏ	-ēre	flēv-ī	flēt-um	weep
n-eō	-ēre	nē v- ī	nēt-um	spin
compl-eō	-ēre	complēv-i	complēt-um	fill up
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	$fill\ up$
impl-eō	-ēre	imp l ēv- ī	implēt-um	fill
repl-eō	-ēre	replēv-ī	replēt-um	refill
suppl-eō	-ēr e	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	fill up

E.—Perfect formed by U.

This is the way in which the perfect base of moneo and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

doc-eō misc-eō	-ēre -ēre	docu-ī miscu-ī	doct-um mixt-um	teach mix
ten-eō	-ēre	tenu-ī retinu-ī	tent-um retent-um	hold hold back
Comp. as retin-eō torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	scorch
cens-eō	-ēre	censu-ĭ	cens-um	count

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-eō	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	lunch
ferv-eŏ	-ēr e	ferv-ī (or ferbu-ī)		be boiling
strīd-eŏ	-ēre	strīd-ī		creak

§ 324. Third Conjugation.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
can-ō	-ere	cecin-ī	cant-um	sing
Compounds as				
praecin-ō (§ 324	, E)			
Compounds of do,	except			
circumd-ō (§ 32)	2, A),			
as ēd-ō *	-ere	ēdid-Ī	ēdit-um	give out
Including:				
crēd-ō	-ere	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	trust
perd-ō	-ere	perdid-i	perdit-um	destroy
vend-ö	-ere	ve ndid-ī	vendit-um	sell
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	prick
Compounds as				
compung-ō (§ 32	24, C)			
sist-5	-ere	stit-I	stat-um	make to stand
Comp. as consist-o	-ere	constit-I	constit-um	stand still
\mathbf{Except}				
circumsist-ö	-ere	circumstet-ī	-	stand around
tang-ō	-ere	tetig-ī	tact-um	touch
Comp. as atting-5	-ere	attig-I	attact-um	touch
tend-ō	-ere	tetend-ī	tent-um	stretch
cad-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	cās-um	fall
Comp. as concid-5	- ere	concid-ī		fall
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occas-um	fall, set
recid-ō	-ere	reccid-ī	recās-um	fall back
caed-ō	-ere	cecīd-ī	caes-um	cut
Comp. as occid-ō	-er e	occīd-ī	occīs-um	kill
curr-ō	-ere	cucurr-ī	curs-um	run
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-ere {	accucurr-ī	accurs-um	run to
fall-ö	-ere	fefell-ī	fals-um	deceive
Comp.:refell-5	-ere	refell-ī		disprove
				4

^{*} Some of these are compounds of $d\delta$, I give, others of a verb $-d\delta$, I put, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ō	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	drive
pend-ō	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	weigh out, pay
tund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	$\begin{cases} tuns-um \\ t\bar{u}s-um \end{cases}$	beat .
disc-ō	-ere	didic-ī		lea rn
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī		learn besides
parc-ō	-ere	peperc-ī	pars-ūrus	be sparing
posc-ō	-ere	popose-ī		demand
Comp. as depose-o	-ere	dēpopose-ī		demand
B.—Perfect for	\mathbf{med}	by vowel-le	ngthening.	
ag-ō	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	drive
Comp. as abig-ō	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	drive away
Except circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	drive around
cōg-ō	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	drive together, compel
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī		pass (time)
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	accomplish
em-ō	-ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	buy
Comp. as adim-ō	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	take away
Except coem-5	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	buy up
See also § 324, C.			_	-
frang-ō	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	break
Compounds as		3		
confring-ō	-ere	confrēg-ī	confract-um	break
leg-ō	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	pick, read
Comp. as collig-ō	-ere	collēg-ī	collect-um	collect
But e remains in		_		
perleg-ō	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	read through
releg-ö	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	again go over
Perf. differs in		•		
dīlig-ō }				
intelleg-ö }(§ 32	4, C.)			
negleg-ō				
linqu-ō	-ere	liqu-ī		$leav_{?}$
Comp. as relinqu-ò	-ere	relīqu-ī	relict-um	leave
pang-ō	-ere	pēg-ī or	pact-um	fa s ten
0		pepig-ī		
Comp. : comping-ō		compēg-ī	compact-um	join together
rump-ō		rūp-ī	rupt-um	break
vinc-ō	-ere	vic-i	vict-um	conquer
ed-ō	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	eat
fund-õ	-ere	fūd-ī	füs-um	pour

C.—Perfect formed by S.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ō	-ere	carps-ī	carpt-um	pluck
Comp. as dēcerp	ō -ere	dēcerps-ī	\mathbf{d} ēcerpt-um	$pluck \ off$
Four compounds of em-5 (§ 324, B.):	of			
eōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	deck
dēm-ō	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	take of
prom-o	-ere	promps-ī	prompt-um	bring out
süm-ō	-ere	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	$take\ up$
ger-ō	-ere	gess-ī	gest-um	carry
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	put on the
				bridal veil, i.e. be married
rēp-ō	-ere	reps- ī	rept-um	creep
scalp-ō	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	carve
scrīb-ō	-ere	scrips-ī	script-um	write
sculp-ð	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	carve
serp-ō	-ere	serps-ī	\mathbf{serpt} - \mathbf{uin}	crawl
temn-ö	-ere	temps-ī	tempt-um	$oldsymbol{despise}$
űr-ő	-ere	uss-ī	ust-um	burn, inflame
Comp. : combür	-ō -ere	combuss-ī	combust-um	burn up
cing-ō	-ere	cinx-ī	cinct-um	gird
coqu-ō	-ere	oox-ĩ	coct-um	cook
dīc-ō (§ 332)	-ere	dix-ī	dict-um	say
dūc-ō (§ 332)	-ere	dux-ī	duct-um	lead
fing-ō	-ere	finx-ī	fict-um	form
afflig-ö	-ere	afflix-ī	afflict-um	strike against
conflīg-č	-ere	conflix-ī	conflict-um	contend
inflīg-ō	-ere	inflix-ī	inflict-um	strike on
iung-ð	-ere	iunx-ī	iunct-um	join
Three compounds leg-ō (§ 324, B.):	of			
dīlig-ō	-ere	dīlex-ī	dīlect-um	love
intelleg-ö	-ere	intellex-ī	intellect-um	understand
negleg-ō	-ere	neglex-ī	neglect-um	neglect
ping-ō	-ere	pinx-ī	pict-um	paint
plang-ō	·ere	planx-ī	planet-um	beat

Present India.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
Compounds of pung	-δ			
(§ 324, A), as				
compung-5	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	sting
reg-ō	-ere	rex-ī	rect-um	rule
Comp. as corrig-ō	-ere	correx-ī	correct-um	correct
Except perg-5	-ere	perrex-ī	perrect-um	continue
surg-ö	-ere	surrex-ī	surrect-um	rise
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-ī	distinot-um	distingui sh
exstingu-ö	-ere	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	extinguish
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-ī	restinct-um	extinguish
string-ō	-ere	strin x -ī	strict-um	strip
stru-ð	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	pile
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	suc k
teg-ō	-ere	tex-î	tect-um	cover
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-ī	tinot-um	steep
trah-ō	-ere	trax-ī	tract-um	draw
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	anoint
veh-ō	-ere	vex-i	vect-um	carry
vīv-ō	-ere	vix-ī	vict-um	live
cēd-ō	-ere	cess-ī	cess-um	yield
claud-ō	-ere	claus-ī	claus-um	shut
Comp. as conclud-	5 -ere	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	confine
dīvid-ō	-ere	dīvīs-ī	dīvis-um	divide
laed-ō	-ere	laes-I	laes-um	hurt
Comp. as collid-ō	-ere	collīs-ī	collis-um	clash
lūd-ō	-ere	lūs-ī	lüs-um	play
merg-ð	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	dip
mitt-ō	-ere	mīs- ī	miss-um	send
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	clap
Comp. : explod-o	-ere	explos-ī	explos-um	hiss off
prem-δ	-ere	press-ī	press-um	press
Compounds as		_		
comprim-ŏ	-ere	compress-ī	compress-um	restrain
rād-ō	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	scrape
rõd- ö	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	gnaw
sparg-ō	-ere	spars-ī	spars-um	*catter
Comp. as asperg-0	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	sprinkle
trūd-ŏ	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	thrust
vād-ō	-ere			go
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ere	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	$go\ forth$

LOT	1 2021. 0			L3
Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fīg-ō	-ere	fix-ī	fix-um	fix
flect-5	-ere	flex-I	flex-um	bend
flu-ō	-ere	flux-I	flux-um	flow
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	bind
ning-it or ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	-	enow
D.—Perfect fo	ormed	by V precede	d by long vo	wel.
cern-ō	-ere	crēv-I	crēt-um	discern
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	besmear
N.B.—Comp.:				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	besmear
pet-ō	-ere	petīv-ī or peti-i	petīt-um	seek
quaer-ō	-ere	quaesīv-ī	quaesīt-um	seek
Comp. as exquir-	o-ere	exquisīv-ī	exquisit-um	seek out
ser-ŏ	-ere	sēv-ī	sat-um	80W
Comp. as inser-ö	-ere	insē v-I	insit-um	ingraft
sin-ö	-ere	8Ĩ V- Ĩ	sit-um	allow
spern-ō	-ere	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	despise
stern-ō	-ere	strāv-ī	strāt-um	spread
ter-ō	-ere	trīv-ī	trīt-um	rub
arcess-ō or accers-ō	-ere	arcessīv-ī	arcessit-um	send for
capess-ō	-ere	capessiv-ī	capessit-um	take in hand
lacess-ō	-ere	lacessīv-ī	lacessīt-um	provoke
incess-ŏ	-ere	incessīv-ī		assault
The present base	of the	following is inc	eptive (§ 321)	in form :
adolesc-ō (§ 177)	-ere	adolēv-ī	adult-um	grow up
orego-5 (8 177)	-ATA	crāv-ī	crēt-um	arom

adolesc-ō (§ 177)	-ere	adolēv-ī	adult-um	grow up
cresc-ō (§ 177)		crēv-ī	crēt-um	grow
nosc-ō		nōv-ī	nōt-um	get to know
Comp. (noscō had lost an initial g)				•

agnosc-ö	-ere	agnöv-ī	agnit-um	recognise
cognosc.ō	-ere	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	ascertain
ignosc-ő	-ere	ignöv-ï	ignōt-um	overlook
obsolese-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	decay
pasc-ō	-ere	pā v-ī	past-um	pasture
quiesc-ō	-ere	qui ēv-ī	qui ĕt-um	rest
scisc-ō	-ere	scīv- ī	scīt-um	enact
suesc-ō (§ 5)	-ere	suēv-Ī	suēt-um	become accus- tomed

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
al-ō	-ere	alu-ī	alt-um	nourish
Compounds of can-ō	(§ 32	4, A.)		
as praecin-ō	-ere	praecinu-ī	praecent-um	sing before
col-ō	-ere	colu-ï	cult-um	cultivate
accumb-ō	-ere	accubu-ī	accubit-um	recline at table
incumb-ō	-ere	incubu-ī	incubit-um	lean
$occumb-\bar{o}$	-ere	occubu-ī	occubit-um	sink
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	bend down
recumb-ō	ere	recubu-ī	recubit-um	recline
succumb-ō	·ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	submit
consul-ō	-ere	consulu-ī	consult-um	consult
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	roar
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	groan
gign-ö	-ere	genu-ī	genit-um	produce
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	hide
pōn-ō	-ere	posu-ī	posit-um	place
ser-ō	-ere		sert-um	join
Comp. as conser-ō	·ere	conseru-ī	consert-um	join
tex-ō	-ere	texu-ī	text-um	weave
vom-ŏ	-ero	vomu-ī	vomit-um	vomit
met-δ	-ere	(messem fēc-	i)mess-um	reap
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-i		check
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-ī		resound
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī		tremble
F.—Perfect ba	se id	entical with	present base	•
acu-ō	-ere	acu-ī	acūt-um	sharpen
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	accuse
dīlu-ō	-ere	dīlu-ī	dīlūt-um	wash out
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	strip off
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	steep
indu-ō	-ere	indu-ī	indūt-um	put on
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	lessen
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-ī	abnūt-um	refuse
annu-ö	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	assent
pollu-ð	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	defile
statu-ŏ	-ere	statu-ī	statūt-um	settle
Compounds as				

-ere constitu-ī constitut-um settle

Present India.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
su-õ	-ere	su-i	süt-um	stitch
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	assign
ru-ō	-ere	ru-i	rūt-um	$rush \ down$
Comp. as dīru-ō	-ere	dĭru-ĭ	dīrut-um	demolish
metu-õ	-ere	metu-ĩ		fear
congru-ŏ	-ere	congru-ĭ	-	agrec
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī		pay
plu-it	-ere	plu-it (or plū	v it)	rain
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	solüt-um	loose
volv-ō	-ere	volv-ĭ	volüt-um	roll
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessīt-um	accomplish
accend-ō	-ere	accend-ĩ	accens-um	kindle
incend-ō	-ere	incend-ī	incens-um	set on fire
succend- $\bar{\mathrm{o}}$	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	kindle below
dēfend-ō	-ere	dĕfend-ī	dēfens-um	defend
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	stumble
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	chew
pand-ō	-ere	pand-ī	pass-um	$spread\ open$
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	seize
scand-ō	-ere	scand-ī	scans-um	climb
Comp. as ascend	-ō -ere	ascend-ī	ascens-um	$climb\ up$
sīd-ō	-ere	sīd-ī		$settle\ down$
Comp. as consid	-ō -ere	consēd-ī	consess-um	$settle\ down$
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	pluck
verr-ð	-ere	verr-î	vers-um	sweep
vert-ō	-ere	vert-ī	vers-um	turn
bib-ō	-ere	bib-ĩ		drink
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	$hammer\ out$
strīd-ō	-ere	strīd-ī	*******	creak
wio A	_ATA	งกัด_รั	*******	moit

 In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

 find-ō
 -ere
 fid-ī
 fiss-um
 cleave

 scind-ō
 -ere
 scid-ī
 sciss-um
 rend

 percell-ō
 -ere
 percul-ī
 perculs-um
 overturn

§ 325. Third Conjugation, with the Short-I Forms of the Fourth.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

	В.	-Perfect	formed	bv	vowel-len	gthening	g.
--	----	----------	--------	----	-----------	----------	----

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cap-iō	-ere	cēp-ī	capt-um	take
Comp. as accip-io	-ere	accēp-ī	accept-um	receive
fac-iō (§§ 259, 332)	-ere	fēc-î	fact-um	make, do
Comp. (§ 259) as				
satisfac-iō	-ere	satisfēc-ī	satisfact-um	
,, with preps. as				
affic-ið	-ere	affēc-ī	affect-um	affect
fug-ið	-ere	füg-ī	fugit-um	.flee
iac-iŏ	-ere	iēc-ī	iact-um	throw
Comp. as abic-iō *	·ere		abiect-um	throw away
fod-iō	-ere	fōdī	foss-um	dig
C.—Perfect for	med	by S .		
allic-iō	-ere	allex-ī	allect-um	attract
illie-iō	-ere	illex-î	illect-um	entice
pellic-iŏ		pellex-ī	pellect-um	entice
$\operatorname{spec-i\delta}\left\{ \begin{array}{c} (\text{in old} \\ \operatorname{Lat. only}) \end{array} \right\}$	-ere	spex-i		look
Comp. as aspic-iō	-ere	aspex-ī	aspect-um	look at
quat-iō	-ere	To provide the second	quass-um	shake, agitate
Comp. as				
concut-iō	-ere	concuss-ī	concuss-um	shake, ayitate
D.—Perfect for	rmed	by V prece	ded by long	$\mathbf{vowel} \ (\mathbf{I}).$
cup-iō	-ere	cupīv-ī	cupīt-um	desire
sap-iō	-ere	sapiv-i		have taste, know
E.—Perfect for	\mathbf{med}	by U .		
ē lie-iō	-ere	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	lure forth
rap-iŏ	-ere	rapu-ī	rapt-um	seize
~				r

F.--Perfect base identical with present base.

Comp. as abrip-io -ere abripu-i

$$\begin{array}{ll} \mathbf{coep\text{-}i\bar{o}} \left\{ (\mathrm{pres.\ not} \\ \mathrm{classical}) \right\} \text{-}\mathbf{ere} & \mathbf{coep\text{-}\bar{i}} \ (\$\ 271) \ \mathbf{coept\text{-}um} \end{array} \qquad begin$$

abrept-um

carry off

^{*} In compounds of iacio the consonantal i is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the i is counted long (§ 4) just as if the consonantal i were written.

§ 326.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: none.

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iō	-īre	vēn-ī	vent-um	come

C.—Perfect formed by S.

		J		
farc-iō	-īre	fars-ī	fart-um	striff
Comp. as referc-iō	-ire	refers-i	refert-um	stuff
fulc-iō	-īre	fuls-ī	fult-um	prop
haur-iö	-īre	haus-ī	haust-um	drain
saep-iō	-ire	saeps-ī	saept-um	fence in
sanc-iō	-īre	sanx-ī	$\left\{ egin{array}{l} ext{sanct-um } or \ ext{sancit-um} \end{array} ight\}$	ratify
sarc-iō	-īre	sars-ī	sart-um	patch
vinc-iō	-īre	vinx-ī	vinct-um	bind
sent-iō	-ire	sens-ī	sens-um	feel

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (I).

This is the way in which the perfect base of audio and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sepel-iō -īre sepelīv-ī sepult-um bury

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

amic-iö	-īre -	{amicu-ī} amix-ī}	amict-um	clothe
aper-iō	-īre	aperu-ī	apert-um	uncover, open
oper-iō	-īre	operu-ī	opert-um	cover
sal-iō	-īre	salu-ī	salt-um	leap
Comp. as dēsil-iō	-īre	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	leap down

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

comper-iō	-īre	comper-ī	compert-um	ascertain
reper-iō	-īre	repper-ī	repert-um	find

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 327.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like hortor (§ 148).

§ 328.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like vereor (§ 149), except-

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
r-eor	-ērī	rat-us sum	think
fat-eor	-ērī	fass-us sum	acknowledge
Compounds as			
confit-eor	-ērī	confess-us sum	confess
aud-eō (§ 241)	-ēre	aus-us sum	dare
gaud-eō (§ 241)	-ēre	gāvīs-us sum	r ejoice
§ 329 .	Тнг	RD CONJUGATION.	
fru-or (§ 333)	-ĩ	fruct-us sum	enjoy oneself
fung-or	-ī	funct-us sum	busy oneself
loqu-or	-ī	locut-us sum	speak
quer-or	-ī	quest-us sum	compl ai n
sequ-or	-ī	secut-us sum	follow
amplect-or	•Ĩ	amplex-us sum	embrace
complect-or	-ī	complex-us sum	embrace
lāb-or	-ī	laps-us sum	slide
nīt-or	٠ĩ	nis-ussum, I endeavour nix-us sum, I leaned	$\left. egin{aligned} ed \\ endeavour, lean \end{aligned} ight.$
ūt-or	-î	tis-us sum	make use
fīd-ō (§ 241)	-ere	fīs-us sum	trust
The present base of	of the f	following is inceptive (§ :	321) in form :—
apise-or	-ĵ	apt-us sum	obtain
Comp.: adipisc-o	r -ī	adept-us sum	obtain
comminise-or	-Ī	comment-us sum	devise
expergisc-or	-Î	experrect-us sum	$awake\ oneself$
îrasc-or	-ī	īrāt-us sum	$get\ angry$
nancisc-or	-Ĩ	nact-us sum	obtain.
nasc-or	- î	nāt-us sum	be born
oblivisc-or	-î	oblīt-us sum	forget
pacisc-or	-1	pact-us sum	bargain
proficise-or	-ī	profect-us sum	set out
ulcisc-or	-ī	. ult-us sum	take vengeance
			on, arenge
dēfetisc- or	-ī	dēfess-us sum	grow weary
J. L. C.			17*

THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I 330. FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	lufin.	Perfect.	
mor-ior (§ 333)	-ī	mortu-us sum	die
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum	step
Compounds as			
aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum	attack
pat-ior	- ī	pass-us sum	suffer
Comp. : perpet-	ior -f	perpess-us sum	e n dure

331. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like partior (§ 151) except-

THE TOTAL CHOIC	Jupino	base ime Parties	(3/, o
exper-ior	-īrī	expert-us sum	try
opper-ior	-iri	opperit-us sum	wait
or-ior (§§ 318, 333)	-īrī	ort-us sum	rise
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum	agree
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum	measure
ord-ior	-īrī	ors-us sum	begin

IRREGULARITIES.

332. IMPERATIVE PRESENT WITHOUT FINAL VOWEL.

In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—dīco, say; dūco, lead; facio, make, do—have respectively dic, duc, fac, the final -e being dropped. This applies to the compounds of dico and duco. and to compounds of facio which retain a in the present base; other compounds are regular, e.g. afficio, affect, has imperative affice.

333. FUTURE PARTICIPLES NOT FORMED FROM SUPINE BASES.

Present Indic. iuv-ō son-ō	Infin. -āre -āre	Supine. i ūt-um sonit-um Perf. Part.	Future Participle. iuvātūr-us sonātūr-us	delight sound
fru-or	-ī	fruct-us	fruitūr-us	cnjoy oneself
mor-ior	-i	mortu-us	moritūr-us	die
or-ior	-īrī	ort-us	oritūr-us	rise

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

Ablative case, 23; instrumental, 24; of place where, 27, 201, 202; of agent, 45; of time when, 64; instead of quam, 76; of description, 109; of manner, 112; absolute, 209-212; of price, 296.

Accusative case, 19; of time throughout which, 80; double, 73, 188; one retained with pass. verb, 225; of extent of space, 297.

Adjectives, of first class, 36; substantival use of, 46; of second class, 67-71; comparative, declension of, 70, 71; irregular, 81, 82; comparison of, 84, 85, 87-92: derived from adverbs, comparison of, 95; specifying certain parts, 96; possessive, 102-104. Adverbs, 272-279; comparison

of, 281-284. Alphabet, 2. Antecedent, 117.

Apodosis, 182. Article, translation of the, 13, Obs.

Base of substantives of first declension, 21; second declension, 32; third declension, 51, 54; of verbs, present, 8, 134, 135; perfect, 134-136; supine, 134-136

Cases, see Nominative, etc.Causal clauses, 226, 228, 229.Comparative adjectives, declension of, 70, 71.

Comparative degree, 84, 85; expressed by magis, 89.
Comparison of adjectives, 84, 85,

87-92; of adverbs, 281-284. Complement of copulative verbs, 265.

Compound verbs, 319.
Concessive clauses, 231-234.
Conditional sentences, 182-184,
187, 189, 190, 192.

Conjugations, see Verbs. Conjunctions, 307-309.

Consecutive clauses, 203. Dative case, 22; with adjectives, 40; with words denoting nearness or approach, 105; with compounds of sum, 249; predicative, 208.

Definite article, 13, Obs.
Degrees of comparison, 84, 85.
Demonstrative pronouns, 106-108, 110-111.

Dependent questions, 155-163. Dependent statements, 167-174. Deponent verbs, 148-151, 236-240; perfect participles of, 245.

Dipthongs, 5.
Double questions, 206; dependent, 207.

Doubt, expressions of, 208.

202 INDEX.

Exhortations and commands, subjunctive in, 130; negative, 131; imperative in, 132, 133. Fearing, verbs of, 235. Final clauses, 198. Future, rendered by English present, 187, 221. Future - perfect, rendered by English present, 187, 221. Gender, of first declension, 14; of second declension, 30; of third declension, 50; of fourth declension, 78; of fifth declension, 79. Genitive case, 20; possessive, 20; with adjectives, 77; partitive, 97; with certain verbs, 286; of value, 294; of price, 296; of quality, 302. Gerund, 175-177. Gerundive, 213-217; gerundive construction, 214-217. Hindering, verbs of, 247. Hoping, verbs of, 194. Imparisyllabic substantives, 52. Imperative, 133; present without final vowel, 332. Impersonal use of passive of intransitive verbs, 227. Impersonal verbs, 266-270. Inceptive verbs, 321, footnote. Indefinite article, 13, Obs. Indefinite pronouns, 119-128. Indicative in conditional sentences, 184, 187; in temporal clauses, 220, 223, N., 224, 250-252, 261, 264; causal, 226; concessive, 232, 233. Infinitive, 165, 166; present expressed in English by presentperfect, 185, 269; future, 243. Interrogative pronouns, 118. Locative case, 55. Moods, see Indicative, etc. Nominative case, 17. Number, 15. Numerals, 287-295. "Of" in "the city of," "the town of," etc., 199.

Order of words, p. 160, II. (6): verb, 19, N.; genitive, 20, N.; indirect object, 22, N.; ablative, 24, N.; adverb, 28; adjective, 38, N. Parisyllabic substantives, 52. Participle, perfect passive, 48; future, 164, 180; present, 178, 179; irregular future, 333. Perfect indicative, meaning of, 160, Obs. Person, second, 9. Personal pronouns, 97-101. Place whither, 196; whence, 197; where, 201, 202. Predicate, completion of the, 26. Prepositions, 299-301, 303-306. Preventing, verbs of, 247. Price, genitive and ablative of, Principal parts of verbs, 137, 321-331. Promising, verbs of, 243. Pronouns, personal, 97-101; reflexive, 99; demonstrative, 106-108, 110, 111; relative, 113-117; interrogative, 118; indefinite, 119-128. Pronunciation, 5. Protasis, 182. Purpose (see also Final Clauses), Quality, genitive of, 302. Quantity, of vowels, 3, 5, Obs.; of syllables, 4, 5, Obs. Questions, direct, 152-154; dependent. 155-164; double, 206; dependent double, 207, 208. Reduplication, 322, footnote. Reflexive pronouns, 99. Relative pronouns, 113-117; agreement of, 117. Semi-deponent verbs, 241. Sequence of tenses, 161. Shorter forms of perfect tenses,

Subject, composite, 101.

Subjunctive, in wishes, 130; in exhortations and commands, 131; in conditional sentences, 189, 190, 192; in final clauses, 108; in consecutive clauses, 203; after quin, 208; in temporal clauses, 223; causal, 228, 229; in concessive clauses, 234; after dum, 252; deliberative dubitative, or 263; after antequam and priusquam, 264. Substantives, of first declension, 13; of second declension, 30-32; of third declension, 49-66; of fourth declension, 78; of fifth declension, 79. Superlative degree, 84, 85; in -rimus, 87; expressed by maxime, 89.

Supine, accusative, 262. Temporal clauses, 219-222, 250-252, 261, 264. Town whither, 196; whence, 197; where, 55. Value, genitive of, 294. Verbs, principal parts of, 137, 321 - 331; regular conjugations: active, 139-142; pas-143-146; capio, sive, deponent, 148-151, 236-240; semi-deponent, 241; impersonal, 266-270; defective, 271; compound, 319; inceptive, 321, footnote.

Vocative case, 18. Wishes, expression of, 130, 131.

II.—LATIN WORDS.

A, ab, 45, Obs. 1. Caput, 63. Abutor withabl., 244 Acer. 69. Acus, 78, Obs. Aio, 271. Aliquis, 121,127,128. Alius, 81. Alter, 81. Ambo, 82. Amo, 139, 143. Animal, 61. Anser, 62. Antiquus, compared, 89. Arcus, 78, Obs. Artus, 78, Obs. Asper, 41. Audio, 142, 146. Aut, 253. Avis, 58, N. 36; com-Bonus, pared, 92. Bos, 312. Canis, 65. Capio, 147.

Causa, with genitive of gerund, 177; with gerundive construction, 217. Civis, 58, N. Clavis, 58. Conor, with infinitive. 242. Cor, 63. Cubile, 61. (conjunction), Cum 222, 223, 229, 234. Cum(preposition), with pronouns,305. Dens, 59. Deus, 311. Dic, 332. Difficilis, superlative of, 90. Dignor, with ablative, 244. Dignus, with ablative, 74. dis-, 320.

Dissimilis, superlative of, 90; with genitive or dative. 93. Dives, compared, 92. Do, 260. Dominus, 30. Domum, 196. Domus, 313. Duc, 332. Dum, 250-252. Duo, 82. Egenus, compared, 88. Ego, 97. Eo, 257; compounds of, 258. Etiamsi, 234. Etsi, 232, 234. Fac, 332. Facilis, superlative of, 90. Fari, 271. Felix, 69.

-fer, adjectives in, 41.

INDEX.

Fero, 255; com-	-is, accusa
pounds of, 256.	ending
Filius, 310.	Iste, 106,
Fio, 259; com-	Iubeo, with
Fio, 259; compounds of, 260.	242.
Flos, 62.	Iunior, 94
Forem in pluperfect	Ius iurano
subjunctive, 316.	
	Iuvenis, 6
Frater, 62.	Lac, 63.
Frugi, compared, 91.	Lacus, 78
Fruor, with ablative,	Lacer, 41.
244.	Leo, 62.
Fui with perfect participle passive,	Lex, 62.
participle passive,	Liber, 41.
_ 317	Liberi, 31.
Fungor, with abla-	Longior, 7
tive, 244.	Loquor, 15
tive, 244. Gener, 31.	Magister,
Genu, 78.	Magnus,
-ger, adjectives in, 41.	92.
<i>Gracilis</i> , superlative	Malo, 254
of, 90.	Malus, con
Gradus, 78.	Mare, 61.
Gradus, 78. Gratia, with genitive	Mas, 56.
of gerund, 177;	Mater, 62.
with gerundive	Messis, 58
construction, 217.	Meus, 102
Hic, 106, 107.	Miles, 62.
Hortor, 148.	Milia, dec
Hostis, 57.	Moneo, 14
Humilis, superlative	Multus,
of, 90.	
	92. Navis, 58.
vowel, 5, N. 2.	Ne (final),
-i, ablative singular	verbs (
ending in, 58.	235.
Idem, 110, N., 111.	Ne-, 320.
Ignis, 58, N.	-ne, 153, I
Ille, 106, 107	Nequam,
-im, accusative sin-	91.
gular ending in, 58.	Neuter, 81
Imber, 60.	Niger, 36.
Indignus, with abla-	Nisi, 183.
tive, 74.	Nix, 56.
Inquam, 271.	Noli, in no
Interest, 270.	exhorta
Ipse, 110, 111.	comman
Ipsissimus, 110, N.	Nolo, 254.
\hat{Is} , 110, 111.	Nomen, 63
•	

ative plural Nonne, 153,158. in, 57, Obs. Nos, 97. Noster, 102. 107. h infinitive. Nubes, 57. Nullus, 81. Num, 153, 158. dum, 314. Ocior 94. 5. Opus est, 230. Orior, 318. 8, Obs. Os. 66. Partior, 151. Parvus, compared, 92. Pater, 62. Pauper, 71. Pinguis, compared, 89. Ί. Plus, 92, N. 50. Porta, 13. 30. Possum, 246. compared, Postquam, 261. Potior, 318; with abmpared, 92 lative, 244. Princeps, 62. Providus, compared, 88. Prudens, 69. Puer, 30. 2, 103. Puppis, 58. clined, 291. Quam, 75. 0, 144. Quamquam, 233. compared, Quamvis, 234. Quercus, 78, Obs. Qui (indefinite), 119. 198; with Qui(interrogative), of fearing, 118. Qui (relative), 113, 114. 54, 158. Quia, 226. 228, 229. compared, Quicumque, 115. Quidam, 121, 123, 128. Quilibet, 120, 124. Quin, 208, 247. egative ex-Quis (indefinite), 119, tions and 128. nds, 132. Quis (interrogative), 118. 3. Quisnam, 118.

Quisquam, 122, 125, 128. Quisque, 120, 126, 128. Quisque, 120, 124. Quisquis, 113, 116. Quivis, 102, 124. Quod, 226, 228. Quominus, 247. Quoniam, 226, 228. Quum, see Cum (conjunction). Re-, red-, 320. Refert, 270. Regnum, 30. Rego, 141, 145. Res, 79, Obs. 1. Res publica, 314. Rete, 61. Rus, 196. s, becomes r, 62, 63. Satis, compared, 91. Se, sese, 99; in dependent statement or dependent question, 193. Senex, 65.	of, 90; with genitive or dative, 93. Sitis, 58, N. Socer, 31. Solus, 81. Sum, 138; compounds of, 248, 249. Suus, 102, 104; in dependent statement or dependent question, 193. Tener, 36. Totus, 81. Tres, 82. Tristis, 69. Tu, 97. Turris, 58. Tussis, 58, N. Tuus, 102. Ubi, temporal, 224ubus, dat. and abl.	Ut, 198; in consecutive clauses, 203; temporal, 224; with verbs of fearing, 235. Utnon, in consecutive clauses, 203. Uter, 81; compounds of, 81, N. 2. Utinam, 130. Utor, with abl., 244. Vates, 65. Vel, 253. Vereor, 149. Vescor, with ablative, 244. Vester, 102. Veto, with infinitive, 242. Vetus, compared, 88. Vir, 30. Vis, 56. Volo, 254. Vos, 97.
Senior, 94.	pl., 78, Obs.	x, for cs or gs, 62,
Si, 182; si non.	Ullus, 81.	Obs.
183.		

REGULAR VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

FROM THE PRESENT BASE.

ăm-ō, -ās,-ăt; -āmŭs, -ātĭs, -ant Imperf. Pres.Indic. mon-eo, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent rěg-ō, -ĭs, -ĭt; -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, -unt aud-10, -is, -it; -īmus, -ītis, -iunt ăm-**ā** mon-ē / -bam. -bās. -bāt

reg-ē (-bāmus, -bātis, -bant aud-ĭē . (-bö, -bĭs, -bĭt ăm-ā)

mon-ē () -bimus. -bitis. -bunt (-am, -ēs, -ět aud-I) | -ēmus, -ētis, -ent

Future.

SUBJ.

Imperf.

ăm-em, -ēs, -ět; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent mŏn-ĕ -am. -ās. -ăt rěg -amus, -atis, -ant aud-I

ăm-ā mon-ē (-rem, -res, -ret -rēmus, -rētis, -rent rěg-ĕ aud-i

ăm-ā, -ātě; -ātō, -ātōtě, -antō

mon-ē, -ētě; -ēto, -ētotě, -ento reg-e. -Ite; -Ito, -Itote, -unto aud-ī. -ītě : -ītō. -ītōtě. -ĭuntō

Pres. Part. Pres. Inf. Gerund. -ārĕ -andum ăm -ans -ārĕ -endum mŏn -ens -ĕrĕ -endum rĕg -ens -Yens -īrĕ -ĭendum and

FROM THE PERFECT BASE.

-ī. -istī. -Ĭt IND. -imus.-istis.-ērunt(-ēre) | Perf. -ĕram, -ĕrās. -ĕrāt ăm-**āv** Plpf. -ĕrāmūs, -ĕrātis, -ĕrant -ĕrō, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt Fut.mon-ŭ -ĕrimus, -ĕritis, -ĕrint Perf. rex -ĕrim, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt SUBJ. -ĕrimus, -ĕritis, -ĕrint Perf. aud-īv -issem, -issēs, -issēt Plpf. -issēmus,-issētīs, -issent

FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

Perf.INF.

-issě

Fut. INF. ·ăm-āt -tīrŭs essĕ mŏn-It Fut. PARTIC. -ūrūs rect aud-īt -um, -ū SUPINE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

FROM THE PRESENT BASE.

-or. -aris. -atur: -amur. -amini. -antur -ĕor, -ēris, -ētur; -ēmur, -ēmini, -entur -or. -eris. -itur; -imur, -imini. -untur -ĭor. -īrīs. -ītur; -īmur. -īminī. -ĭuntur

-bār, -bāris (-bārē), -bātur -- bāmur, --bāmīnī, --bantur

-bor. -beris (-bere), -bitur -bimur, -biminī, -buntur -ăr. -ēris (-ērē), -ētur

-ēmur. -ēminī. -entur -er.-eris(-ere),-etur; -emur.-emini.-entur

-ăr, -ārīs (-ārē), -ātur -āmŭr, -āmĭnī, -antŭr

-rer, -reris (-rere), -retur -rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur

-ārē, -āmĭnī; -ātŏr, -antŏr -ērē, -ēminī; -ētor, -entor -ĕrĕ, -ĭmĭnī; -ĭtŏr, -untŏr -īrē, -īminī; -ītor, -iuntor

> Gerundive. Pres. Inf. -andŭs -ārī -endăs -ērī -endŭs -ī -ĭendŭs -īrī

FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

/-ŭs sum, ĕs, est IND. -I sumus, estis, Perf. sunt -us eram, eras, erat -I ĕrāmus, ĕrātis, ĕrant ăm-āt -ŭs ĕrō, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt Fut. -ī ĕrimŭs, ĕritis, mon-it ĕrunt rect -ŭs sim, sīs, sĭt SUBJ. -ī sīmūs, sītis, Perf. aud-It

sint -ŭs ess-em -ēs, -ět -ī ess-ēmus, -étis, Plpf. -ent

-ŭs (essě) Perf.Part.& Ine Fut. INF -um īrī

2nd ed LAL BAHADU National Academy MUSS	JR SHASTRI of Administration
470.045 Hay LIBR	,]\$29) ARY
litleJunior	Lat.incourse
	Book No
वर्ग सं. Class No	ACC. No. 19291 पुस्तक सं. Book No.
470.045 Hay 2nd ed.	११७०६ <u>२</u> अवाष्ति सं

Accession No. 110063

- Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
- 2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
- Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
- Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
- Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.

Help to keep this book fresh, clean & moving